



НАРОДНАЯ УКРАИНСКАЯ АКАДЕМИЯ

## **АРТИКЛЬ**

Методическое пособие  
для студентов III курса

***ИЗДАТЕЛЬСТВО НУА***

НАРОДНАЯ УКРАИНСКАЯ АКАДЕМИЯ

АРТИКЛЬ

Методическое пособие  
для студентов III курса  
факультета «Референт-переводчик»,  
обучающихся по специальности  
6.02030304 – Филология.

Харьков  
Издательство НУА  
2015

УДК  
ББК

*Утверждено на заседании  
кафедры теории практики перевода  
Протокол № 2 от 07.09.15*

С о с т а в и т е л ь: *В.В. Ильченко, В.А.Кашкарев*  
Р е ц е н з е н т проф. *Змиева И.В.*

Навчальний посібник призначено для аудиторної та самостійної роботи студентів 3-го курсу факультету «Референт-перекладач». Посібник містить правила функціонування артиклів, ілюстровані прикладами з аутентичної англomовної літератури, та вправи, складені з урахуванням послідовної самостійної роботи студентів над темами, які мають на меті формування навичок вживання англійського артикля в усній мові та на письмі.

Навчальний посібник складено відповідно до ОПП підготовки бакалаврів з філології.

**Артикль:** метод. пособие для студентов III курса фак. референт-переводчик / Нар. укр. акад., [каф. теории. и практики. перевода.; сост. В. В. Ильченко]. – Харьков : Изд-во НУА, 2015. – 225 с.

Учебное пособие предназначено для аудиторной и самостоятельной работы студентов 3-го курса факультета «Референт-переводчик». В пособии содержатся правила функционирования артиклей, иллюстрированные примерами из аутентичной англоязычной литературы, и упражнения, составленные с учетом последовательной самостоятельной работы студентов над темами и предназначенные для формирования навыков употребления английского артикля в устной и письменной речи.

Учебное пособие составлено в соответствии с ОПП подготовки бакалавра филологии.

УДК  
ББК

© Народная украинская академия, 2015

## CONTENTS

Introduction	5
Chapter 1 General notion	6
1.1 Articles and nouns	6
1.2 Functions of articles	7
1.3 Place of articles	8
1.4 Leaving out articles	14
Chapter 2 Articles with countable nouns	16
2.1 Meanings of articles with countable nouns	16
2.2. Articles with countable nouns modified by attributes	25
2.2.1 Modification by adjectives	25
2.2.2 Modification by numerals	32
2.2.3 Modification by participles	38
2.2.4 Modification by nouns in the genitive case	40
2.2.5 Modification by nouns in the common case	43
2.2.6 Modification by prepositional phrases	44
2.2.7 Modification by attributive clauses	50
2.2.8 Modification by infinitives	54
Chapter 3 Articles with uncountable nouns	62
3.1 Articles with names of substances	62
Chapter 4 Articles with abstract nouns	71
Chapter 5 Articles with nouns in some syntactic positions	91
5.1 Articles with predicative nouns	91
5.2 Articles with nouns in apposition	95
5.3 Absence of articles in parallel structures	101
5.4 Articles with nouns introduced by ‘as’	101
5.5 Absence of articles with vocatives	102
5.6 Articles after the exclamatory ‘what’	102
5.7 Absence of articles in absolute constructions	103
5.8 Absence of articles in the case of ‘integration’	103
Chapter 6 Special difficulties in the use of articles	107
6.1 The generic use of the definite article	107
6.2 Articles with nouns referring to unique objects	116
6.3 Articles with names of seasons	119
6.4 Articles with months and days of the week	123
6.5 Articles with names of times of the day and night	124
6.6 Articles with longer periods	130
6.7 Articles with specific periods	132
6.8 Articles with names of meals	135
6.9 Articles with names of diseases	140
6.10 Articles with names of parts of the body	144
6.11 Articles with nouns denoting special roles	145

6.12	Articles with the noun ‘society’	147
6.13	Articles with nouns denoting institutions in society	148
6.14	Articles with names of shops and other businesses	154
6.15	Articles with names of musical instruments	154
6.16	Articles with nouns denoting grammatical terms	155
6.17	Articles with nouns denoting directions	156
6.18	Articles with nouns denoting geographical oppositions	157
6.19	Articles with names of media and means of communication	160
6.20	Articles with nouns denoting forms of entertainment	162
6.21	Articles with nouns denoting means of transport	164
6.22	Articles in some common expressions	165
Chapter 7	Use of articles with proper nouns	178
7.1	Articles with personal names	178
7.2	Articles with geographic names	184
7.3	Articles with other semantic groups of nouns	193
References		225

## INTRODUCTION

The articles in English present a particular area of difficulty for the learner of the language.

The articles in English present a particular area of difficulty for the learner of the language. Not only are they among the commonest words in English ('the' is by far the commonest word in English, and with 'a' and 'an' makes up 8.5% of all text), they are often vital for successful communication.

Thus, this book has been designed to help students acquire theoretical and practical knowledge of the grammar of the English language in three ways:

1) There are explanations in simple English, with as few technical terms as possible. Rules of usage are given which are not misleading, as has often been the case. There are warnings in the text, to show particular areas where some learners need to be careful; these are based on an analysis of errors. There is also information about the few differences between British and American English.

2) There are examples of real English, taken from the Bank of English; these illustrate the explanations and show you how articles are really used.

3) There are exercises based on the explanations which will give you practice in various areas of article use and allow you to try out what you have read. The exercises have been designed to be as varied as possible (they aren't all of the type where you have to fill in gaps) and challenging (they aren't all mechanical, and it's possible to get them wrong).

The book is organised into seven chapters and a number of sections so that students can deal with one area at a time. So if students want to find out how the type of noun affects which article to use, they should look at Chapter 1. Chapter 7 tells you how to use articles with proper nouns. Chapter 6 deals with what are possibly the most important areas: the creative uses of the indefinite and definite articles.

At the end of most each section there are exercises which practise the material of the section.

Students can use this book as a course, going through the points one by one and doing the exercises to follow; or they can use it for reference, dealing with questions and problems when they occur. For this purpose, there is an index, which will tell learners where to find:

- information on how to use articles with particular types of words, for example abstract nouns or the names of geographical features like countries, mountains, rivers, and so on;
- information on particular words which are mentioned in the text because they are important for article use, for example 'society', 'radio', 'church', and so on;
- an explanation of a grammatical term, for example 'generic', 'uncountable', 'abstract'.

It should be emphasised that the present book does not claim to be comprehensive; therefore, students are welcome to make ample use of various exercise-books available.

# CHAPTER 1 GENERAL NOTION

## 1.1 ARTICLES AND NOUNS

§ 1 The articles belong to a syntactic class of words called determiners which modify nouns, or words that are behaving like nouns. These are a closed list of words like *the*, *his* and *this*, whose function is to determine or limit a following noun.

The indefinite article has two forms, both in speech and writing: **a** [ə]/**an** [ən]. It has developed from the numeral **one** (O.E. **an**) and retains some of its earlier meaning. It occurs only before singular nouns:

e.g. Peter started life as *a schoolmaster*.

The definite article, **the**, has only one form in writing but two pronunciations [ðə] and [ði]. It has developed from the O.E. demonstrative pronoun **se** and the demonstrative meaning is clearly felt:

e.g. *The screenplay* (= this screenplay) is based on a novel.

§ 2 The use of articles as well as their absence has grammatical meaning and falls under definite rules. Thus, in dealing with the use of articles, it will be necessary to divide all the cases into two groups which may be called:

- the grammatical use of articles
- the traditional use of articles

§ 3 The grammatical use of articles is dependent on the character of the noun they modify, thus we need some classification of nouns.

### NOUNS

PROPER – the name of people, places, or object (e.g. <i>Patrick, Rome, the White House</i> )		
COMMON – categorize or label people or things (e.g. <i>planet, orange, drum, children</i> )	COUNTABLE – has a singular and a plural form and is always used after a determiner in the singular (e.g. <i>a pen – the pen – pens – the pens</i> )	CONCRETE – refers to a material object (e.g. <i>a dog – the dog – dogs – the dogs</i> )
		ABSTRACT – refers to an abstract concept (e.g. <i>an idea – the idea – ideas – the ideas</i> )
	UNCOUNTABLE – has only one form and can be used without a determiner (e.g. <i>gold – the gold, information – the information</i> )	CONCRETE (e.g. <i>coal, sand, snow</i> )
		ABSTRACT (e.g. <i>time, freedom, pleasure, evil</i> )

§ 4 There're cases, however, in which the use of articles can't be explained grammatically, as it has become a matter of tradition. The examples are numerous set phrases:

e.g. *to be in danger – to be in a rage*

## 1.2 FUNCTIONS OF ARTICLES

§ 5. The articles have **morphologic, syntactic** and **communicating functions**.

**The morphologic function** of the articles consists in serving as a formal indicator of the noun: the presence of the article signals that what follows is a noun.

The articles have two **syntactic functions**:

1) The article separates the noun phrase from other parts of the sentence.

e.g. John has bought { a magazine.  
an interesting magazine.  
an interesting English magazine.

2) The article may connect sentences within a text by correlating a noun it modifies with some word or a group of words in the previous context.

e.g. John has brought *a book*. *The book* is interesting.

The articles also have **the communicating function**. A noun with the indefinite article may introduce new information in the sentence: it is then the focus of communication ('the rheme' of the sentence).

e.g. *A pretty girl* of about eight ran into the room.

A noun with the definite article in the initial position usually indicates given information and is not the focus of communication ('the theme' of the sentence).

e.g. *The girl* ran into the room.

Exercise 1. Translate into English.

A. 1. Мне нужно снять комнату. 2. Проветри комнату. 3. Нож не режет. 4. У тебя нет ножа? 5. Возьми нож и отрежь себе хлеба. 6. Мы не знали, что здесь есть озеро. 7. Озеро глубокое. 8. Замок сломался. 9. Кому бы мне отдать починить замок? 10. Ты не знаешь, где чинят замки? 11. Не забудь купить замок. 12. У нас сегодня апельсины на третье. 13. Апельсины в буфете. 14. Возьми себе апельсины. 15. Апельсин не кислый?

B) 1. Приходил почтальон? 2. Это был высокий белый дом; он был окружен большим садом. 3. Дом построен два года назад. 4. Мое любимое дерево – дуб. 5. Возле дома рос старый дуб. 6. Мы опоздали на поезд и нам пришлось долго ждать на вокзале. 7. Мы вошли в маленькую комнату, в которой стоял стол, несколько стульев и кресло. 8. Я надеюсь, что завтра вы дадите мне ответ. 9. Я не знал, что собака в комнате. 10. Я не знал, что в комнате есть собака. 11. Принесите муку. 12. Принесите муки. 13. Девушка подошла к окну. 14. К окну подошла девушка. 15. Посмотри на березу. Ей, наверное, много лет. 16. Какое дерево здесь посадим? – Давайте посадим березу. 17. Какая великолепная береза! 18. Познакомьтесь. Это наша гостья из Киева, учительница английского языка. 19. За работу ему платили по пенсу в



час. 20. Какая собака! Где вы ее взяли? 21. Это чек! Нет, три чека, и каждый на тысячу франков.

### Exercise 2. Translate into English.

1. Старик никогда не выходил из дому без галош и зонтика. 2. Недавно я познакомился с одним моряком; он только что вернулся из кругосветного путешествия. 3. Не проехали мы и километра, как что-то случилось с колесом. 4. В поезде дальнего следования обычно имеется вагон-ресторан. 5. – У вас есть какой-нибудь журнал почитать? – У меня есть сейчас журналы, но не думаю, чтобы они были вам интересны. 6. Я не курю сигары. Не могли бы вы мне дать папиросу? 7. Друг так не поступает. 8. Он любит пить чай не из чашки, а только из стакана. 9. Сколько человек может вместить зал вроде этого? 10. Проблема такого рода должна вас интересовать. 11. В маленькой комнате книжная полка удобнее, чем шкаф. 12. В морском параде приняли участие подводные лодки и авианосец.

### Exercise 3. Translate into English.

1. Я обрезала волосы и подола их, так как приближается рождество и я хочу купить тебе подарок. 2. Джим вынул из кармана пальто сверток и положил его на стол. 3. Дед Мороз был добр к постоянным обитателям Мэдисон Сквер и всегда предупреждал их о своем приходе. 4. На скамейку упал желтый лист. Это была визитная карточка Деда Мороза. 5. На углу Шестой авеню сверкала электрическими огнями витрина магазина. Суопи взял булыжник и бросил его в витрину. На звук разбитого стекла отовсюду бежали люди во главе с полицейским. 6. «Где человек, который сделал это?» – спросил полицейский. Ему явно не приходило в голову, что это мог сделать Суопи. Люди, которые разбивают стекла, обычно убегают. В это время полицейский увидел на расстоянии полуквартала человека, который бежал, чтобы успеть в такси. 7. Перед витриной стояла молодая женщина скромной и приятной наружности. Она с интересом рассматривала витрину. В двух ярдах от витрины стоял огромный полицейский свирепого вида. 8. В табачном магазине он увидел хорошо одетого мужчину, который прикуривал сигару. Свой зонтик он оставил у входа. Суопи вошел в магазин, взял зонтик и направился к выходу. 9. В одном из конвертов была фотография женщины. Во втором – очень длинное письмо от другой женщины. 10. Рыжеволосый, небритый, неряшливый мужчина сидел в кресле-качалке у окна. Он только что закурил трубку и сейчас с огромным удовлетворением выпускал голубые клубы дыма.

## 1.3 PLACE OF ARTICLES

§ 6 The articles being determiners normally come at the beginning of a noun group. A *noun group* is a group of words based around a head, which is usually a noun. The diagram below shows how a noun group is divided up.

DETERMINER                      MODIFIER                      HEAD                      MODIFIER

the tall girl with black hair

Nevertheless, there are several groups of modifiers which are placed before the articles.

1) Nouns with the definite article follow **'all'**, **'both'** and **'half'**.

e.g. I want to hear *all the details*.

The rebel army now controls over *half the country*.

I like *both the pictures*.

**Note 1** The definite article after **'both'** is not obligatory and can be dropped.

e.g. *Both girls* are at school.

**Note 2** **'All'** can precede nouns without an article if these nouns do not need an article in accordance with the rules.

e.g. *All children* deserve encouragement. vs *All the children* in the room deserve encouragement.)

**Note 3** The definite article is not used if **'all'** is followed by a numeral.

e.g. *All three boys* were good at tennis.

**Note 4** **'All'**, **'both'** and **'half'** have alternatives with **'of'**, with little or no difference in meaning.

e.g. *All of the three boys* were good at tennis. (all three boys)

*Both of the kids* are learning English. (both the kids)

**Note 5** The indefinite article is used after **'half'** in *half an hour*, *half a day*, *half a mile*, etc. (or *a half-hour*, *a half-day*, *a half mile*, etc.).

e.g. It took her *half an hour* to learn the rules.

She hastily drank *half a cup* of cold coffee.

2) Nouns modified by articles are preceded by multipliers like **'double'**, **'once'**, **'twice'**, **'three times'**, etc. The following patterns are possible:

a) **double** + the + noun:

e.g. This was *double the price* he had been offered before.

b) **once** + a + noun:

e.g. The clerk told her that she would have to send the rent check *once a month*.

c) **twice** + a / the + noun:

e.g. *Twice a month* he put on his best suit and went to the club.

He is *twice the man* he was.

3) The fractions *one-third*, *three-quarters*, etc. come before nouns with the definite article.

e.g. He did only *one-third of the work*.

Give *one-third the usual amount*.

4) Nouns with the indefinite article follow **'quite'**, **'such'** and the exclamatory **'what'**.

e.g. He's *such an intelligent man*.

*What a nuisance!*

She was *quite a good artist*.

5) The indefinite article goes before **'very'**, **'fairly'**, **'really'**, etc.

e.g. It's *a very old castle*.

It's *a fairly long play*.

He's *a really nice person*.

6) The indefinite article can go either before or after 'rather'.

e.g. He was *rather a naughty boy*.

He was *a rather naughty boy*.

7) Nouns with the indefinite article follow 'many' (the verb is used in the singular).

e.g. I've spent *many a moonlit night* here.

8) 'So', 'too', 'how', 'as', 'that', and 'however' followed by an adjective precede nouns with the indefinite article.

e.g. Youth lasts *so short a time*.

Now they could see *how small a beast* it was.

Politics is *too important a matter* to be left to experts.

'I can't miss the chance, *however big a risk* to run,' Henry said.

Tuscon, a city she had never seen before, was *as good a place* as any for a beginning.

'*How honest a man* is he?' the captain asked.

§ 7 A number of determiners can come after the definite article; here is a list of them: 'few', 'little', 'many', 'one', 'other', 'several'.

e.g. *Few people* live there now.

There were *a few animals* in the barn.

These are *the few letters* he wrote to me at school.

Exercise 4. Insert the necessary articles in their proper position before the italicized nouns in the following sentences.

1. I thought of all those heroines of fiction who looked pretty when they cried, and what *contrast* I must make with blotched and swollen face and red rims to my eyes. 2. Both *readers* of course will draw the obvious conclusions from this. 3. Never before had he seen such cold steely *determination* in her eye – such cruel *look* of indifference. 4. I've brutalized many men into shape but I wouldn't take a chance on half *number* of women. 5. He thought of all *people* Fox had shaken hands with – the President of the United States, every living scientist whose name was famous. 6. 'It seems to be such large *company*,' she said, at one place. 7. Here you are a complete stranger with an acquaintance of less than half *hour* and you came up to me with a cock-and-bull story about your aunts. 8. All *complications*, which led up to it, were unknown. 9. Evenings, when still at his post, he would occasionally read in the evening papers incidents concerning celebrities whom he knew, whom he had drunk a glass with many *time*. 10. She was horrified at herself for having such *thought* and she turned pink. 11. He had a little office at the place, set off in polished cherry and grill work, where he kept in a roll-top desk, rather simple *accounts* of the place-supplies ordered and needed. 12. He was quite disagreeable *figure*. 13. There gathered, before the matinee and afterward, not only all pretty *women* who love a showy parade, but the men who love to gaze upon and admire them. 14. Dick said in quite natural *voice*, not too loud: so if you don't feel up to going out, I'll tell Nicole

and we'll have a very quiet last evening. 15. Sorrow in her was aroused by many *spectacle*, an uncritical outburst of grief for the weak and the helpless. 16. She came and sat beside me and I knew the waiting of all five *years* had been for her. 17. For one in so delicate *position* he was exceedingly cool. 18. Mr. Cowlshaw found himself in rather difficult *position* of speeding his first patient and welcoming another one in the same breath. 19. It is really a great pleasure to have such *acquisition* to our little community. 20. He'd been too much of *gentleman* not to marry me. 21. I smiled at the hall-porter – not patronizingly, but as if to imply that in my opinion a child could operate so simple *mechanism*. 22. All four *boys* in the locker-room spoke in low tones and there was none of the usual horsing around. 23. I won't lecture to you, we have too acute *realization* of your physical suffering. 24. Before they went out, as fine-looking *couple* as could be found in Paris they knocked softly at Rosemary's door. 25. She thought what good *time* they would all have being with him tonight. 26. 'How lovely *face* and *figure* she has,' he said bowing as he sat. 27. It's rather small *place*, but it has a lot of atmosphere. 28. That leaves the situation in rather unsatisfactory *state*. 29. I am not asking you. I have faced all *possibilities* and I prefer it that way.

Exercise 5. Insert the necessary articles in their proper position before the italicized nouns in the following sentences.

1. When people are taken out of their depths they lose their heads, no matter how charming *bluff* they put up. 2. What *man*! You seem to be always going somewhere and coming from somewhere. 3. It was so decided, loaded pistols were served out to both sure *men*. 4. At what other times than this could such *situation* have been possible! 5. By the time I reached the small private hospital conveniently located in the centre of town I was giving a fair imitation of a skier who had fallen down half *mountain*. 6. All *newspapers* noted but one thing, his taking the money. 7. Many *friendly* game had netted him a hundred dollars or more at the time when that sum was merely sauce to the dish of the game – not all in all. 8. The lady's niece, rather wealthy *girl* of about twenty was living with them for a year to improve her English. 9. It was going to be quite interesting *wedding*. 10. So distant and definite *point* seemed to increase the difficulty. 11. I never saw this great-uncle, but I'm supposed to look like him – with special reference to rather hard-boiled *painting* that hangs in the father's office. 12. She was carrying things with too high *hand*. 13. Nicole is half *patient* – she will possibly remain something of *patient* all her life. 14. For a young man, this was rather morbid *turn* of character, and so it affected Carrie. 15. You, on the other hand, say such *call* was made but you cannot say definitely that it was Miss Pebmarsh who made that call. 16. And what funny little *thing* you were, in one of those hotel peignoirs! 17. Love seemed now so little *thing*, seemed to have lost warmth and power. 18. It was too great *shock* to be born with calmness, and she immediately left the room. 19. It's as good *place*, I suppose, as you could find. 20. Mrs. Lodgers was a lady, rather bony and hard-featured *lady*. 21. It was quite *way* down to the main road and then we walked along the main road about *mile* and *half*. 22. But he gave her so long and so peculiar *stare* from the corner where he was having

tea that she knew he had not forgiven her. 23. She seemed to take rather *fancy* to me.

#### Exercise 6. Translate into English.

1. Какого прелестного ребенка вы привели с собой! 2. «Какой у нас сегодня день! – воскликнул он. – Давайте отправимся немедленно». 3. Обе девушки выглядели взволнованными, хотя и пытались притвориться, что ничего серьезного не произошло. 4. «Вы должны быть более великодушны», – сказал он так просто, что она была тронута. 5. Вы могли бы остаться здесь жить, скажем, не более полугода. 6. Все пять поездов останавливались на всех станциях. 7. Как вы можете себе представить, я был полностью захвачен распалом таким обращением. 8. Пуаро боялся, что может последовать еще одна смерть, поэтому он принял все необходимые меры предосторожности. 9. Последовало довольно неловкое молчание. 10. Она покорно смотрела на довольно голую равнину с низкими деревьями. 11. Когда он пришел к себе в комнату, он включил все лампы. 12. Этот человек имеет довольно плохую репутацию. 13. В этой книге есть вполне подробное описание эксперимента. 14. Она сомневалась в точности такого длинного счета. 15. Его охватила совсем необычная паника. 16. Это была слишком трудная задача. 17. «Какой день для прогулки!» – подумала Керри. 18. Это слишком жесткая для тебя игра. 19. В какой знаменитой школе ты учишься! 20. Она была такой молодой женой и такой хорошенькой.

#### Exercise 7. Translate into English.

1. Такую интересную книгу приятно перечитать. 2. Некоторым нравится ложиться спать рано, другим – поздно. 3. Не волнуйтесь. Все мальчишки такие. 4. Такой очаровательной женщиной мне еще не приходилось встречать. 5. Два студента из нашей группы получили отличные оценки, а другие – хорошие. 6. Я хочу, чтобы ты вел себя, как все порядочные люди. 7. Я уже упаковал этот ящик, подайте мне другой. 8. Я не могу дать вам ни одного человека, так как все рабочие уже ушли домой. 9. У нас с ней была довольно краткая беседа. 10. Это слишком длинный роман, чтобы его можно было прочесть в два дня. 11. Ребенок всегда повторяет такие слова, которые взрослые говорят в его присутствии. 12. Все студенты нашей группы сдали экзамены успешно. 13. Ты никогда не думаешь о других. 14. По дороге домой я встретил двух подозрительных мужчин: оба были одеты в плащи, хотя стояла ужасная жара. 15. Мне разрешат сделать еще одну попытку сдать экзамен. 16. Это была совсем короткая поездка. 17. Это такая же светлая комната, как та. 18. Я не могу ответить на такой странный вопрос. 19. Это довольно интересная статья. 20. Как вы могли упустить такой редкий случай? 21. Это была довольно интересная встреча. 22. Некоторые из наших студентов летом выезжают в лагерь, другие – к морю. 23. Поездка была довольно успешной: мы встретились с такими интересными людьми, как писатели, художники, музыканты. 24. Какое нелепое возражение! 25. Оба письма были отправлены утром. 26. Все бумаги подписаны. 27. Это слишком сложная проблема, чтобы ее можно было

разрешить в такое короткое время. 28. Какой красивый зонтик у мисс Прайс!

#### Exercise 8. Translate into English.

1. На пирсе было много людей. Они ждали парохода, чтобы пересечь залив в сторону Окленда. 2. Давайте встретимся в аэропорту. Я буду ждать вас в зале ожидания. 3. Подойдя к театру, он увидел Мари. Она стояла у кассы. 4. Когда поезд тронулся, Донован вскочил в вагон и закрыл дверь. 5. Она схватила его рукав и потянула к выходу. 6. Почему вы не остановили его? Разве можно преследовать человека словно крысу? 7. Я сидел за прилавком, ел бифштекс и пил кофе, когда вошел отец. 8. Пойди-ка позови миссис Шеридан. Она сидит на крыльце. 9. Он потягивал бренди через соломинку из бутылки. 10. Это ваша жена, мистер Пембертон? Какая красивая женщина! 11. Он сирота. Его родители погибли во время войны. 12. Он вошел в комнату, включил свет, затем снял пластинку с грамофона и какое-то мгновение хотел ее разбить. Затем сел на кровать и начал плакать. 13. Она говорит, что любит поэзию, живопись, музыку и скульптуру. 14. Она хотела издать новый и по-настоящему хороший журнал. Она решила назвать журнал «The New Magazine». 15. «У денег есть крылья, но летят они не ко мне», – бывало говорил он. 16. Я открыл дверь и увидел миссис Даррант. Щеки ее были бледны, а глаза такие красные, бедняжка! 17. Его расходы составляли три пенса в день на еду. 18. Они строят планы посадить на трон нового короля. 19. Когда-то очень давно люди ничего не знали об огне. 20. Он знал, что его накажут, но он не боялся ни наказания, ни боли. 21. Она заметила, как у дома мистера Джонса остановилось такси. Какой-то высокий мужчина вышел из машины и направился к воротам. 22. Мне кажется, я видел вас вчера в театре. Как вам понравился спектакль? 23. Если хотите, я скажу, почему опоздал. Дело в том, что телеграмма пришла только вчера.

#### Exercise 9. Translate into Russian.

A) 1. Не волнуйся, это будет такой же успешный концерт, как и любой другой. 2. – Насколько хороша твоя новая книга? – Ну, у нее довольно интересный сюжет. – А я считаю, что эта книга такая же интересная, как и любая другая, написанная тобой. Просто ты слишком скромный человек, чтобы хвалить самого себя. 3. Он слишком воспитанный человек, чтобы прийти без приглашения. 4. – Какое красивое платье! – Платье такое же красивое, как и любое другое в этом магазине. 5. Счастье так недолговечно! 6. Теперь, после операции, ты и вполнину не похож на того Джона, которого я когда-то знал. 7. Я никогда не хожу в кино, каким бы интересным не был фильм. 8. Это такой же глупый вопрос, как и любой другой, который ты задаешь. 9. Оба мальчика повернулись на мой окрик, и я увидел, что они были очень похожи. 10. Какой бы интересной не была экскурсия, я с большим удовольствием хожу по магазинам. 11. Он такой ненадежный человек! Он сразу же нарушает половину обещаний, которые дает. 12. Она настолько хороший друг, насколько это возможно. 13. Он слишком опытный врач, чтобы игнорировать его советы.

Если он сказал принимать это лекарство два раза в день, ты должен это делать. 14. Он настолько терпеливый человек, насколько это возможно. 15. Она слишком серьезная девушка, чтобы тратить время на вечеринки. Она никогда на них не ходит, какой бы веселой вечеринка не была. 16. Я был таким же непослушным подростком, как и любой другой ребенок. 17. Это слишком сложная проблема, чтобы решить ее, не советуясь ни с кем.

В) Однажды в маленьком восточном городке жил мужчина, у которого был попугай. Единственное слово, которое умел говорить попугай, было: 'Несомненно'. Он повторял это слово по сто раз в день. Это была такая нудная птица, что однажды мужчина решил ее продать. Он посадил ее в клетку и отнес на базар. 'Двадцать с половиной фунтов за умную говорящую птицу', – кричал мужчина, но все люди проходили мимо. Вдруг птицу заметил один иностранец и подумал: 'Это слишком замечательная птица, чтобы просто пройти мимо нее'. 'Я дам тебе вдвое больше той цены, которую ты просишь, если птица действительно окажется умной', – сказал иностранец. Затем он обратился к попугаю: 'Ты действительно стоишь двадцать с половиной фунтов?' 'Несомненно', – ответил попугай. 'Какая умная птица!', – воскликнул иностранец и купил ее. Приехав домой, он пригласил всех друзей посмотреть на чудо-птицу. Но спустя неделю или две мужчина понял, что его обманули. 'Эта птица такая же глупая, как и любая другая! Какой же я глупец!', – воскликнул мужчина. 'Несомненно!' – ответил попугай. И на это раз птица была права.

## 1.4 LEAVING OUT ARTICLES

§ 8 There are a number of situations when it is possible or necessary to leave out articles in front of nouns or adjectives which normally would have them. The two nouns must be closely related in meaning. This is not the same as having no article. Articles can be left out:

1) When two nouns (or adjectives), both acting as head of a noun group, are joined together with '**and**' or '**or**'; the second head can be without its article. This happens with both the definite and the indefinite article.

e.g. They had enhanced *the reliability and quality* of radio reception.  
You can order traveller's cheques through *a local bank or travel agent*.

2) In language which has to be shortened for reasons of space, such as telegrams, instructions, notes and newspaper headlines.

e.g. 'Send *report* immediately'

3) When nouns referring to two contrasting people or things are joined by '**and**'.

e.g. The independent allowances for *husband and wife* will both be available.  
There was a pause, and *doctor and patient* looked steadily at each other across the quiet room.

4) In introductory phrases like '**Fact is ...**', '**Thing is ...**', '**Trouble is ...**', '**Truth is ...**'. This use is informal and occurs mainly in spoken English.

e.g. *Fact is*, it's getting serious.

5) With count nouns which are being used to address a person or animal (sometimes called vocatives).

e.g. Good grief, *man*, what are you doing here?



## CHAPTER 2 ARTICLES WITH COUNTABLE NOUNS

### 2.1 MEANINGS OF ARTICLES WITH COUNTABLE NOUNS

§ 9 The **indefinite article** has the nominating, classifying, numeric and generalizing meaning.

**The nominating meaning** is the principal meaning of the indefinite article. In this meaning the indefinite article denotes what kind of object (thing, person, etc.) the speaker has to do with. You usually use the indefinite article in this meaning when you are introducing a particular thing (or person) into a conversation or text for the first time and you cannot assume that your listener or reader knows which particular thing you are talking about.

e.g. After weeks of looking, we eventually bought *a car*.

**The classifying meaning** The indefinite article may assign an object to a certain class or kind of similar objects or to describe or give information about something that has already been introduced. This use is common with verbs like **'be'**, **'seem'**, **'look'**, or **'sound'**, or where the description immediately follows the noun (apposition or an attributive clause), or in exclamatory sentences beginning with **'what'**.

e.g. Her sister is *a student* at Harvard.

You look *an idiot*.

Wait! Here's Alice, *an old chum* of mine.

Martin Leech, who was *a school teacher*, gave it to me.

The difference between the nominating and the classifying meaning becomes clear if we turn the examples given above into the plural.

In the case of the nominating meaning plural nouns may be preceded by words like **'some'**, **'several'**, **'a few'** or by a numeral. In the case of the classifying meaning plural nouns cannot be preceded by those words or by numerals.

e.g. After weeks of looking, we eventually bought two cars. (the nominating meaning)

Her sisters are *students* at Harvard. (the classifying meaning)

There are situations where the indefinite article clearly has an idea of **'one'**. In such cases we can speak of **the numeric meaning** of the indefinite article.

e.g. *An apple a day* keeps the doctor away.

The indefinite article always has the numeric force in the numbers **'a hundred'**, **'a thousand'**, **'a million'** and the nouns **'a dozen'** and **'a score'** when they are alone or followed by a noun.

e.g. We need *a dozen* eggs for the cake.

The indefinite article is used between two noun groups to express a rate or ratio. You can talk about prices, salaries, and speeds in this way.

e.g. The car was travelling at an estimated 85 miles *an hour*.

The shop is open 24 hours *a day*.

This construction can also express the frequency with which something happens, using **'once'**, **'twice'**, **'three times'**, and so on.

e.g. The amateur golfers from Europe only get together *once or twice a year*.

In **the generalizing meaning** the indefinite article indicates that the following noun denotes a typical member of a class: you are not referring to a particular thing or person, but just to any thing or person of a particular type.

e.g. *A cat* is a domestic animal. (= Every cat is a domestic animal.)

The generalizing meaning remains if we turn the nouns in the above examples into the plural. Plural nouns in the generalizing meaning are used without any article.

e.g. *Cats* are domestic animals.

As the indefinite article is used only with singular nouns, the absence of article before plural nouns has similar meanings (the only exception being the numeric meaning).

**§ 10 The definite article** is used with both singular and plural nouns. The definite article has **the specifying meaning** and **the generic meaning**.

In **the specifying meaning** the definite article denotes that the following noun refers to a particular object (thing, person, etc.) or particular objects as distinct from all others of the same class. There are three sorts of information which listeners and readers can use to work out why the definite article has been used and to identify what items are being talked about. These are:

1) What has been said earlier in a conversation or text. This process is sometimes called **referring back** or **anaphora**.

2) The context or situation in which you are speaking or writing.

3) The language that you use with the noun, as part of the noun group.

**Referring back** If something has been introduced and established in a conversation or text, it is possible to refer to it again using the same noun with the definite article.

e.g. But then I came on *a man* playing a harp. It was a black harp ... and *the man* was dressed as a gorilla!

When you are referring back to something, you don't have to repeat the same noun or use a pronoun; you can also use another, more general, noun.

e.g. There was *an enormous cat* crouching on the counter... *The animal* looked up at Mrs Bixby.

If you want to talk about something that is associated with an earlier item (even though you haven't mentioned it before) you can use the definite article to show that there is a relationship or association between the items. Anything associated with a previous noun can be mentioned using the definite article, so long as you think your listener or reader shares your associations. Here's a list of items that could be associated with the topics '*a book*': *the title, the cover, the publisher, the reviews, the introduction, the plot, the author, the price, etc.*

e.g. *This book* must be a humorous book. I liked *the reviews*.

*The book* is named "Gone with the Wind". *The author* is Margaret Mitchell.

The interactive blue splashes are nonetheless entrancing for the few minutes spent toying with *the cover*. And with that, *the book* has caught the eye of a potential buyer.

**Surrounding context** You can use the definite article if the place or situation

you are in makes it clear what you are talking about. You can only use the definite article in this way to refer to things that you and your listener expect to find in the situation.

- e.g. 'Pass *the salt*.'  
'Where's *the phone*?' 'It's on *the desk*.'

You can also use the definite article when you and your listener share knowledge about things outside your surroundings. Wider situation is just an extension of surrounding situation; there is no exact dividing line. But while surrounding situations are changing all the time, wider situations are fairly fixed. And while the surrounding situation is clear to speakers and listeners, sometimes it may not be clear which wider situation is relevant.

- e.g. I've got to collect my wife from *the station*.  
*The prime minister* told journalists one purpose of the visit was to discuss progress his country has made since January 2010. (if one of the speakers is British and the other is Polish, it's not clear which country's Prime Minister is meant)

The definite article is used in **the generic meaning** when reference is made to a whole class or species of something.

- e.g. *The German* are no less perceptive.  
*The horse* is a farm animal.

**Note 1** In the previous example we can replace *the horse* by *a tiger* or *tigers*. However, there is a difference in meaning. *The horse* in the above example is used in an abstract sense as reference is made to a species of horses. When we say *a horse* we mean what is normal or typical for any member of the species of horses. Therefore, there is a difference in meaning between the following sentences: "*The horse was domesticated many centuries ago*" and "*A horse was domesticated many centuries ago*", since only the first statement is true as it refers to the species of horses and not of any individual specimen of the class.

Exercise 10. Put in **a/an** or **some** or leave a space (without a word).

1. Have you got ... camera? 2. You need ... visa to visit ... foreign countries, but not all of them. 3. Would you like to be ... actor? 4. Bill's got ... big feet. 5. I'm going shopping. I'm going to get ... new clothes. 6. Do you collect ... stamps? 7. Tom always gives Ann ... flowers on her birthday. 8. Jane is ... teacher. Her parents were ... teachers too. 9. Those are ... really nice trousers. Where did you get them? 10. When we reached the city centre ... shops were still open but most of them were already closed. 11. What ... beautiful garden! 12. What ... lovely children! 13. Do you enjoy going to ... concerts? 14. ... birds, for example the penguin, cannot fly. 15. When I was ... child, I used to be very shy. 16. Jack has got ... very long legs, so he's ... fast runner. 17. I've seen ... good films recently. 18. Have you got ... headache? 19. Are most of your friends ... students?

Exercise 11. Answer the questions.

A) What are these things: 1) a cauliflower? It's ... 2) a pigeon? It ... 3) a dandelion? ... 4) a skyscraper? ... 5) an ant? ... 6) Earth? Mars? Venus? Jupiter? They ... 7) the Rhine? the Nile? the Mississippi? ... 8) wasps? bees? ...

B) And who were these people: 1) Pele? He was ... 2) Beethoven? He was ... 3) Shakespeare? He ... 4) Einstein? ... 5) Marilyn Monroe? ... 6) Kennedy? Johnson? Nixon? They ... 7) Elvis Presley? John Lennon? ... 8) Strauss? Bach? ...

Exercise 12. Complete the exclamations with 'a' or 'an' only where necessary.

1. What ... nice thing to say! 2. What ... horrible teeth! 3. What ... pretty little girl! 4. What ... beautiful babies! 5. What ... boring programme! 6. What ... marvellous news! 7. What ... good idea! 8. What ... nice people! 9. What ... terrible noise! 10. What ... awful experience! 11. What ... dreadful weather! 12. What ... interesting teacher you are! 13. What ... insulting thing to say! 14. What ... dreadful old car he has!

Exercise 13. A housewife talks about her family. Read what she says and then complete the exercise below. (You must work out how often each thing happens.)

I take the dog for a walk every morning and evening and I go to keep-fit classes on Mondays, Wednesdays and Thursdays. So, as you can see, I get plenty of exercise! I've got two children. Tom, the elder, works abroad, but he comes home every three months or so. We always get at least a couple of letters from him every month. Sally, my daughter, has just got a boyfriend. He always phones her at eight o'clock in the evening and they talk for hours! We nearly always go away on holiday when school finishes, at Christmas, Easter and in the summer. Sometimes it's only for a few days and sometimes longer. I think we're basically a very close family.

- 1) She takes the dog for a walk \_\_\_\_\_
- 2) She goes to keep-fit classes \_\_\_\_\_
- 3) Tom comes home \_\_\_\_\_
- 4) They get a letter from Tom at least \_\_\_\_\_
- 5) Sally's boyfriend always phones her \_\_\_\_\_
- 6) They go away on holiday \_\_\_\_\_

Exercise 14. Joy Weller is a health worker. Help her to expand these notes about patients into full sentences, as she might do when reporting to the doctor.

- 1) Joe Flanagan / Irish / works as gardener / 3 days – week / looking for a better job.
- 2) Mary King / student / has bad back and attends hospital for treatment / 1 – month.
- 3) Bill Baker / middle-aged labourer from coal-mining area of Scotland / smokes cigarettes heavily / sometimes 40 cigarettes – day / has breathing problems.
- 4) Liz Chalmers / teacher / always has stomachache / says she needs holiday.

5) David Jordan / businessman / travels everywhere by taxi / eats 0.5 kilo chocolate – day / needs exercise.

6) Kate Mellors / widow with 6-month-old baby / living in single room / needs financial help and advice on baby care.

Exercise 15. Using the information in the shopping list and complete the sentences below.

1) 5 kilos of potatoes	60p
2) 2 loaves of bread	70p
3) 1/2 dozen eggs	79p
4) 3 pints of milk	69p
5) 2 litres of orange juice	98p
6) 4 cans of beer	£1.20
7) 500 grams of butter	£1.11
8) 1.5 litres of wine	£4.50

- 1) The potatoes were \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2) The bread was \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3) The eggs were \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4) The milk was \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5) The orange juice was \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6) The beer was \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7) The butter was \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8) The wine was \_\_\_\_\_.

Exercise 16. Use the proper article. Pay attention to the use of the definite article when the context or the whole situation makes it clear which object (or person) is meant.

1. ... trees swayed to and fro under ... grey sky. 2. ... air tasted fresh and clean with that special smell, like good bread-and-butter, which means that ... open country is near at hand. 3. 'This is St Clair Road,' she said as ... taxi turned up ... long steep hill. 4. Could you tell me where you've put ... money? 5. 'Now, Laura,' said her mother quickly, 'come with me into ... smoking-room.' 6. 'How did you like ... film?' she asked. 7. She hurried in again and found ... water almost boiled away. 8. How is ... weather? I suppose it's as hot as in the Gobi. 9. ... small station was dimly lit by two square lamps. 10. Chance entered ... cabin. Arlie was sitting on ... bed, her eyes wide with ... fright. 11. He slammed down ... phone without waiting for ... answer.

Exercise 17. Use the proper article. Point out the nouns, which have a limiting attribute.

1. Her brother belonged to ... same club we did. 2. That's ... rarest occurrence I ever saw in my life. 3. ... attempt to persuade them left him exhausted. 4. In ... corner of ... room was ... washbasin with ... hot and cold water. 5. ... thought of Medhurst went out of his mind swiftly. 6. He laid his hand upon ... chair, which stood in ... middle of ... room. 7. He took ... cigarette that I had carefully rolled up for myself and went. 8. He was ... most extraordinary lad I ever came across. 9. ... news he had conveyed would have horrified ... most women. 10. She looked with ... eager hungry eyes at ... bread, ... meat and ... beer that ... landlady brought. 11. I picked up ... morning paper, which had fallen from my hand and resumed my perusal of ... morning news. 12. I had ... privilege of meeting your mother and dad there. 13.

'I like you,' he said. It was ... very strange remark and ... old pipe I was smoking fell on ... floor. 14. At half past nine ... last patient left ... surgery. 15. It was ... most successful party I had ever attended. 16. ... thrill of that, moment was unbelievable. 17. Anyway it was ... Saturday of ... football game with Saxon Hall. 18. I asked ... question I feared to ask. 19. I took ... bottle I wanted and went off with it.

Exercise 18. Use the proper article. Point out the nouns, which denote an object (or a person) already mentioned.

1. She smiled. ... smile was perhaps ... result of ... long practice; she hardly moved her mouth. 2. My clothes were my Sunday best: ... light grey suit, ... plain grey tie, ... plain grey socks and ... brown shoes. ... shoes were the most expensive I'd ever possessed. 3. It was so nice of you to buy these books for me. I gathered up ... heavy volumes and looked round for somewhere to put them. 4. It was Ashley's birthday and Melanie gave him ... surprise reception that night. Everyone knew about ... reception, except Ashley. 5. Mr. Polteed unlocked ... drawer, produced ... memorandum, ran his eyes over it, and locked ... drawer up again. 6. 'Bring ... bottle of Scotch and ... ice bucket for Mr. Hopkins,' Helen said. After ... maid had brought ... bottle of Scotch and ... ice bucket, Hopkins filled his glass and took ... long drink.

Exercise 19. Answer these questions about yourself and your favourite things.

1) What is your favourite flower? 2) What is your favourite tree? 3) Which bird do you like most? 4) Which animal do you like most? 5) What is your favourite car? 6) What is your favourite musical instrument? 7) What is the tallest of all animals? 8) What is the fastest of all animals? 9) What is a mammal but it lives in the sea? 10) What is the largest living bird?

Exercise 20. What do you call the people of these countries?

1) England? 2) Russia? 3) Britain? 4) Ireland? 5) Wales? 6) Scotland? 7) Spain? 8) France? 9) Japan? 10) Germany? 11) China? 12) Switzerland? 13) America (the US)? 14) the Netherlands? 15) and your country?

Exercise 21. Complete these sentences using 'the' with the adjectives below.

<b>blind</b>	<b>injured</b>	<b>rich</b>	<b>unemployed</b>
<b>dead</b>	<b>poor</b>	<b>sick</b>	

- 1) Braille is a system of reading and writing by touch for \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2) Many people were killed in the plane crash. The bodies of \_\_\_\_\_ were taken away. \_\_\_\_\_ were taken to hospital.
- 3) Every English child knows the story of Robin Hood. It is said that he robbed \_\_\_\_\_ and gave the money to \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4) Those people with jobs have enough money but life is not so easy for \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5) Agnes has been a nurse all her life. She has spent her life caring for \_\_\_\_\_.

Exercise 22. Explain the functions of the articles or their absence with the italicised nouns:

1. He gave me a *message* for you. 2. The *road* past the *church* was quiet. 3. 'Is it true?' 'Oh, no. It's pure *imagination*.' 4. Only the *poet* or the *saint* can water an asphalt *pavement* in the confident *anticipation* that *lilies* will reward his labour. 5. The *path* led to a *labyrinth*, some choked wilderness, and not to the *house* at all. 6. Until he had reached the Republican lines he had travelled across the country and through the fascist lines as fast as a *countryman* in a good physical *condition* who knew the *country* well. 7. I remember now, I thought I felt a *bone*, and I swallowed a large *mouthful* of *bread* to send it down. 8. A *traveller* must be able to walk long *distances*. 9. They remain just as clearly divided in my mind as before but what has become a little confused in me is the *distinction* between the bad *man* and the good *one*. 10. Not a *word* was spoken, not a *sound* was made. 11. Thus in life there is ever the intellectual and the emotional *nature* – the *mind* that reasons, and the *mind* that feels. 12. He hesitated a *moment* at the *door* and tapped on it. 13. The three *men* made their way, single file, with Lewis leading them through the dim, purple-lighted *maze* of *corridors*. 14. Can a *bird* fly faster than an *aeroplane*? 15. Bill had just finished an all-afternoon *conference* with a media *representative*. 16. Edward left his employment with them nearly a *year* ago. 17. Every portrait that is painted with feeling is a *portrait* of the *artist*, not of the *sitter*. 18. In a sheltered *corner* was a wattle *tree*, its foliage silvery against the olive-green bush, its blossoms a *drift* of gold. 19. It is dark here and I cannot see what you have brought; is it a *book* or a *magazine*? 20. I meant I was a youthful *thing* and unimportant, and that there was no need to include me in the *conversation*. 21. Sally's seed of her future soul was her love for her mother, an aged bedridden *woman*. 22. He had met a young *woman* at a *party*, named May Macy, a moving-picture *actress*. 23. Here I am, he thought, talking to Earl Fox, a *scientist* who won the Nobel Prize. 24. A *day* of it to the untried *mind* is like *opium* to the untried *body*. 25. I was quick to weave *fantasies* with my mother, to build *houses* and furnish them, and give her *motorcars* and *furs*. 26. All available *chairs* were occupied, and at least a hundred people were standing. 27. A *voice* replied, telling him to keep out of the *moonlight*. 28. Just about everybody in the *town* is chasing the *dollar* so hard that they only have time to breathe on Sundays. 29. I call it a very mediocre *play*. 30. I liked *pleasure* and good *things*. 31. My mother died in May. From the *cemetery*, my father and I returned to the empty *house*. 32. He wanted to hide the *embarrassment* he felt at making this speech. 33. She glanced at Peter and saw that a *tear* was trickling down his nose. 34. She looked in her handbag for an *envelope*. 35. He thinks it's pure *nerves* and he's given me *pills*. You'd better hope that the *pills* do some good. 36. Peter was alone at home, enjoying the *solitude* and the *freedom* of the empty *house*. 37. You've never bought a *car* yet, have you? 38. The *moral* I draw is that the *writer* should seek his reward in the *pleasure* of his work. 39. I don't know how to talk to *children*. 40. We sat round the *table* in the *kitchen*. There was cold *meat*, *cheese*, a *bowl* of tinned *pears*, *jam-tarts*, and a *jug* of *cream*. 41. But I dare say you don't remember an old *woman* like me? 42. There was not a *cloud* in the *sky*. 43. The big *table* was covered with *texts* and *notebooks*. 44.

Why is it a *girl* has to be so silly to catch a *husband*? 45. A *fighter* is supposed to get beaten up, isn't he? 46. A *week* or two passed, but he hadn't got a *job*.

Exercise 23. Fill in the gaps with articles if necessary.

a) One day ... young prince arrived at ... castle of King Ottar and fell in love with ... king's youngest daughter, who was very beautiful. 'You can only marry my daughter,' said ... king, 'if you can recognize her, and you must marry ... woman you choose.' 'That's easy,' said ... prince, and King Ottar put all his daughters behind ... wall that had ... space at ... bottom, so ... prince could only see ... seven pairs of ... feet, and ... feet all looked ... same. Suddenly, one of ... feet moved and so ... prince said 'That is ... woman I love.' Unfortunately, it was not; it was ... King Ottar's eldest daughter who was not at all beautiful, but ... prince had to marry her. In fact, she was extremely intelligent and had ... good sense of ... humour, so that very soon ... prince did fall in love with her and they lived happily ever after. ... moral of this story is that ... love is ... very unreliable thing.

b) Yesterday ... light aircraft crashed into ... lonely hillside on ... border between Italy and Yugoslavia. ... pilot and ... two passengers were killed when ... plane came down in ... thick fog. So far, ... passengers have not been identified. ... pilot, Sr Antonio Ferrara was ... prominent Milan industrialist. ... countryside around ... crash site is hilly and ... rescue team from Venice had ... difficulty in locating ... aircraft. ... plane was found by ... local hunters and their dogs. Several bags containing ... millions of ... dollars in ... used banknotes were found beside ... plane. ... police are investigating.

Exercise 24. Fill in the gaps in this story, using 'a', 'an', 'a lot of', 'lots of', or 'the' if necessary.

Last week I went to ... exhibition of ... paintings at ... Tate Gallery in London. I'm not really ... great art lover but I'd read ... good reviews of ... exhibition and I was keen to see it. When I arrived, there were already ... people waiting outside for ... doors to open. I joined ... queue and in ... end ... doors opened and we went inside to see ... show.

Now, I must be honest and admit that many of ... paintings disappointed me. Although I spent ... time looking carefully at ... each one, I had ... difficulty in understanding what ... artist was getting at. Finally, as I was looking rather stupidly at one of ... paintings and trying to decide if it was ... right way up or not, ... old gentleman came up behind me and started to explain ... whole thing to me. He kindly answered all of ... my questions and we talked for over ... hour. Then he said he had ... appointment and had to go, so we shook hands and said goodbye. I went round ... gallery once more and now I found that all ... paintings seemed really beautiful.

It was only as I was leaving ... gallery that I found out who ... old man was – his self-portrait was on ... posters advertising ... exhibition!



### Exercise 25. Translate into English.

1. Какой ужасный день! Льет с самого утра. 2. Вам хорошо видна доска, ребята? 3. Скажи тете «спасибо», Бетти. 4. Они ехали за каким-то грузовиком. Грузовик был сильно перегружен. 5. Какой сюрприз! Неужели это вы, Джим? 6. Какой странный человек. Вы его знаете, Салли? 7. Какое унижение! Он еще никогда не был в такой ситуации. 8. Смотрите туда! Сейчас из-за скалы должна появиться их лодка. 9. «Бетси», автомобиль, была для него всем: его домом, его работой, его семьей. 10. Это очень старинные монеты. Они относятся к XIII веку. 11. Нашу собаку помог найти Джони, соседский мальчик. 12. Не бойся! Собака не кусается. 13. Я вижу, что это письмо. Я бы хотел знать, от кого письмо. 14. Какая чепуха! Никто этому не поверит. 15. Вот эти два высокие здания – многоквартирные дома, в которых будут жить наши сотрудники. 16. Приготовьтесь: как только мужчина свернет за угол, бегите к машине. 17. Какие у нее прекрасные глаза! Они как два глубоких озера с чистой водой. 18. Лу и Роза, молодые художницы, жили на самом последнем этаже. 19. Мне приснилось, что я – известная актриса кино.

### Exercise 26. Translate into English.

1. Это был маленький польский мальчик, на лице которого была начертана ненависть. 2. Он все время курил сигару. 3. Они были мало знакомы. Для него они были только людьми, которых он еда знал. 4. Он не сказал ни слова. Он вообще редко говорил. 5. Официанта звали Огюст. Он гордился тем, что за двадцать лет работы ни разу не уронил вилку. 6. Мальчик лет девяти или десяти, весь в лохмотьях, подошел к окну и смотрел в него минуты три. 7. Когда он перестал дрожать, няня выбежала в холл, чтобы послать за доктором. 8. Он игрок и чувствует, что однажды у него будет столько денег, сколько ему захочется. 9. Ее любимым рассказом был рассказ, напечатанный впервые, рождественский рассказ. 10. Я скоро вернусь. Я просто немного прогуляюсь. 11. Мистер Коузелл требует 55 центов. Он больше ничего не даст без денег. 12. Мистер Грей все отнес на кухню: дюжину зеленых луковиц, вареный картофель, свежие помидоры, дыню, чай и многое другое. 13. Это Дорин, дочь миссис Бейкер. Девушка ищет работу. 14. Ты от меня не уйдешь. Выходи или я сломаю дверь. 15. Ты не можешь изменить людей. Все, что ты можешь – это смеяться над ними. 16. Я хочу, чтобы мистер МакГрегор вернулся, так как через месяц мы ставим спектакль и нам нужен актер. 17. Джони, походи в магазин к мистеру Коузеллу и скажи ему, какой он замечательный человек. 18. Не снимайте картину. Комната будет голой и унылой. 19. – Фильм заканчивается тем, что парень целует девушку. – Какой оригинальный конец! 20. Вот тебе 10 центов. Пойди купи мне карандаш. 21. Его лучшими друзьями были книги. 22. Хорошо, сейчас мы все обсудим. Но прежде дайте мне закончить бифштекс.

## 2.2 ARTICLES WITH COUNTABLE NOUNS MODIFIED BY ATTRIBUTES

§ 11 Both the indefinite and the definite article may be used before nouns without any attributes and before nouns modified by different kinds of attributes. The meaning of attributes and their influence on the use of articles is different.

In accordance with their role in the choice of articles attributes may be divided into **limiting** and **descriptive**.

A **limiting attribute** is used to point out a particular object (a person, a thing, etc.) or a number of objects as distinct from all other objects of the same class or kind. A noun with a limiting attribute is used with the definite article in the specifying meaning.

e.g. There was a crowd of people in *the principal street* of the village.

A **descriptive attribute** describes an object or a number of objects; it may also give additional information about them, but it doesn't single out objects.

e.g. Edward wore *a large straw hat of native make*.

A descriptive attribute does not affect the use of articles; therefore, not only nouns with the indefinite article (as in the example above), but also nouns with the definite article can be modified by descriptive attributes.

In the example below the definite article is used with the noun modified by a descriptive attribute because the identification of the object is made with the help of the context.

e.g. *The big steamer* dropped our mail and went on its way.

Attributes modifying nouns may be expressed by separate words, word groups or clauses. They may be prepositional or postpositional.

### 2.2.1 MODIFICATION BY ADJECTIVES

§ 12 Attributes expressed by adjectives may be limiting or descriptive depending on the context or the situation. Thus, in the examples below the adjective *tall* is a descriptive attribute in the first sentence and a limiting attribute in the second sentence:

e.g. I saw *a tall* good-looking woman.

*The tall man* remained sitting and the short one approached us.

Adjectives in the superlative degree are always limiting attributes:

e.g. You are *the most irritating person* I have ever met.

**Note 1** It is possible to use the indefinite article before '**best**', but only when '**best**' and the noun after it together form a fixed expression, such as '*best friend*' or '*bestseller*'.

e.g. Is that what *a best friend* is for?

You ought to write a novel about it, could be *a bestseller*.

**Note 2** '**Most**' has other meanings: as a determiner, meaning '*the majority of*', and as an adverb, where it is very similar to '*very*'.

e.g. *Most* (the majority of) *shops* will be closed over the Christmas holiday.

We have *a most* (very) *important* matter to discuss.

There are some other adjectives which, like superlative adjectives, are used to identify unique things, and so the definite article is used before them. The most common of them are: *central, first, following, former, last, latter, left, main, next, only, opposite, present, principal, right, same, sole, ultimate, usual, very, wrong*, etc.

e.g. Is this *the right way* to the station?

We both went to *the same school*.

**Note 3** The indefinite article can be used before ‘**only**’ when it is used in the expressions ‘*only child*’, ‘*only son*’, and ‘*only daughter*’.

e.g. I was *an only child*.      b u t    I was *the only child present*.

**Note 4** The definite article is often used with ‘**wrong**’ even when it does not make sense to talk about only one wrong possibility.

e.g. If he gives *the wrong answer* the machine stops.

However, there are some cases where the indefinite article is used.

e.g. We’ve taken *a wrong turn*.

**Note 5** ‘**Next**’ and ‘**last**’ are commonly used in time expressions with nouns such as *day, night, morning, afternoon, week, year*, etc. without the definite article.

e.g. *Last year* the company made a profit of £350 million.

I’ll be busy and *next week*.

In past time contexts the definite article may be used in similar cases, but its use is not obligatory:

e.g. *The next day* he looked for her on the beach, but there was no sign of her or the children.

However, when the adjectives ‘**next**’ and ‘**last**’ are followed by an ordinal numeral the definite article is obligatory.

e.g. *The next three months* I studied art under the direction of an adept.

There is no article in such combinations as *on Monday last, in May last*, etc.

The definite article is used with comparative adjectives and adverbs to indicate how a difference in something involves a difference in something else.

e.g. *The simpler* the motion or operation, *the better* the worker will perform it.

As is clear from the examples given above, nouns modified by these adjectives often require postmodification by other attributes.

You can also use the definite article in front of one comparative adjective or adverb, especially after ‘**all**’, to emphasize that something will affect a situation.

e.g. You’ll sleep *the better* for it.

We’ll have him back here all *the quicker* if you co-operate with us.

The adjectives ‘**alleged**’, ‘**necessary**’, ‘**opposite**’, ‘**previous**’, ‘**lower**’, ‘**upper**’, ‘**usual**’, ‘**so-called**’, and some others may be used both as limiting and descriptive attributes, though they occur more often as limiting attributes.

e.g. *The previous owners* of the house had hired an expensive interior decorator.

Mark has two children from *a previous marriage*.

**Note 6** A noun (singular or plural) modified by the adjective pronoun ‘**other**’ is used with the definite article when two objects or two groups of objects are contrasted.

e.g. One of the twins was Reggie. What was *the other one* called?

However, when the speaker is not sure that all the rest of the objects are meant the definite article is not used:

e.g. He doesn't like *other people* interfering.

I suggested a camping holiday, but Kerry had *other ideas*.

The indefinite article with '**other**' is spelled as one word '**another**', which has the following meanings:

a) Different.

e.g. Isn't there *another word* that has the same meaning?

b) One more of the same kind, additional.

e.g. Peter's mum is expecting *another baby* in June.

In the second meaning '**another**' can be used with plural nouns preceded by '**few**' or a cardinal numeral:

e.g. We'll have to wait *another three weeks* for the results. (=an additional amount of time)

**Note 7** The use of articles with the adjective pronouns '**all**' and '**whole**' is determined by the situation. The definite article is used when we limit the number of objects spoken about.

e.g. Will *all the girls* please stand over here.

*All children* should be taught to swim.

*The whole process* will take months.

There is *a whole range* of therapies that may be suitable.

Adjectives can sometimes be postposed, i.e. they can follow the noun they qualify. Postposition is characteristic for such adjectives and adjectivized participles as '**absent**', '**present**', '**proper**', '**involved**', '**concerned**', and some others, which function as limiting attributes.

e.g. *The delegates present* discussed the agenda of the conference.

**Note 8** Some nouns with postposed adjectives form set phrases: *president elect*, *heir apparent*, *postmaster general*, *attorney general*, *notary public*, *princess royal*.

e.g. *The attorney general* is a member of the government but not of the cabinet.

Other adjectives when postposed often occur as heads of adjective phrases, which are usually used as descriptive attributes.

e.g. She had dark splendid eyes and *a red mouth tremulous with laughter*.

Exercise 27. Insert articles before '**most**' where necessary.

1. You have had ... most distinguished career. 2. This was ... most painful thought of all. 3. He had put himself in ... most unsatisfactory position, politically and socially. 4. She was ... most beautiful young girl; ... most beautiful girl he had ever seen. 5. ... most of ... women had flowers or little black feathers sticking up in their hair. 6. I started relating ... most interesting anecdote, but was somewhat surprised to observe that nobody was paying ... slightest attention to me whatever. 7. ... news he had conveyed to her would have terrified ... most women. 8. He was ... man of ... most subtle and refined intellect. ... man of ... culture, ... charm and ...

distinction. One of ... most intellectual men I ever met. 9. Her life held so little of ... real charm; and Aileen Butler was ... most significant element of ... romance in it. 10. Youth in her South Carolinian home had been simple and self-reliant; and unlike ... most American girls, she had not had too good ... time. 11. It was ... most beautiful room. It was ... most beautiful room in ... house. 12. Gentleman, he was ... most excellent man, ... most gentle, tender and estimable man, with ... simplicity of ... child. 13. ... Norman Conquest is one of ... most important events in ... English history, and it had ... greatest influence on ... history of ... language.

Exercise 28. Translate into Russian.

1. Большинство посетителей выставки интересовала только стоимость полотен, а не мастерство художника. 2. В 16 веке большинство людей считало землю центром вселенной. 3. Это самый глупый вопрос, который мне когда-либо задавали. 4. Сложившаяся ситуация чрезвычайно сложна; большинство людей на твоём месте отказалось бы даже от самой мысли что-нибудь изменить. 5. Она чрезвычайно надоедливая женщина. Её присутствие раздражает большинство моих друзей. 6. Я живу в чрезвычайно спокойном районе. Только немногим посчастливилось жить в таких условиях. 7. Мой племянник самый непоседливый ребенок в мире. Он проводит большинство времени, играя в шумные игры. 8. Большинство горожан – бедные рабочие, зарабатывающие доллар в час. 9. Большинство людей предпочитает платить добром за добро, так как неблагодарность – весьма неприятная вещь. 10. Большинство туристов отмечает, что это самое роскошное место на побережье. 11. Ты самый радушный хозяин, которого я когда-либо встречал. Но, почему-то, большинство твоих вечеринок плохо заканчивается.

Exercise 29. Insert articles before ‘few’ and ‘little’ and other nouns where necessary.

1. ... mother and I are planning to go to ... country for ... few days. 2. It was ... cold, windy evening and there were ... few people in ... Park. 3. ... few words that I have to add to what I have written, are soon penned. 4. We needn't take ... porter. We have ... little luggage. 5. When you've wanted something very badly and it comes at last, it is somehow ... little frightening. 6. ... little I have to say can be said in ... few minutes. 7. I am commonly ... man of ... few words. 8. One morning, when Rose was alone in ... breakfast-parlor, Harry Maylie entered; and, with some hesitation, begged ... permission to speak with her for ... few moments. 9. What ... little light there was came from one small window. 10. He paused, wishing he had not mentioned that fact. It was ... slip of ... tongue, one of ... few he ever made, due to ... peculiar pressure of ... situation. 11. Oh, I know there's no danger, but I'm ... little frightened all ... same. 12. Well, for instance, why don't you tell me about your sister? She always sounds fascinating, from ... little I hear, but I've no real idea what she's like. 13. ... old man replied that there were ... few grown persons as trustworthy or as careful as she. 14. Harriet closed her coat quickly and walked ... little faster. 15. We can't disguise from ourselves that there's ... little hope. 16. He accepted willingly my invitation to remain for ... few days in my apartment. 17. I

seem to have forgotten ... little I ever knew. 18. He tried to orient himself by ... stars; but it was ... cloudy night and ... few stars that were visible did not announce any constellation that he could recognize. 19. Carrie expostulated, begged, was very angry, even wept ... little, and, then suddenly capitulated. 20. Lufkin's tastes were austere. He spent ... little on himself. 21. I see very ... few women; but those are ... women of rank. 22. Mary offered to lend ... little she had. 23. I've traveled ... little, but not enough. 24. Surely, during ... few hours he might pass in ... cottage it would be easy for her to keep out of his way. 25. She respected him mightily but gave him ... very little thought. 26. When ... winter came he suffered ... good deal from ... cold and ... hunger, and often had to go to ... bed without any supper but ... few dried pears or some hard nuts. 27. He was one of ... few men of science who never terrified me, probably because he never behaved like ... doctor.

Exercise 30. Translate into Russian.

1. Мало кто понимает истинные мотивы его поступка, но и эти немногие предпочитают молчать. 2. Даже те немногие свидетельство существования НЛО заставляют большинство скептиков пересмотреть свои взгляды. 3. Ты отказался от большинства предложенных тебе вариантов. Если ты не выберешь хоть что-нибудь из того немногого, что осталось, будешь сам решать эту проблему. 4. Те несколько дней, которые он провел в тюрьме, состарили его на несколько лет. 5. Мы знаем мало о влиянии этого наркотика на организм человека, но и то немногое, что нам известно, достаточно, чтобы его запретить. 6. Всего лишь несколько минут прошло с тех пор, как он вышел из комнаты, но эти несколько минут показались ей вечностью.

Exercise 31. Fill in the blanks with articles before nouns modified by 'last' and 'next' wherever necessary.

1. Chile peering round ... last corner whispered hoarsely: 'If old Fishface catches us we'll need a double more.' 2. Then he wrote out a cable to Anne, telling her to get on ... next plane to Nice. 3. At the bar, Rudolph was clapped on the back by Sid Crosett, who had been Mayor of Whitby until ... last election. 4. Use it ... next time you come through. 5. We don't remember it until we say hullo to the mechanic in charge . . . next morning. 6. The Islands were ... last refuge of civilization in a world gone mad. 7. Find out what happened to my daughter in her native land in ... last six months. 8. Well, ... next time don't wait until you are on the point of suffocation, she said matter-of-factly. 9. They came down ... last half mile to Clune like homing horses. 10. He decided to re-read the play ... next day after he had thought about it for twenty-four hours. 11. I've eaten enough fish in ... last month to last me a lifetime.

Exercise 32. Translate into English. Pay attention to the use of articles before nouns modified by 'last' and 'next'.

1. Может быть, вы могли бы зайти ко мне на работу как-нибудь днем после обеда на будущей неделе? 2. Он знал, как следовало выполнить работу на станции, и в течение последующих нескольких дней с подозрением следил за

своим помощником. 3. Подожди меня на следующей станции. 4. «Последние двенадцать месяцев я работаю, – сказал он, – но я могу потерять работу в любой момент». 5. Как заколдованный, он смотрел на оставленную на соседнем столе еду. 6. Последние гости только что ушли. 7. На будущий год я буду вести семинар по искусству кино. 8. Это была последняя капля, к совершенно неожиданно он расхохотался. 9. В течение следующих двух дней Керри предавалась самым возвышенным размышлениям. 10. На следующей неделе у Джейн слегка поднялась температура и участился пульс. 11. Когда на следующее утро Лаура услышала, что Грант собирается поехать в Скун, вместо того чтобы провести день на реке, она возмутилась. 12. После того как он закончил последнюю проверку, он бросил ручку и откинулся на спинку стула. 13. В субботу вечером он был в театре на последнем спектакле. 14. Она решила навестить мать в деревне и собиралась приехать в город на следующий день. 15. Последние годы у него появилась страсть ездить на машине по девятьсот, тысяче миль за раз.

Exercise 33. Insert articles before nouns modified by the adjective pronoun **‘other’**, or before **‘other’** used as a noun wherever necessary.

1. ‘I have put you in ... other bedroom this time,’ she said preceding him up the stairs, ‘because the west one has been done up and it still stinks a bit.’ 2. Do you know what you are going to do if it turns out badly? – I’ll try ... other time. 3. But he saw on ... other side, nestling among the trees a white man’s house; he made up his mind and rather gingerly, began to walk. 4. ‘You want something, Mr. Indache?’ asked the bartender, who was reading a magazine at ... other end of the bar. 5. What do you plan to do if it fails? – Have ... other try.’ 6. The rumour which had been creeping about underground was now being openly discussed that Rhett Butler not only ran his own four boats and sold the cargoes at unheard-of prices, but bought up the cargoes of ... other boats and held them for rises in prices. 7. McCain was waiting at the shed with ... other two men who were to make the jump. 8. Then she came and sat down at ... other side of the hearth. 9. They are going to take these tablets ... other two weeks. 10. On ... other hand, her own feelings were a corrective influence. 11. The extension to the factory will mean taking on ... other twenty new employees. 12. Kate! But he was here only ... other day! 13. Sometimes he had been irritated by her calls, at ... other times moved by husbandly tenderness at the sound of the low, familiar, musical voice from a distant city, ... other side of a continent. 14. Is he cutting down on smoking? Slightly. It will take him ... other two years or even more. 15. They are probably going to replace the defective part with ... other one, which is new. 16. It’s encouraging him to have ... other try. 17. I am thirsty and want ... other glass of juice. 18. At 7200 feet they jumped one after ... other. 19. He spoke in a jerky, nervous fashion and with some giggling laughs in between but somehow he impressed me with fear more than ... other. 20. I’m afraid he hasn’t been able to cope while all ... others have been able to. 21. There was ... other thing I liked in Mrs. Strickland. 22. That shows you what I mean. I dare say there are ... other things. 23. A person who has not done one half of his day’s work by ten o’clock runs the chance

of leaving ... other half undone. 24. Her hands lay on her lap motionless, one in ... other loosely clasped. 25. There was ... other silence, not a long one. 26. The boy sidled nearer, moving one foot slowly after ... other. 27. There was ... other reason why he was disturbed. Though he was ambitious, he had high standards of behavior. 28. Fleur stole ... other look.

Exercise 34. Translate into Russian.

A) 1. Некоторые люди любят роскошь, другие предпочитают жить скромно, но все люди ценят комфорт. 2. На днях я встретил Джона, и он сказал, что остальные в группе нас тоже поддерживают. 3. Сейчас я на третьем курсе. Еще два с половиной года, и я получу диплом. 4. У меня нет другого выбора. За оставшиеся несколько часов я не найду другого человека, который займет мне еще \$1000. 5. В офис зашел еще один посетитель и тоже спросил мистера Брауна, словно другие люди в офисе не работали. 6. Я все еще плохо себя чувствую и, пожалуй, останусь дома еще на 3 дня.

B) Однажды в деревенском баре сидела компания фермеров. Среди других вещей, о которых они говорили, было эхо. Один из фермеров сказал, что в поле возле его фермы, там, где растет небольшая роща, есть удивительное эхо. Другие фермеры сказали, что им бы тоже хотелось услышать удивительное эхо, и фермер пригласил их прийти на следующий день. Но, на самом деле, эхо, о котором он рассказал другим фермерам, не существовало. Поэтому, придя домой, он приказал одному из своих слуг пойти в поле, спрятаться среди деревьев и повторять все, что будет сказано. На следующий день, когда пришли остальные фермеры, хозяин повел их послушать удивительное эхо. Когда они пришли в поле, фермер закричал: 'Эхо, ты здесь?' 'Да, хозяин. Я здесь уже два часа', – ответил слуга.

Exercise 35. Fill in the blanks with articles wherever necessary.

1. It was hot; the old people said that it was ... hottest spell which the town had ever known. 2. I made up my mind to see Strickland ... following evening. 3. I want you to explain to me why you won't exhibit Dorian Gray's picture. I want ... real reason. 4. 'Henry is ... best type of the American businessman,' he said, 'and I think you ought to know him.' 5. She was talking about thirty Africans who, at the request of the State Department were being admitted to Whitehall in ... coming semester. 6. Downstairs in ... small imagined kitchen I imagined ... small image of ... man groping for a phone beside him on ... floor. 7. He picked a photograph album from ... lower shelves, and came back across ... room looking for the place in the collection. 8. And clapping me in ... friendliest way upon ... shoulder he went away. 9. He sat back comfortably, in silence, allowing Dorlacker to make ... necessary moves. 10. In the middle of ... garden stood ... old summerhouse. 11. ... only difference in their eating habits was that he used his fork with ... left hand. 12. There was not ... slightest need for anyone to turn out the spare room but Mrs. Tinker obtained ... same pleasure from turning out a room that other people get from writing ... symphony, or winning ... cup of Golf or swimming ... Channel. 13. The haze of



factory smoke intruded on the sky and lay suspended like ... grey, flat tarpaulin above ... horizon. 14. But all ... previous criticism of her conduct was as nothing compared with the buzz of gossip that now went through ... town. 15. On ... upper side ... large piece of vegetation sprouted from the crest on ... band. 16. It seemed ... loveliest bonnet she had ever seen. 17. I imagine the French aristocrats thought practically ... same thing until ... very moment when they climbed into the tumbrils. 18. It was ... usual noisy crowded place filled with the smell of stale coffee, ... very French smell that haunts its houses with the ghosts of ten million coffee brewings. 19. As he spoke he opened a door and showed the way into a room which appeared to be very richly furnished – but again ... only light was afforded by ... single lamp half turned down. 20. He would do ... right thing and allow her to divorce him. 21. Mrs. Packletide was annoyed at the fact that ... wrong animal had been hit. 22. He had to stand all the way, and though there were at least five nice-looking girls in ... same compartment – and one was very close to him and two of ... others he had noticed several times before – not one of them showed ... slightest interest in him. 23. He meant that they were preparing their next speech and were merely waiting for ... next appropriate moment to give utterance to it. 24. As Grant was paddling ... last few yards he saw Pat's eye fixed on something along ... shore, and turned to see what it was.

Exercise 36. Fill in the blanks with articles wherever necessary.

Mr. Burton was ... first French teacher I had, and he was also ... most extraordinary person in ... school. He always wore ... dirty sports jacket with ... very large handkerchief in ... top pocket. He was always ... last to arrive in ... room, usually about ten minutes after ... rest of ... school had begun ... lessons. He was ... fat, slow person with ... very loud voice, who seemed to spend most of ... lesson talking to himself. ... best part of ... lesson was when he fell asleep, which usually happened about once ... week. Once we managed to go out of ... room quietly, and left him asleep at ... desk until ... next class arrived.

### 2.2.2 MODIFICATION BY NUMERALS

§ 13 Cardinal numerals are used only as descriptive attributes.

e.g. They received *three invitations* to Sunday parties.

In the following example the definite article is required by the situation.

e.g. *The five days* seemed an age to him.

Ordinal numerals are usually limiting attributes.

e.g. She was *the first celebrity* I interviewed.

No article is used when an ordinal numeral follows a noun.

e.g. See *Chapter Three* for more details.

Open the book and read the poem on *page 125*, please.

An ordinal numeral may mean 'another', 'one more'. A noun modified by an ordinal numeral in this meaning is used with the indefinite article.

e.g. The bookcase needs *a second coat* of paint.

**Note 1** The numerals ‘**first**’, ‘**second**’, ‘**third**’ in combination with certain nouns form set phrases, which may be used with the definite or the indefinite article according to the context or the situation.

e.g. There is *a first prize* of £10,000.

‘Stanley won’t come, he has been invited to *a first night* at the theatre,’ said Barbara.

Other set expressions especially of adverbial character are used without any article: *at first hand*, *at first sight*, *to do something first thing* (col.), *on second thought(s)*.

e.g. Many people have seen the horrors of war *at first hand*.

I’ll call her tomorrow – no, *on second thought*, I’ll try now.

Exercise 37. Insert articles before the noun ‘**number**’ and other nouns where necessary.

1. Thirteen years of life with Frank Cowperwood had taught her ... number of things. 2. ... colonel says our losses have not been heavy. ... exact number is not yet known. 3. To this particular dinner ... number of people had been invited. 4. Those who had any letters to deliver or any settled plan of going anywhere or doing anything, discussed their prospects ... hundred times ... day; and as this class of passengers was small, and ... number of those who had no prospects whatever was very large, there were plenty of listeners and few talkers. 5. While he was dancing, Cowperwood had occasion to look at Aileen. She passed close to him ... number of times. 6. He went up into ... picture gallery. On ... bureau there were laid ... number of letters and things to be attended to. 7. He thought of ... number of times that he himself had been ... coward. 8. I was flat on my back on ... stretcher and there were ... number of people in ... room, most with ... flashlights, all seemingly talking at ... same time. 9. Before it is all over, ... number of Facebook accounts will exceed ... number of ... people on ... planet. 10. Soon they came into ... main road where ... number of the king’s men were waiting. 11. I am only one of ... number of ... concerned citizen contributors. 12. ... number of people who feel challenged by their work is depressingly low while ... number of people who want to be challenged by their work is encouragingly high. 13. But ... notion of ‘elites’ is broadening, as is ... number of non-Americans who study in the United States. 14. ... guy driving is wanted nationwide for ... number of murders! 15. In 1916, ... number of cases just in New York City was reported to be nine thousand. 16. They heard ... tramping of horses and ... voices of ... number of men. 17. In these early days of the Internet Renaissance, ... number of great masters is in ... tens of thousands, not ... hundreds. 18. ... number of choices available added to ... confusion. 19. ... number of bundles were made up for them to carry. 20. In addition to communications in general, I include e-mail as a stand-alone force for peace for ... number of reasons. 21. These stores are able to increase trade ... number of ways. 22. ... number of all ... various kinds of living creatures is so enormous. 23. There could be ... number of reasons that Sarah would welcome her as a daughter-in-law, not ... least of which was the goings-on down that path.

Exercise 38. Fill in the blanks with articles if necessary before nouns modified by numerals.

1. ... three children came running along the deck. 2. Turn to ... page 3 to read our interview. 3. It was, as I have indicated, not a success. But ... second job was a sensational success. 4. Of all those to whom he appealed one was actually not in ... position to do anything for him; another was afraid; ... third was calculating eagerly to drive ... hard bargain; ... fourth was too deliberate, anxious to have much time. 5. She had only been out of the hospital ... five weeks, but she had beaten him in ... two straight sets. 6. But on ... fifth day he took the car to ... third floor, stepped out and never came back. 7. Mr. Pickwick was perfectly aware that ... tree is ... very dangerous neighbour in ... thunderstorm. He had ... tree on his right, ... tree on his left, ... third before him, and ... fourth behind. 8. Monte Carlo was suddenly full of kindness and charm, ... one place in the world that held sincerity. 9. And if he takes me on for ... second year, I'm to get three hundred. That means that in ... two years I'd have the best part of ... four thousand pounds. 10. ... professor Earle Fox ignored for ... second time ... buzzing signal from the secretary in ... adjoining office. 11. She wondered how many others there were like ... three of them, who had gone on blindly and happily living in ignorance, taking everything life had to give, till the moment when the world was shattered apart by an illness that shut them out of life. 12. He was explaining the work that was going forward – how one was discharging, another taking in cargo, and ... third making ready for sea. 13. But on this point I was soon to be relieved, for Silver giving a little whistle, ... third man strolled up and sat down by the party. 14. One evening ... little Hans was sitting by his fireside when ... loud rap came at ... door. At first he thought it was merely the storm. But ... second rap came, then ... third. 15. Jan Wadleigh, not in Madrid, a glass in his hand, was standing talking to Eliot Steinharold and ... third man, portly in a dark suit, the face, bronzed by the sun, under a shock of iron gray hair. 16. A woman, so long and slender that she seemed as fluid as the shadows and he had to look ... second time to be sure that she was not in truth a shadow. 17. What was ... first thing you hated – can you remember? 18. The editor, sensing the social drama of the letter, put it on ... second page of the paper, in itself a startling innovation as ... first two pages of the paper were always devoted to advertisements. 19. Everything they had done in ... three weeks since they had come back from the shack had made him more certain of that. 20. Two people would have to hold ... chair, and ... third would help him up on it, and ... fourth would hand him ... nail, and ... fifth would pass him up ... hammer. 21. The office of Professor Fox was on ... twelfth floor of the Physics Building. 22. In April, they will take part in ... second stage of the Mecsek Rally in Hungary. 23. Because she was confined to bed she could not leave the room when Mrs. Carlton's specialist arrived with ... second consultant to discuss the operation they wanted her to undergo. 24. Take care, Caroline, I've proposed twice now. I shall not propose ... third time.

Exercise 39. Fill in the blanks with articles if necessary before nouns modified by adjectives and numerals.

### Lost in the Post

Jack Ainsley, ... post-office sorter, turned ... envelope over and over in his hands. ... letter was addressed to his wife and had ... Australian stamp.

Jack knew that ... sender was Dicky Soames, his wife's cousin. It was ... second letter Ainsley had received since Dicky's departure. ... first letter had come six months before: Jack burnt that one without reading it. No man ever had less reason for jealousy than Ainsley. His wife Adela was to be trusted: she was ... splendid housekeeper and ... very good mother to their two children. However, he knew that Dicky Soames had been in love with Adela, and ... fact that Dicky Soames had gone away to join his and Adela's uncle years back hadn't changed his opinion about their relationship.

He was afraid that some day Dicky would return and take Adela from him.

Ainsley did not put ... second letter in his pocket as somebody might have seen him do it. At night he came to ... post office to get it and got in through ... window. Unfortunately when he was getting out he was seen by ... post-master. Ainsley did not want to tell ... truth – it was too humiliating – and so lost his job. Soon Ainsley discovered that he could not get any other permanent job as ... people did not trust him now. Life became hard.

One afternoon Ainsley came home and was surprised to see Dicky Soames who hadn't changed ... bit. Soames said he was delighted to see Ainsley. 'I missed ... both of you so much,' he added with ... friendly smile.

'Uncle Tom died,' Adela explained, 'and Dicky has inherited his money.' Then Adela turned to Dicky. 'Tell him ... rest,' she said quietly.

'Well, you see,' said Dicky, 'Uncle Tom left something over sixty thousand pounds and he wished Adela to have ... half. But he was angry because Adela never answered ... two letters I wrote to her for him. So he changed his will and left ... thirty thousand pounds, which were Adela's share to ... hospitals. Why didn't you answer them, Adela?'

Adela looked at her husband. Then she came up to him and took his hand. '... letters must have been lost,' she said. At ... moment Ainsley realized that Adela knew everything.

Exercise 40. Translate into English. Pay attention to the use of articles before nouns modified by numerals.

1. Когда три сестры Бронте выросли, они были вынуждены работать гувернантками, чтобы заработать на хлеб, так как были очень бедны. 2. Она с удовольствием вдохнула первый дымок сигареты. 3. Мы собрали все эти вещи вместе на полянке, и в качестве первой предосторожности срубили ряд колючих кустов. 4. Джордж пропал уже десять дней. 5. Он поставил первый том романа обратно в шкаф. 6. Он знал, что должен сделать третью попытку. 7. Он написал еще один (второй) роман. 8. На второй день, когда я снова встретил ее, она выглядела довольно привлекательной. 9. Она положила три чайных

ложки сахара во вторую чашку чая. 10. Впервые я увидел, что он неуверен и обеспокоен. 11. В течение первых двух дней из этих пяти она находилась в состоянии шока. 12. Впервые ей пришла в голову мысль, что она может не выздороветь. 13. В полночь Джен не спала, наблюдая, как две девушки шептались друг с другом. 14. Он вошел в двадцать шестую кабину и протянул руку мистеру Диллингу, мужчине его возраста. 15. Я сказал это во время первой поездки, которую мы предприняли вместе – когда мы взбирались на горы и смотрели вниз в пропасть. 16. Глава XIII начинается на странице 57. 17. – Вы смотрели обе серии этого фильма? – Нет, я посмотрел только первую и еще не успел посмотреть второй. 18. Дом N8 – четвертый справа. 19. За первым взрывом последовал второй, затем третий. 20. Привычка – вторая натура. 21. Наши студенты начинают учить второй язык на втором курсе. 22. Мой дом – третий справа. Мимо точно не пройдешь. 23. Учти, третьей возможности у тебя не будет. 24. Мои друзья и коллеги стали для меня второй семьей. 25. Боюсь, что вам придется сдавать экзамен во второй раз. 26. Это большой город. Его население превышает три миллиона. 27. Из двух братьев Дон самый высокий. 28. Ученые провели первый, второй, третий, четвертый эксперимент, но получили те же результаты. 29. Я выпил чашку чая, затем вторую, третью и лишь после четвертой понял, что утолил жажду. 30. Дети входили в зал парами. 31. Они познакомились на премьере. 32. Три года спустя у него родился второй сын. 33. В возрасте 50 лет Дэвид получил второе образование. 34. Прошел год, затем второй, а вестей все не было. 35. Сегодня вы спасли мою жизнь во второй раз. Вы действительно один из смелых!

Exercise 41. Revision: fill in the blanks with articles if necessary.

1. All had survived the crash – Kelly, his wife Margaret, his ten-year-old twin sons, the pilot and co-pilot and ... ten enlisted men. 2. You are ... extraordinary person. You never say ... moral thing and never do ... wrong thing. 3. Then she saw what was in ... main display case, and she forgot where she was or where she had come from. 4. After ... third drink he sat back comfortably in his chair, no longer self-conscious in the luxurious room. 5. ... most remarkable stroke of fortune brought me ... very man that I required. 6. These are just ... usual papers. 7. He is ... very soul of truth and honour. 8. Mrs. Mair says there is ... whole sackful of mail waiting for you at the post-office. 9. She rocked her head on the pillow and for ... first time I saw tears on her cheeks. 10. With ... Gale helping on ... other side, they got Reynolds to Craig's car and pushed him into ... back seat. 11. He didn't ask what ... right way was, in her opinion. 12. She was ... only child. 13. Well, I came down to look and ... only other person on the river was a lady, so I guessed you must be it. 14. He asks all ... right questions. 15. You look exactly ... same wonderful boy who, day after day, used to come down to my studio to sit for his picture. 16. He toyed with the idea of going to bed as ... quickest way of getting warm, but ... second glance at ... bed dissuaded him. 17. When he drove the car out of the gate of the hotel grounds, he turned, out of an old memory, in ... wrong direction, towards Antibes, instead of towards Juan-les-Pins and Cannes. 18. Gilly had been released from San Quentin at

about ... same time Fordyce had and ... two were inseparable. 19. But it was always ... wrong thing to laugh at Pat. 20. Her fine black eyes were ... most noticeable thing about her. 21. All the people Ellen had known in Savannah might have been cast from ... same mould so similar were their viewpoints and traditions. 22. While the Thompsons were operating their Bull's Head Saloon ... most notorious member of the Texas gun-stinging fraternity came to town. 23. Mind you, you have to remember that T. B. is ... most unpredictable disease. 24. Fine indeed, Grant thought, looking down at the map of Paris ... next morning. 25. He might have been M. P. had he chosen. Rannock was of course ... most celebrated man in the Five Towns, and the idol of ... populace. 26. I heard they're all in, and they all took ... same examination Eli did. 27. You are ... most loathsome beast that it's ever been my misfortune to meet. 28. It was maddening having to stay inside when outside ... first snow he had ever seen was falling. 29. I am writing such ... long letter because it is raining like crazy here and we can't finish ... second coat of the deckhouse. 30. This is ... second Sunday since my return and all day it has been windy. 31. ... next day he had shown Craig his play. 32. Colonel Kelly opened and closed his hands nervously, wondering how he could tell ... fifteen human beings behind the door about the interview with Ri Ying and the lunatic ordeal they were going to have to endure. 33. As they had known what he had been doing at his desk for ... last hour or so, they would have every right, bethought, to come storming out of their cubicles and into his office to tear his checkbook to bits.

Exercise 42. Revision: translate into English.

1. Другим частым посетителем дома был Анри Риз, управляющий банка, высокий сухой лысый человек, к которому Эндрю с первого взгляда почувствовал недоверие. 2. Предполагалось, что он приедет со мною, но в последний момент он вынужден был остаться в Нью-Йорке. 3. Когда поднялся занавес и были произнесены первые строчки, он испытал странное чувство. 4. Я всегда считал ее очень привлекательной девушкой. 5. Затем он рассказал Бреду о Вирджинии, о письмах, телефонных звонках, последней безумной сцене, происшедшей шесть недель назад. 6. Я предполагаю, что это самый замечательный момент в его жизни. 7. Он был польщен, но в то же время раздражен. 8. Вирджиния улыбнулась точно такой же улыбкой, какой она улыбалась всем остальным. 9. Это единственная проблема, которую я не могу решить. 10. Все повернулись к единственной в комнате женщине, которая молча слушала их спор. 11. Господин Эренхард казался подходящим человеком в данной ситуации. 12. Он приехал другим поездом. 13. Думаю, через несколько недель ты будешь скакать по горам с Леонардом и другими ходячими больными. 14. Анна, самое важное лицо в семье, повелительным жестом заставила его замолчать. 15. То был крайне неприятный разговор для всех них. 16. Он посмотрел на напечатанный список вопросов, которые ему дал Гейл, и прочитал еще раз первый вопрос. 17. Они все могут выйти через ту самую дверь, через которую мы все вышли. 18. В последний момент Уодли увидел его, выпрямился и улыбнулся ему. 19. Разве это не была та самая

возможность, о которой говорила Глэдис. 20. «Он очень красивый молодой человек, но недостаточно умен», – подумала Магда о Барте, когда впервые увидела его на железнодорожной станции. 21. Он сделал ей замечание уже в третий или четвертый раз, с того момента как они сели за стол. 22. Она открыла другую (вторую) дверь и увидела, что она ведет в переднюю. 23. – Я думала, что ты видела его в прошлый вторник. – Нет, но я увижу его в следующий вторник. 24. Шекспир и Сервантес умерли в одном и том же году. 25. Мы получили телеграмму в самый день нашего отъезда. 26. Вы дали мне не тот адрес. 27. Некоторые из гостей ушли рано. 28. Они живут на одной улице. 29. Он постучался не в ту дверь.

### 2.2.3 MODIFICATION BY PARTICIPLES

§ 14 Attributes expressed by present and past participles may be both prepositional and postpositional.

When placed in preposition they function as limiting or descriptive attributes depending on the context or the situation.

e.g. You are *a grown boy*: you must help your parents. (limiting)

The bat made up his mind to join *the winning side*. (descriptive)

In postposition a participle is usually the head of a phrase which may be descriptive or limiting.

e.g. Over the bed was *a fat little cherub dangling a lamp with a pink shade*. (descriptive)

Jack Almond was thought the cleverest of *all the young people attached to the Foreign Office*. (limiting)

Exercise 43. Fill in the blanks with articles if necessary before nouns modified by present and past participles.

A) 1. A man and his wife, in ... crowd coming out of the 71 auditorium through the lobby, passed nearby. 2. For an hour she had lost patience and her body had ruthlessly recorded the fact in ... rising temperature and ... raising pulse. 3. All forward traffic had been stalled at the control and there were only ... descending trucks passing. 4. To blow the bridge at ... stated hour based on the time set for the attack is how it should be done. 5. He was smoking a cigarette and he wore ... knitted cap and blanket style cape. 6. He fumbled with the lock and for a wild moment looked in ... car parked next to his to see if by chance the keys were in the ignition. 7. As the set was warming up he picked up his newspaper, turned to the sports pages and idly ran his eye down ... racing cards. 8. Maple Street was ... wide tree-shaped avenue which ran north and south from one end of town to ... other. 9. Imagine three very naughty little girls who liked all children, hated bedtime and had ... added advantage of being able to see in the dark. 10. The First Church of Barnhouse in Los Angeles has ... congregation numbering in the thousands. 11. Now let's remember this is a wedding not ... smoke-filled hotel room. 12. With the contentment of ... miser counting his money, Helen fondled the rest of the instruments one by one. 13.

What had started as almost a hobby had become ... ruling interest in his life. 14. There was ... quick startled wonder in her eyes when she opened the door and saw Jack standing there. 15. ... prickling sensation spread over the back of his neck.

B) 1. Kelly counted ... figures still surviving on the board. 2. Rose Waterford had ... blistering tongue. 3. I was like ... child brought to her first school, or ... little untrained maid who has never left home before. 4. The newcomer, unconscious of her interest, cast ... wondering eye over the menu. 5. There was ... bundle packed across one saddle that I did not understand. 6. In the dark he saw it was Pilar and he looked at the dial of his wristwatch with ... two hands shining in the short angle close to the top. 7. He lurched away like ... frightened horse barely missing the piano stool. 8. He had had ... intended destination. 9. ... knot tightening my lungs held for another second and then loosened. 10. The young man, who was tall and thin with ... sun-streaked fair hair, and ... wind- and sun-burned face, who wore ... sun-faded flannel shirt, a pair of ... peasant's trousers and rope-soled shoes, leaned over and put the heavy pack up onto his shoulders. 11. Down ... twisting road we went without a word. 12. The five men were spread out like the points of ... five-pointed star. 13. What would he do with ... remaining years? 14. He went down ... crowded lobby, smiled without warmth at two people he knew but did not wish to talk to. 15. There was ... crashing crack and a stab of yellow in the dark. 16. What you need is what ... working girl needs, a holiday that is a rest. 17. In the city she was always ... walking advertisement for the products she worked on. 18. He had been on the list for three days, but now the pain had almost disappeared in ... injured leg and all his vital signs were back to normal. 19. He rose his hand in ... mocking salute. 20. They watched him walk stiffly and self-consciously into ... darkened hotel. 21. He wondered what his old friend would think about him if he had happened to glance down at ... repeated signatures on ... scraps of paper scattered across ... littered desk. 22. It is clustered around ... abandoned lighthouse, ... lighthouse that was once needed when there was water enough around to let big ships come and go.

Exercise 44. Translate into English using participles as attributes wherever possible.

1. Он запер дверь, ведущую в зал. 2. Ребята, обслуживающие пушку, катили ее в начале процессии. 3. Квартирмейстер указал пальцем на женщину, стоящую рядом с ним. 4. Это была Вирджиния, с шарфом на голове, в отделанном мехом сером пальто. 5. Мы шли по длинному покрытому ковром коридору и затем повернули налево. 6. Он услышал приглушенный гул приближающегося самолета. 7. Я стоял у железных ворот гаража и некоторое время не мог войти туда. 8. У миссис Ван Хоппер была квалифицированная сиделка. 9. Он поднял глаза и увидел мужчину, стоящего перед ним. 10. Эндрю был человеком, наделенным почти чрезмерным терпением. 11. Затем он последовал за своим неизвестным другом обратно в освещенный зал. 12. Она посмотрела на него с шутливой улыбкой. 13. Он послал ей только записку, в которой сообщалось, что он возвращается. 14. Он оглянулся и увидел идущего к нему пятнадцатилетнего мальчика. 15. Наступила гнетущая пауза. 16. Он пошел в указанное направлении и вскоре очутился у магазина Камерона. 17. Грант с



интересом посмотрел на написанные карандашом слова. 18. Красная неоновая вывеска тускло мигала, жужжа как умирающее насекомое. 19. Техники и военнотружашие, участвовавшие в работе, знали, что проводится испытание, но испытание чего – они не имели представления. 20. На двери, ведущей на веранду, Барт прочел «Доктор Смит».

## 2.2.4 MODIFICATION BY NOUNS IN THE GENITIVE CASE

§ 15 When an attribute is expressed by a noun in the genitive case the article or its absence mostly refers to the noun in the genitive case. The meanings of articles used with nouns in the genitive case are the same as with nouns in the common case:

1) the specifying meaning.

e.g. *The man's eyes* (= the eyes of the man) were veiled with tears when he pictured this scene to himself.

2) the nominating meaning.

e.g. She is *a neighbour's daughter* (= the daughter of a neighbour).

3) the generalizing meaning:

e.g. There must be some poison in *a lion's teeth* (= the teeth of any lion) because I sometimes have a pain in my left leg where that confounded lion got hold of me.

4) the generic meaning.

e.g. *The poet's talent* (= the talent of the poet) is born with him, but I doubt if this can be said of the artist.

**Note 1** No article is used if a noun in the genitive case is a proper name or an adverb.

e.g. *Margaret's face* did not show what she was thinking about.

We didn't go to *yesterday's concert*.

A noun in the genitive case may be used as a descriptive attribute to the head noun; the article (or its absence) then refers to the head noun, as in *a women's college*, *a children's hospital*, *a doctor's degree*, *widow's weeds*, *a doll's house* (BrE, AmE – *a doll house*), *sheep's eyes*, *cow's milk*, *lady's stockings*, *a lady's maid*, *a world's fair*, *a three months' leave*, *a summer's day*, etc.:

e.g. In a spacious drawing-room at the north side of the college she found her mother, a slight woman in *widow's weeds*, with faded brown hair, and tearful eyes.

In the example above *widow's weeds* means a kind of '*black clothes worn by a woman whose husband has died*'. The absence of the article before *widow's weeds* refers to the plural noun *weeds*. It is important to note that such combinations cannot be substituted for by of-phrases.

A noun in the genitive case used as a descriptive attribute is not a determiner; it may be preceded by other attributes also referring to the head noun.

e.g. Especially at *a big children's hospital*, it is hard to overlook Ronald McDonald House Charities, which operate over 320 facilities in 52 countries.

Compare: with nouns in the genitive case used as determiners: attributes placed before them never refer to the head noun.

e.g. They saw *the old woman's house* in the clearing before them, but there

were no signs of life there.

Exercise 45. Fill in the blanks with articles if necessary before nouns modified by other nouns in the genitive case.

A) 1. It is beneath ... man's dignity to listen and give importance to rumours. 2. Head teachers of secondary schools through their association have called for an urgent reconvening of the Burnham pay negotiating committee in an attempt to settle ... teachers' dispute. 3. They found on the dressing table ... unpaid dressmaker's bill. 4. Back from sea M. Eden came homing for California with ... lover's desire. 5. It was ... peasant's face, the cheeks hollow under the high cheekbones, the beard stubbled, the eyes shaded by the heavy brows, big hands holding the rifle. 6. Riley, listening to the wild cat with ... itchy hunter's look, snatched at the leaves blowing about us like midnight butterflies. 7. There was a burst of welcoming voices, ... woman's laugh, and the sound of it mingled with the banging of doors. ... woman's laugh stayed in his mind. 8. The National Association of Teachers in Further and Higher Teachers Education, which is 78,000-strong, is to hold its first national ballot for strike action if the employers do not improve their pay offer, ... union's national council decided yesterday. 9. He looked through the trees to where Primitive, holding the reins of the horse was twisting ... rider's foot out of the stirrup. 10. He justly said no one knew better than he the hardship of ... author's trade and if he could help a struggling journalist to earn a few guineas by having a pleasant chat with him he had not the inhumanity to refuse. 11. The woman wanted to know what Basil thought of ... boy's character. 12. But there came a time when ... buck's ears lifted and tensed with swift eagerness for sound. 13. He began to experience the almost forgotten feeling, which hastens ... lover's feet. 14. Jan answered ... doctor's questions reluctantly. 15. ... coal board's western area punishment squad yesterday carried out its threat to lay off 1,800 miners from the three-pit complex in Geigh-Wigan area.

B) 1. He lost himself in search of the ultimate answer to the enigma of ... man's role on this earth. 2. Today, from 1 p.m. till 2 there will be a picket at ... regime's embassy, South Africa House in ... London's Trafalgar Square, to mark the appeal in court in South Africa of 76-year-old trade union leader Oscar Mpetha. 3. She was ... headmaster's daughter. 4. She wondered looking at ... Mrs. Carlton's calm face, how often she had wept silently into her pillow when her husband had failed to come. 5. John wore ... telegraph messenger's coat, which was far too big, and a cap, which was not quite big enough. 6. Len Murray, ... former general secretary of the TUC, is also among the four new life peers created in ... New Year's Honours List. 7. 'I have often wondered,' he said, 'why there is a kind of a Christian awe about ... confectioner's shop.' 8. ... newspaper's international Prize tournament attended by the strongest ice-hockey teams was an important event in the preparation for the world and European championship. 9. They can carry on an amusing and animated conversation without ... moment's reflection to what they are saying. 10. ... aunt Pitty's apprehensions quieted when she saw that Rhett was on his best behaviour. 11.

She saw ... girl's face break into laughter, her hand go up and tousle his hair affectionately. 12. In an interview on ... BBC Radio's Women's Hour, the Prime Minister said the government had been reluctant to put up interest rates. 13. If any of ... Britain's five major plants are closed it will be clear statement by this government that Britain is finished as a manufacturing and industrial nation. 14. The room had the look not of ... writer's workshop, but of a memorial to a great name. 15. Denwaby Close was not just a substantial farm; it was a monument to ... man's endurance and skill. 16. The popular professor had called the meeting in the hope that on this one subject at least the representatives of the various parties would be able to get through ... hour's discussion without quarrelling. 17. ... coal board's refusal to negotiate with ... miners' union has provoked ... industry's supervisor's union NACODS to boycott all national discussions with the coal bosses. 18. The books were so much a part of ... room's decorative scheme that you wouldn't have dared to have taken one. 19. Eve rose, casting down, for Ralph to see, a startled and indignant look at ... doctor's wife's body as if it were an offensive piece of rubbish washed up on the pure sands' of her mind. 20. He would abandon ... hero's or ... martyr's end gladly. 21. Speculators bought up boatloads of goods and held them for a rise in prices. The civilian population had either to do without or buy at ... speculators' prices. 22. He learned ... trader's name but he also learned that the trader had sold Phebe to a 'private party'. 23. He turned his head to review the crescent of landscape around the beach, as if through his fresh eyes ... doctor's wife could renew her sense of ... island's beauty. 24. The man came out of the twilight when the greenish yellow of ... sun's last light still lingered in the west.

C) 1. He took ... doctor's arm and led him out of the room. 2. He went up to the third floor where ... assistants' office was located. 3. She lives in ... doll's house at the back of the garden. 4. That dog is a proper brute with strangers. I've known him bite clean through ... lady's stockings. 5. They were promised ... four days' rest. 6. With one hand on ... young man's shoulder, he went up the stairs. 7. She is out visiting ... neighbour's daughter. 8. Thirty years before she taught at ... smart girls' school. 9. He sat on the floor stroking ... cat's fur. 10. After ... two months' leave I was sent to ... Officers' Training Camp in Dorset. 11. In that mood I was unsuitable for attending ... parents' meeting at the school. 12. The scheme of study in ... Teachers' Training College is based upon compulsory and optional subjects. 13. The theatre had ... three weeks' ballet season. 14. Very early in my life I was taught not to believe ... girl's tears. 15. I was told by my friends not to believe ... girl's tears. 16. I stopped at the door to ... Holly's apartment. 17. ... chief's remarks left me indifferent. 18. She spoke guardedly, and her green eyes veiled themselves like ... parrot's eyes. 19. 'Is that Mr. Blair?' ... woman's voice asked in the telephone. 20. Then she leaped to one side as ... car's brakes screamed behind her. 21. By ... clown's grimace on his face I understood what he was suffering.

Exercise 46. Translate into English using nouns in the genitive case wherever possible.

1. У друга отца Чила где-то здесь гараж. 2. Он пододвинул стул к кровати Сан, и они поговорили шепотом. 3. После минутной паузы метрдотель тоже засмеялся. 4. С ним был еще один мужчина, тоже в черной крестьянской блузе и темно-серых брюках, которые были почти формой в той провинции. 5. Памятник художнику – его произведение. 6. Поезд Барта прибыл на центральную станцию около половины шестого, и он пошел в гостиницу для военнослужащих. 7. Ей было стыдно просить девушку выполнять обязанности прислуги. 8. Джин, походи и скажи им, что они должны немедленно убрать эти вещи наверх. Я не могу допустить, чтобы эта комната была похожа на свалку (место для старой одежды). 9. Уж поверь (разве ты не согласишься) женскому инстинкту в этом деле. 10. Обычно Скарлетт раздражало присутствие ребенка, но он всегда вел себя очень хорошо на руках у Ретта. 11. Положение Джэксона было жалким. Он не мог прокормить (заработать на пропитание) семью своей работой и торговлей вразнос. Ему не дали даже работу ночного сторожа. 12. Жена священника, которая не выносила никаких скандалов, попросила англичанина сказать Лиспет, что он вернется и женится на ней. 13. Я зажег сигарету, чтобы дать себе минуту подумать. 14. Отношения двух стран должны расширяться на основе равенства и взаимной выгоды. 15. Тень омрачила лицо Дорин. 16. Это выставка старика Челленджера, и мы здесь благодаря его доброй воле. 17. Они прошли с милу и присели на ступеньках небольшого здания. 18. Дом был обставлен с очень хорошим вкусом, старина в нем разумно сочеталась с современностью, и Майкл был прав, сказав, что это, несомненно, дом джентльмена. 19. Новая модель фирмы, Ланция Ралли 0,37 – легкая и достаточно мощная машина. 20. «Хорошо, хорошо, – сказал он устало. – Все, что угодно, за спокойную жизнь». 21. СПИД (AIDS) – приобретенный синдром иммунной недостаточности – вызывается одним или большим количеством вирусов, которые разрушают естественную защиту организма от инфекций. 22. Какое ты имеешь право идти в полицию и сообщать имя девушки, как будто она воровка или потерянный зонтик или что-то вроде этого? 23. Она погладила девушку по голове, не глядя на нее. 24. Где вчерашняя газета?

### 2.2.5 MODIFICATION BY NOUNS IN THE COMMON CASE

§ 16 Nouns in the common case frequently occur as attributes to other nouns. They do not influence the choice of article in front of them; the choice of article depends on the context or situation. In this function they do not take plural endings.

e.g. *The leather binding* was worn and the pages were yellow with age.

Proper nouns are often used as modifiers, and so you often find an article in front of a proper noun when you would not expect one, or no article where you would.

e.g. *The London line* began ringing.

Water wheels were pumping *Thames water* to the City.

‘London’ is a proper noun usually used with no article; ‘Thames’ usually needs the definite article. But in the above examples they are all modifiers and the article in front of them applies to the whole noun group.

**Note 1** In modern English we often come across more than two nouns in the common case used as attributes:

e.g. *The winter tennis tournament* ended only yesterday.

Exercise 47. Supply articles for the nouns modified by nouns in the common case if necessary.

1. Once he passed close to ... troop truck and the lights flashed and he saw their faces fixed and sad in the sudden light. 2. Then they heard the noise of ... hand grenades heavy and sudden in the gay rolling of ... rifle fire. 3. He called ... observation post and he was not there. 4. This was how they were talking in the sawmill, while Anselmo waited in the snow watching the road and the light in ... sawmill window. 5. There was ... telephone line running along the road and its wires were carried over the bridge. 6. During the next few months the cub took every opportunity that came her way to harry elephants and there were many such occasions for ... elephant season was beginning. 7. ... mill hands said that Leslie kept them working all summer in order to be able to take their money away. 8. Then he comes back, crooks his finger, gives you ... cultured pearl necklace he’s smuggled in, and you fall into his arms. 9. He came up the street bank by ... Dawson barracks with shivering heart and shaking knees. 10. Now, he drew two large wheels with circles around them and a short line for ... gun barrel. 11. It was necessary that ... Delaney cards should be filled during the third period. 12. ‘He might have been given ... Nobel Prize at one time,’ the man in the taxi thought. 13. Anselmo grunted. ‘I’m going for wine,’ he told Robert Jordan. Robert got up and lifted the sacks away from ... cave entrance and leaned them one on each side of ... tree trunk. 14. ... school bell was Kenny Stearns’ secret love. 15. I had arrived early and had been taken upstairs to admire ... Hale children.

## 2.2.6 MODIFICATION BY PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES

§ 17 A prepositional phrase consists of a preposition followed by a noun (*at the window, for his children*). A prepositional phrase may be used as a limiting or a descriptive attribute.

e.g. As I took the cup from her I was conscious of *the click of a camera*. (a limiting attribute)

From one of the bookshelves Julia took *a bundle of her latest photographs*. (a descriptive attribute)

A prepositional phrase may contain various prepositions, but the most frequently used is a phrase with the preposition ‘**of**’, or the ‘**of**’-phrase, which is a genitive equivalent in modern English. The meanings of the ‘**of**’-phrase are difficult to define and classify. The main identifiable meanings of structures with descriptive ‘**of**’-phrases are as follows:

1) A container with its contents: *a box of matches, a cup of tea, a pot of coffee, a bowl of soup, a glass of water.*

**Note 1** Compare with *a matchbox, a tea-cup, a coffee-pot, a soup bowl*, etc., which are used for empty containers.

2) A certain quantity: *a lump of sugar, a slice of lemon, a pinch of salt.*

3) Measure: *a temperature of 20° C, a height of two hundred meters, a weight of two pounds, a distance of three miles, a pound of butter.*

4) Origin: *a native of Wales, a man of Kent, a descendant of a good family.*

5) Characteristics of an object: *a woman of great charm, a man of courage, a question of importance, a matter of urgency.*

6) Age: *a man of middle age, a boy of five.*

7) Material a thing is made of: *box of cedar wood, a heart of gold* (metaphorical use).

**Note 2** In modern English the ‘**of**’-phrase is rarely used to denote material. As a rule we find an attributive noun in preposition to the head-noun in this meaning: *a ring of gold – a gold ring; a wall of glass – a glass wall.*

8) Composition: *a herd of deer, a crowd of people, a flock of birds, a bunch of flowers, a sheaf of documents, a pile of papers.*

9) Two objects of the same kind or an object consisting of two parts of the same kind: *a brace of pheasants, a pair of gloves, a couple of apples, a pair of trousers.*

10) Indication of implied analogy: *a beast of a man* (i.e. a man behaving like a beast), *a peach of a girl* (i.e. a girl as beautiful and fresh as a peach), *a gem of a housekeeper, a fool of a woman.*

**§ 18** The ‘**of**’-phrase may have a limiting force as well. There are two cases where an ‘**of**’-phrase after a noun suggests a unique interpretation and so normally requires the definite article.

1) Where the noun involved refers to an action, event, or state and the ‘**of**’-phrase indicates the performer of the action or the thing affected.

e.g. *The closure of the centre* would be a terrible loss to the community.

2) Certain nouns which refer to a part or characteristic of something are followed by an ‘**of**’-phrase very frequently, and have unique reference. Here are some nouns like this: *back, beginning, bottom, edge, end, front, height, length, middle, price, size, title, top, weight*, etc.

e.g. The railway station was built on *the edge of town.*

**Note 1** If a head-noun refers to a part or a section of a thing denoted by a noun in the ‘**of**’-phrase, the head-noun may be used either with the definite or the indefinite article.

e.g. *the (a) leg of the table, the (a) wheel of the car, the (a) door of the car*

**Note 2** With animate nouns the genitive case is usually used in similar cases: *the cat’s paw, the man’s leg.*

A prepositional phrase may contain a gerund instead of a noun. Prepositional gerundial phrases are usually limiting attributes.

e.g. I heard that he had started off for South Africa in *the wild hope of*

*making a fortune.*

Sometimes a prepositional gerundial phrase is treated as a descriptive attribute, especially when its head-noun is an object of the verb **'have'**.

e.g. He had *a feeling of missing something important.*

Exercise 48. Use the proper article where necessary. Pay attention to the nouns introduced by the preposition **'with'**.

1. If only it were possible to love without ... injury. 2. 'Basil' cried ... lad, clutching ... arms of his chair with ... trembling hands, and gazing at him with ... wild, startled eyes. 3. She drew back with ... haughty gesture, as if he had intended actually to touch her. 4. Samtiel passed up ... square with ... rapt expression. 5. Roy could see ... things in ... bush that no other trapper saw, and could then recount it all with ... good story-teller's fascination for his subject. 6. On his way to ... station William remembered with ... fresh pang of disappointment that he was taking nothing to ... kiddies. 7. ... eyes were brown, with ... straight and eager glance. 8. It was ... little pink house with ... white snow on ... roof and ... green windows and ... brown door. 9. I looked at it with ... incredulous delight. 10. Then men, again without ... order, scattered through ... farm. 11. She made it impossible for Roy to get ... money without ... good reason.

Exercise 49. Use the proper article. Pay attention to the noun introduced by the preposition **'in'**.

1. Mr. Povey put both his hands in his pockets, got up, went to ... window, whistled, and generally behaved in ... manner, which foretold worst. 2. In ... united blush they turned away, up ... gradual slope. 3. He was in ... real hurry now, for he knew where he was going and he was willing to take ... chances. 4. He had to keep going west, west of Silver River, even northwest of it in ... giant circle. 5. ... lieutenant explained to me in ... low voice, stabbing ... finger at his map, 'Three hundred have been reported in this village here.' 6. ... politics are in ... sad way everywhere, I am told. They certainly are in England. 7. He looked at me in ... puzzled way. 8. Isabel wore ... jersey and her hair in ... plait. 9. Why are you not in ... uniform? 10. ... houses across streets were in ... ruins. 11. He looked up from his bootlaces in ... agony of ... embarrassment. 12. At ... far end, against ... wall, there was ... tall, slender pear-tree in ... fullest, richest bloom. 13. 'Where are those hunters now?' he asked in ... delight. 14. Bareheaded, all in white, with his sleeves rolled up to ... shoulders, he leaped into his place. 15. It was one of those remarks, which aren't funny in black and white but irresistibly comic in ... actuality. 16. When he opened ... door ... parlour appeared in ... full illumination.

Exercise 50. Use the proper article. Pay attention to the nouns introduced by the prepositions ‘as’ and ‘like’.

1. I am afraid that Lord Illingworth regards ... woman simply as ... toy. 2. Man of Orizava watched Chief keenly, as ... possible rival. 3. Mortified, as ... child from whom ... sixpence is filched, she said: ‘There’s Wilfrid!’ 4. He’s sending you back your marriage lines as ... gentle reminder. 5. I’m not telling ... story for ... sake of talking merely, but as ... warning against ... betting. 6. The USA is considered as ... possible partner in trade. 7. ... British security forces operate as ... state within ... state. 8. Ernest is unvariably calm .... Nothing is so aggravating as ... calmness. 9. From ... plain mortar-bursts rose unchangingly, smoke as solid as ... stone. 10. It seems to me to be simply like ... wonderful ending to ... wonderful play. 11. Her heart beat like ... heavy bell. 12. But it all seemed unreal, like ... picture in ... newspaper. 13. ... sky shone pale, and one bird drifted high like ... dark fleck in ... jewel. 14. From ... bridge they had ... sudden view of ... raw gash in ... earth; and ... hundreds of ... men were crawling about it, busy with ... minute operations, like ... flies in ... great wound. 15. They’re covering this whole area like ... forestry patrol. 16. ... kitchen was large and clean and bright with ... electric oven which had ... control panel like ... bomber’s. 18. One watchtower sank behind, another appeared, like ... weights on ... balance.

Exercise 51. Supply articles for the nouns modified by prepositional phrases. Determine whether the prepositional phrases are limiting or descriptive.

1. And if it comes to that, what’s wrong with ... people in the hotel? 2. ... man at the control would not give the safe-conduct back. 3. How good to be like ... hand within a glove that stretches out and grows wonderfully cold in the hot sand. 4. When he came into the room, Smith went at once to ... woman in the uniform and bowed to her. 5. He saw ... girl with long hair springing back into two pigtails. 6. We ate in ... pavilions on the sand. 7. He was dressed in ... singlet without arms, and ... pair of duck trousers. 8. Then ... sniper behind the boulder a hundred yards down the slope exposed himself and fired. 9. Aunt Carrie and Julia’s mother, Mrs. Lambert, lived in the morning-room, ... long narrow room with Empire furniture. 10. This passenger had come with ... ship from the Baltic state that owned her, but there was something about his appearance, in spite of his clothes, his moustache, that suggested he was really ... native of this island. 11. In order to be on the safe side Bart rang up Jan from ... telephone-booth near the railway station. 12. ... faces on the wharf began to take on individuality. 13. She leaned back against ... wall of the cupboard and he rubbed his nose against hers. 14. Now the mob was pressed tight against the door and from the square ... big drunkard in ... black smock with ... red and black handkerchief around his neck, ran and threw himself against ... press of the mob. 15. The snow was falling through ... hole in the roof on ... coals of the fire. 16. Glancing at ... clock above the door I saw that it was two o’clock. 17. It was dark and he looked at ... light across the road and shook his arms against his chest to warm them.



Exercise 52. Fill in the blanks with articles modified by ‘of’-phrases wherever necessary.

1. Robert Jordan saw ... woman of about fifty almost as big as Pablo, in ... black peasant skirt and waist, with heavy wool socks on heavy legs. 2. She was here with the news and was in such ... state of radiant exultation as I'd never seen. 3. He had ... face of one who walks in his sleep. 4. El Sordo went into the cave and came out with ... pinch bottle of scotch whiskey and three glasses. 5. Just, however, as he reached ... top of the great oak staircase, a door was flung open, and a large pillow whizzed past his head. 6. In the pocket with the wire he felt his players with the two wooden awls for making holes in ... end of the blocks and then, from the last inside pocket, he took ... big box of the cigarettes. 7. He saw my face and stopped; then he came over quickly to stand beside me, giving me ... little smile of reassurance. 8. He slapped ... handful of notes on ... top of the table. 9. Her hair black and curling fell down her back, and she wore ... wreath of scented flowers. 10. You have told your car to wait round the corner so that it should not stand outside the door and by its magnificence affront his poverty, but at the door he says: ‘You’ll find a bus at ... bottom of the street.’ 11. Their furniture consisted of ... couple of grass-mats on which they slept, ... fragment of looking glass. 12. She was a native, ... woman of somewhat commanding presence. 13. Lights were flickering on along the wharf, immediately giving the unlit entrances ... sombre air of mystery. 14. A few weeks after this, the purchase was completed and at ... close of the season the Minister and his family went down to Canterville Chase. 15. He was in the act of adding ... picture of bananas, an apple and ... head of Queen Elizabeth to ... long line of others, when Mary Poppins walked up to him, tiptoeing so as to surprise him. 16. A deep harsh note boomed under the palms, spread through ... intricacies of the forest and echoed back from ... pink granite of the mountain. 17. That’s why I offered to make her ... present of her wedding dress. 18. From her bed she could see the snowflakes falling like ... swarm of white butterflies. 19. She drew ... tumbler of water and dissolved ... large spoonful of white powder in it. 20. They had a mile to walk to reach ... edge of the plateau where they would be able to see some expanse on the lower and sheltered side. 21. He said, ‘Thanks’, and straightened with ... smile of apology, a difficult effort on the long intense face, more an apologetic grimace than a smile. 22. If only they could reach Malaga before dark! There must be a French or British agent in ... port of such importance. 23. Sheltering from ... steady drift of a cold desert wind, they lay on their backs surrounded by hard and flat exposure. 24. He is ... political figure of great importance. 25. He picked his way to ... seaward edge of the platform and stood looking down into the water. 26. Every force of his being impelled him to spring up and confront the unseen danger, but his soul dominated the panic, and he remained squatting on his heels, in his hands ... chunk of gold. 27. ‘Hey!’ said ... owner of the foot, turning around. 28. She was ... steamship of some 3,500 tons, flying ... flag of one of the new Baltic states. 29. Jerome Haring, ... private soldier of General Sherman’s army, then confronting the enemy at and about Kennesaw Mountain, Georgia, turns his back upon ... small group of officers, with whom he had been talking in low tones. 30. It’s ... face of a conspirator. 31. It was ... city of

over 500,000, with ... ambition, ... daring, ... activity of ... metropolis of a million. 32. ... next stage of the visit began now as Mrs. Broadwith brought in ... cup of tea. 33. I did have ... idea of going back to camp but now I've met you and I wouldn't mind postponing it. 34. The girls have ... way of looking as though they're pretty much satisfied with everything. 35. Jess and I've been talking about ... possibility of his getting back into production one of these days, and I'll know where I can get hold of him.

Exercise 53. Use the proper article in noun-groups with 'of'-phrases.

1. At last she smiled and there was in her eyes ... look of ... superhuman love. 2. He could only see ... rows and rows of ... faces around him. 3. My tongue stuck to ... roof of my mouth and I could hardly articulate. 4. You see she's ... daughter of ... great friend of mine, ... professional man, ... dentist. 5. She heard this with ... strange feeling of ... curiosity and ... wonder. 6. It was ... very proper room for ... manager of ... first-class theatre. 7. By now they came to ... mouth of ... harbour. 8. ... crowd of ... young men, some in jerseys and some in their shirtsleeves, got out. 9. She was lying asleep there, with her face on ... side of ... pillow. 10. ... odd feeling of ... curiosity made him look through ... keyhole. 11. George said that ... same kind of ... thing, only worse, had happened to him some months ago. 12. She looked ... pretty determined sort of ... woman. 13. If he had not known she was ... daughter of ... lord, he would have thought her American. 14. Bart could hear ... tinkling of ... china, ... rattling of ... silver, and ... gush of ... anger went through him. 15. Doreen felt ... pang of ... grief at ... thought of her father. 16. He heard ... soft plop of ... lighted gas and ... rattle of ... kettle. 17. She ought to have been more conscious of her standing as ... wife of ... professional man. 18. ... chatter of ... other patients, ... noise of ... wireless that poured out incessant stream of advertisements was maddening.

Exercise 54. Supply the required articles for nouns modified by 'of'-phrases.

1. She was drinking ... glass of orange juice. 2. My friend is ... man of culture and wide reading. 3. His voice was determined, ... lines of his face had grown harsh. 4. Tom sat down on ... edge of a log and looked at ... glassy surface of the lake. 5. ... deposit of 5 pounds is payable by anyone who wishes to become ... reader of the library. 6. The college ordinary course was planned to run for ... full academic year of forty-seven weeks. 7. ... faint purring of a motor woke Julia the next morning. 8. 'Come back in half an hour. I'll give you ... bottle of medicine,' said the doctor. 9. The lamplight made his skin ... colour of red brick. 10. He found ... orchid of peculiar rarity. 11. He remembered ... soothing effect of her words. 12. He was disturbed by ... sound of a shot. 13. Willy leaned on ... back of the chair. 14. He always disliked anybody as soon as he was appointed to ... position of authority. 15. He always took ... line of least resistance. 16. I should like ... glass of water. 17. My grandfather was ... man of force and intellect. 18. From the kitchen came ... singing of a kettle on the stove. 19. 'I'll have ... cup of tea with you,' said my mother. 20. Heat up the water to ... temperature of 60° C. 21. Just then ... latch of the front door

clicked, and my father came in. 22. From the sitting-room came ... chink of light beneath the door, and ... sound of whispers from my mother and her friends. 23. The wallpaper was dark-blue with ... design of conventional flowers. 24. This machinery drills holes to ... depth of two miles, or even more. 25. The woman moved her chair slightly toward ... right side of the path. 26. He sent me ... box of cigars. 27. In the crate there were ... boxes of cigars. 28. There was ... party of twelve people arriving at the hotel. 29. ... head of the department was a man named Coles. 30. He was a cheerful little boy who brought ... large packets of curious boiled sweets every Monday. 31. They had started from Amman early in the morning with ... temperature of 98° in the shade.

Exercise 55. Translate into English using ‘of’-phrases as attributes wherever possible.

1. Когда они съели консервированные абрикосы, которыми заканчивался обед, Чинк принес им по чашке чая. 2. Песчаная кромка заводи вырисовывалась как склон холма. 3. Он очень любознательный человек. 4. Май – месяц больших температурных контрастов. 5. «Я просто сидела и наслаждалась тем, что вижу Джейн», – сказала Марри. 6. Она налила ему чашку кофе и подала банку сгущенного молока. 7. Ему было за семьдесят. 8. Она бросила на него взгляд полный ненависти. 9. Выражение горя исказило его красивое лицо. 10. Они проехали расстояние в несколько миль. 11. Это был юноша девятнадцати лет, ростом в шесть футов и два дюйма, с сильными мускулами. 12. Он бросил на меня удивленный взгляд. 13. На нем был костюм из прекрасной серой ткани, но не очень хорошего покроя. 14. Через мгновение примчалась толпа взволнованных туземцев, и их крики быстро донесли радостные вести до деревни. 15. Он сделал нетерпеливый жест. 16. Он молодой человек с чувством такта. 17. В нем поднялось чувство негодования. 18. Дома выглядят так, будто их только что покрыли слоем краски. 19. Когда Рой пригласил автора лестной рецензии на ленч, он это сделал потому, что был искренне благодарен за хорошее мнение, а когда он пригласил автора нелестной рецензии – это было потому, что он искренне заботился о своем мастерстве. 20. Спрингвейл находился на расстоянии трех миль от деревни, поэтому ему приходилось тратить много времени, чтобы добираться туда и видеть Джейн каждый день. 21. Когда впоследствии он писал о средних слоях общества, он искренне верил, что они составляют основу страны. 22. Как раз в это время стук копыт послышался на вершине холма, и в свете луны показались четыре или пять наездников. 23. Ральф нерешительно приложил узкий конец раковины ко рту и дунул. 24. Когда он объявил о дне своего отплытия, она не могла сдержать радость. 25. «Я просто так выразился, господин Уикс», – сказал он. 26. Если тебе не нравится идея сесть снова за руль, я могу поехать в Скуон с твоим письмом и забрать тебя на обратном пути.

## 2.2.7 MODIFICATION BY ATTRIBUTIVE CLAUSES

§ 19 Attributive clauses may be limiting or descriptive. In the following

example attributive clause is limiting.

e.g. She was flattered by *the compliments he paid her*.

In the example below attributive clause is descriptive; the choice of the article is determined by the context or the situation.

e.g. *People who live in glass houses* should not throw stones.

*The short holiday which he spent in going to the theatre every night* was almost at an end.

A limiting attributive clause always follows the head-noun.

Exercise 56. Supply the required articles for the countable nouns modified by attributive clauses in the following sentences.

1. He began to climb ... stairs, which were dark and smelt of cats. 2. I read until breakfast time ... novel I had borrowed from Marion. 3. You don't have to go into ... reasons why they hate each other. 4. What he said reminded me of ... film I had seen. 5. The lieutenant offered Grey ... cigarette which he refused. 6. He was wearing ... tweed jacket with leather inserts at the elbows, which was ... thing that I had never seen before. 7. Charlotte did not like ... idea that Arthur could be better at anything than Joe was. 8. This was ... sentence that made sense but had no meaning. 9. ... questions Ann asked always seemed to be ... questions to which Paul knew the answers. 10. Stanley knows ... woman in Milford who might be persuaded to come out by bus once a week to clean the house. 11. She was not ... little girl he had known, but she was not yet a woman either. 12. Her eyes were really like searchlights, picking out ... things that no one else saw. 13. ... fact that he would have independent means made her feel relieved. 14. It was not ... job that he liked. 15. Without knowing her at all I got ... feeling that she was the strongest person in that family. 16. Her husband made her presents of ... books she did not read. 17. And then he put forward ... amazing suggestion that she should turn down the offer and settle in London. 18. She wanted to fill ... wineglasses which she had received as a wedding present. 19. I liked reading in ... garden, which was several steps below the level of the yard. 20. I have ... impression that you don't trust me.

Exercise 57. Insert articles where necessary (articles with nouns modified by attributes in post-position).

1. ... man of whom I speak is ... low pantomime actor. 2. Excuse me now, I have to see ... man who's in trouble. 3. ... people familiar with these moors often miss their road on such evenings. 4. He listened attentively to a great many stories she told him about ... amiable and handsome daughter of hers, who was married to ... amiable and handsome man and lived in the country. 5. I always think there's something rather cold and cheerless about ... house that lacks woman's touch. 6. He stood up and looked at ... house where he had been born, grown up, and played, as if asking for answer. 7. Her throat aches because of ... tears locked in it. 8. I am persuaded that this will be ... shock of which he will feel ... effects all his life. 9.

There were half ... dozen pocket robberies ... day in ... trams of Brussels. 10. There we were in ... country none of us knew anything about, amongst Indians and people that were only half civilized. 11. At last they reached ... door at which ... servant knocked cautiously. 12. We passed ... set of chambers where I had worked as ... young man. 13. It is in ... hour of trial that ... man finds his true profession. 14. We dropped into ... very pleasant nook under ... great elm tree, to ... spreading roots of which we fastened ... boat. 15. It chanced that when this lonely young lady was about nineteen, she, being ... fearless horsewoman, was riding, with only ... young lad in one of ... woods near her uncle's house and, in trotting along, her horse stumbled over ... root of ... felled tree. She slipped to ... ground, not seriously hurt, and was assisted home by ... gentleman who came in view at ... moment of her mishap. It turned out that this gentleman was on ... visit at ... house of ... neighbouring landowner. 16. He was staring at ... waves like ... man cornered by ... strange animal. 17. You don't know ... man you are married to. 18. He spoke with a very slow, distinct voice and always looked over ... shoulder of ... person to whom he was talking. 19. There had been at ... dining table ... middle-aged man with ... dark eyes and ... sunburnt face, who had attracted Martin's attention. 20. And he had tea sitting on ... edge of ... chair that did not look too firm, all gilt and spindly. 21. They walked ... mile or more along ... handsome street which ... colonel said was called Broadway. Turning, at length, into one of ... numerous streets which branched from this main thoroughfare, they stopped before ... rather mean-looking house. 22. Colonel Mordaunt does not look like ... man who would do ... mean or dishonourable thing. 23. She is ... elderly matron who has worked hard and got nothing by it. 24. He was, in fact, ... younger edition of his father. 25. As Dick took up his pipe, ... man who had passed into ... smoking car with him put down his newspaper and looked at him. For ... moment Dick was puzzled. It was ... face he knew, but he could not put ... name to it. Where had he seen ... man? 26. During ... twenty minutes Michael took to read ... poem, there was not ... sound, except from the sheets being turned. 27. Rosa then noticed with surprise that she was in ... room in which ... party had been held.

Exercise 58. Supply articles for nouns modified by attributive clauses wherever necessary.

1. They were in the cave and the men were standing before ... fire Maria was fanning, 2. There was ... wind that blew through ... battle but that was a hot wind. 3. Below on the slope ... man who had run from the pile of stones to the shelter of the boulder was speaking to the sniper. 4. One of the men turned from ... building that he was doing. 5. Since you all decided that it should be done it is ... service that I can do. 6. This is like ... wheel that goes up and round. 7. ... man who was being pushed out by Pablo was Don Anastasio Rivas who was the fattest man in the town. 8. They turned down ... road that led through the Domain past the Art Gallery. 9. When Don Guillermo stood there ... woman started to scream from the balcony of ... apartment where he lived. 10. There are words for all the vile words in English and there are ... other words and expressions that are used only in ... countries where blasphemy

keeps pace with the austerity of religion. 11. At the left, just past the top, there was ... loop of road where cars could turn and there were lights winking in front of ... big stone building that bulked long and dark against the night sky. 12. On paper the bridge is blown at ... moment the attack starts. 13. It had seemed just and right and necessary that ... men who ran were shot. 14. She told me which things not to eat, it was potatoes and ... things that are fried. 15. Sure, Gaylord's was ... place you needed to complete your education. 16. ... man who was leading rode along ... trail to where Pablo had circled and stopped. 17. In her hand she brought ... little newspaper parcel, which she gave to Mary who opened it. 18. Then he saw her coming out from under ... blanket that covered the cave mouth. 19. Then there was ... valley that no one held except for a fascist post in a farmhouse with its outbuildings and its barn that they had fortified. 20. It was so quiet in the cave, suddenly, that he could hear ... hissing noise the wood made burning on ... hearth where Pilar cooked. 21. He was thinking of the bluest eyes he'd ever seen and ... walk that put all ... models he had been watching to scheme. 22. ... road, which was broad and oiled and well-constructed, made a turn to the left. 23. As we were sitting together, suddenly there came into her eyes ... look that I had never seen there before. 24. Larry handed out big marking pins and a small cap of spray paint to each and went through a side door with ... sign that warned everyone to stay out. 25. 'That is what happens to everybody,' Pablo said, gloomily. 'That is ... way we'll all finish.' 26. Through ... gate ... girl came and collided with me with ... force that nearly knocked me off the pavement. 27. Mrs. Lambert wore black too, but when Monsieur L'Able and the Commandant came to dinner she put over her shoulders ... white lace shawl that Julia had given her. 28. Frank Everly was ... law clerk who looked up routine legal matters for Perry Mason and sat with him in the trial of cases. 29. ... man who had been called George by Albert Edward, Prince of Wales, could hardly be expected to have any connection with a native. 30. His hand reached out for ... Turkish cigarette he had been offered.

Exercise 59. Translate into English trying to use attributive clauses.

A) 1. Они вошли в вагон, в котором не было свободных мест. 2. В вагоне, в который они вошли, не было свободных мест. 3. Сегодня группа туристов, которая состоит в основном из студентов, начинает подъем на Эльбрус. 4. Группа туристов, которая начала сегодня подъем на Эльбрус, состоит из студентов. 5. В городе строится новый стадион, который будет вмещать 10 тысяч зрителей. 6. Кто разработал проект нового стадиона, который строится в вашем городе? 7. Роль Анны играла молодая талантливая актриса, которая недавно окончила театральный институт. 8. В газетах очень много писали о молодой талантливой актрисе, которая сыграла роль Анны. 9. Она посмотрела на часы на углу и поняла, что опаздывает на поезд. 10. На углу нашей улицы весят часы, которые приводятся в действие электричеством.

B) 1. Сегодня я наконец достал книгу, которую я уже давно хочу прочесть. 2. Вот человек, с которым вы хотите поговорить. 3. Я не люблю людей, которые ко всем придираются. 4. Я знаю девушку, которая удивительно хорошо

декламирует стихи. Вчера она прочла стихотворение, которое мне очень понравилось. 5. Улицы, по которым он проходил, были узкие и грязные. 6. Старик постучал в дверь небольшого домика, окна которого были ярко освещены. 7. Когда Ольга вернулась домой, она увидела, что ее сестра разговаривает с человеком, которого она прежде никогда не видела. 8. Я нашла гостиницу, где мы жили несколько лет назад. 9. Письмо, которое она получила утром, расстроило ее. 10. Утром она получила письмо, которое расстроило ее. 11. Молодая девушка долго думала об удивительном открытии, которое она сделала. 12. На дороге они увидели большой камень, которого там раньше не было. 13. Я знаю адрес человека, которому вы хотите написать. 14. Дверь открыла женщина; в ней он сразу узнал оригинал портрета, который ему показал его приятель. 15. Она поехала в город, в котором жила ее дочь.

### 2.2.8 MODIFICATION BY INFINITIVES

§ 20 The infinitive may function as a descriptive or limiting attribute depending on the context or the general situation.

e.g. At a time like that there are *things to be glad of*.

‘May be he is *the man to ask about work*,’ she thought.

Exercise 60. Supply articles for the nouns modified by attributive infinitives wherever necessary.

1. She thought how often he would come to her like this in ... months to come with a need which was not only that of the spirit. 2. There was ... constant attempt to approximate the conditions of the successful experiments. 3. All the other things are forgiven or one had ... chance to atone for them by kindness or in some other way. 4. ... permission to cancel it will have to come from Madrid. 5. ‘It would have been ... intelligent and correct thing to have done under the circumstances,’ Robert Jordan was thinking. 6. Also I know ... good places to eat that are illegal but with good food. 7. And we will keep ... things to eat in the room for when we’re hungry. 8. Because the people of this town are as kind as they can be cruel and they have a natural sense of justice and ... desire to do that which is right. 9. They seemed to be controlled by one man in the middle of the rush who had ... reason to be going in that direction. 10. Tom stood there watching the scene, then made ... move to follow her but thought better of it. 11. She felt herself yielding to ... blinding impulse to run screaming from the building. 12. I believe that I could walk up to the mill and knock on the door and I would be welcome except that they have ... orders to challenge all travellers and ask to see their papers. 13. However, that is not ... point to discuss. 4. He had not yet had ... opportunity to test his judgement and, anyway, the judgement was his own responsibility. 15. I have ... right to ask him now because I have had to do the same sort of things myself. 16. I tried to breathe, but ... effort to inhale knotted my chest tighter, forcing breath out instead of in. 17. Catching sight of the clock at the Army and Navy Stores, he remembered ... engagement to play golf at his club. 18. Tired with ... desire to escape, she hesitated. 19. He began to read, giving the stranger ...

opportunity to recover himself. 20. He felt ... need to talk that, with him, was the sign that there had just been much danger. 21. When she saw him, so slight, with his hectic flush and his blue eyes, so charmingly boyish, she felt a sudden pang and made ... attempt to get up.

Exercise 61. Revision: fill in the blanks with articles.

1. He went into ... house by ... back door and sneaked up ... stairs as though he had something to hide. 2. We'll never get him ... second time. 3. ... silent house gave them ... feeling of being there without leave. 4. 'Oh,' he said, 'you'd have to go back through all ... records, all ... way back to ... end of ... eighteenth century even to make any kind of ... guess.' 5. 'What do you mean?' But what he meant was quite obvious. ... quickly beating heart gave him away. 6. It was ... third time that year he had fallen asleep driving at night. 7. He was glad that he had been born in ... most important city of the United States. 8. The light in ... next room came from ... lamp hanging from ... ceiling. 9. But one way or ... other it's not bothering me. 10. Before ... first year had passed I had saved ... thousand dollars and we had lived in comfort. 11. I couldn't see ... face that had been staring at him from that window. 12. He hurled ... gramophone on ... floor. 13. By ... stair was ... notice: 'Office'. ... office consisted of ... glass window, firmly closed and ... printed card: 'Press Bell'. 14. ... actions speak louder than ... words. 15. ... waiters were reappearing with ... trays and ... napkins and ... flasks of wines. 16. It took him some time to get used to ... darkness of ... forest again. 17. ... girl I had been shadowing turned ... knob and opened ... door. 18. She was leaning against ... wall of ... baggage-shed near ... end of ... wharf. 19. He rubbed his hands together in ... pleased manner and called to his wife. 20. Of all ... houses which had received him in ... fall of 1862, Miss Pittypat's was ... only house into which he could enter in 1863. 21. Mr. Hungerton was ... most tactless person upon earth. 22. 'Now I'm going to get ... cup of tea for both of us,' Doreen said. 23. I was manager of ... Crawford Street branch of the Bank. 24. He hoped it was ... main building, burning to ... ground. 25. ... woman who ran it was very cheerful and ... only person we knew in Montreux. 26. I thought she was ... most wonderful creature I had ever seen. 27. ... following evening the Mole, who had taken things very easy all day, was sitting on ... bank fishing. 28. At this minute Miss Griffith saw ... acquaintance on ... other side of ... street and uttering ... word of recognition she leaped across ... road. 29. I read the dedication written in ... curious slanting hand. 30. ... strangest thing of all was, that not ... soul in ... house, except me, noticed her habits, or seemed to marvel at them. 31. It just seems to be ... wrong way to go about it. 32. With ... cry of anger Gisburne cut him down. 33. Mrs. Macandrew shared ... common opinion of her sex that ... man is always ... brute to leave ... woman who is attached to him, but that ... woman is much to blame if he does. 34. I sketched in fancy with ... absent mind ... profile, ... sombre eye, ... high-bridged nose, ... scornful upper lip. 35. He thought he detected in her voice ... note of apprehension. 36. I can't tell you coherently ... events of ... next twenty-four hours, believe me. 37. ... vision of ... consumptive son faded and in its stead aroused ... picture of myself. 38. 'Oh, that's nonsense,' said Roy good-humouredly, with ...



tone of ... doctor who is trying to persuade ... child to have its throat examined. 39. 'What about ... previous week? Could she have slipped the letter in the box?' 40. And they brought ... pineapples and ... huge bunches of ... bananas. 41. They did not even have to have ... same colour of eyes. 42. 'I think it's a success,' she said. '... main thing is that it's right.' 43. ... latter letters are as tender and as delightful as ... first, but ... tone was different. 44. Bart opened ... packet of ... cigarettes and offered one to Magda. 45. ... house faced ... garden. Above ... drawing-room were ... two bedrooms and above these ... two rooms that could be made into ... day and ... night nursery. 46. In ... house there was nothing but ... poor worn bed with ... ragged mosquito net, ... rickety chair, and ... washstand. 47. They were all seized in their homes at ... hour the attack started. 48. Not marrying ... young lady, of whom you have probably heard, was merely ... last straw. 49. Of course, it's ... very good thing for ... man to be ... gentleman, but it is better that he should be competent and hard-working. 50. He had come to ... conclusion that it could be nothing serious that prevented Edward from coming home. 51. I tremble with fear when I think of ... danger I have escaped. 52. The grade school was ... large wooden building, old, ugly and dangerous, but ... high school was ... pride of ... town. 53. I know ... very half-acre where it is grown. 54. I mean, instead of the books being ... usual story affairs they'd as likely as not be about Arabia. 55. He chose ... wrong minute to say that. 56. This was ... opportunity that Mr. Warburton could never resist. 57. She stood by ... fire and stared into it before sitting down in ... chair that Wilfred had just vacated. 58. The girls felt that ... theft had been reported to ... Corona police. 59. ... voice that answered him was not only ... masculine voice but also ... irritated, weary, despairing voice, that of ... man who was rapidly coming to ... conclusion, that he could be spending all Saturday afternoon answering idiotic inquiries. 60. ... Ryan family had made its way by weight of numbers and noise to a position just below where Chilla was. 61. From behind ... maid who opened ... door darted ... lovely girl of nine who shrieked 'Daddy!' and flew up, struggling like ... fish, into his arms. 62. It was ... great landlocked harbour big enough to hold ... fleet of battleships. 63. She liked ... idea of guiding my virgin steps on ... hard road of letters. 64. Do you mean to say you don't want ... money, ... big money, ... money running into millions? 65. It was ... deep, comfortable room, with books lining ... walls to ... ceiling. 66.

Exercise 62. Revision: fill in the blanks with articles.

### **One Afternoon in 1930**

This is ... constant story that I keep telling my daughter who is four years old. She got something from it and wants to bear it again and again. 'Once when I was ... little kid, just your age, my mother and father took me on ... picnic to ... Mount Rainier. We drove up there in ... old car and saw ... deer standing in ... middle of ... road.

We came to ... meadow where there was ... snow in ... shadows of ... trees and ... snow in ... place where ... sun didn't shine.

There were ... flowers growing in ... meadow and they looked beautiful. In ... middle of ... meadow there was ... huge round rock and ... Daddy walked over to ... rock and found ... hole in ... center of it and looked inside. ... rock was hollow like ... small room.

... Daddy crawled inside ... rock and sat there staring out at ... blue sky and ... wild flowers. ... Daddy really liked that rock and pretended that it was ... house and we played inside ... rock all ... afternoon.

He got some smaller rocks and took them inside ... big rock. He pretended that ... smaller rocks were ... stove and ... furniture and he cooked ... meal, using ... wild flowers for food.

That's ... end of ... story. She has heard it ... thirty or forty times and always wants to hear it again. I think she uses it as ... kind of ... door to ... discovery of her father when he was ... child and her contemporary.

Exercise 63. Revision: supply the required articles for nouns used singly and nouns modified by attributes expressed by various parts of speech:

1. I still keep wondering if I'm doing ... right thing. 2. We needed ... house to stay in when we were in London. 3. There are some things ... gentleman can't do, Phil. 4. Every day, the Marches told each other ... latest pieces of family gossip. 5. You are ... only person whose opinion is of any value to me in ... present regrettable circumstances. 6. He told her he hated ... doctors. 7. She had ... laughing eyes and ... most charming mouth. 8. They took all ... usual measures. 9. We talked about ... books. Charles had just finished ... last volume of Proust. 10. I went into ... room quietly and sat down opposite him without ... word. 11. We all know that ... men under the influence of passion say ... things and make ... promises which in ... calmer moments they forget. 12. She had ... strong opinions on all ... subjects. 13. Mr. March spent most of the night talking to Francis about buying ... house. ... two of them were happy discussing ... plans and ... prices. 14. I told myself that in wartime ... letters are lost. 15. He is ... man to deal with it. 16. She went to ... writing-desk and brought out ... sealed envelope. 17. I'll book ... sleeper on ... Geneva-Paris train for tomorrow night. 18. ... second bell sounded, and Mr. March began to walk into ... theatre. 19. They never read anything but ... local paper, and ... local papers report ... London affairs in one line. 20. I now see for myself how ... things stand at home. 21. Well, there are ... hundred courses open for you to follow. 22. When he got back to ... hotel he took ... newspaper and considered at his leisure ... story on ... page two. 23. He didn't like ... idea of staying with them for ... other day. 24. She wrote to her mother that ... things were going well and that she was not to be anxious. 25. I had brought all my possessions in ... two old suitcases. 26. For ... first term we shared ... same desk at the school because our names came next to each other in ... list. 27. There was a time when I believed ... people went to ... parties to enjoy themselves. 28. I haven't ... chance of getting this job anyhow. 29. Bill came out to meet them, wiping his hands on ... oily rag. 30. He took ... crumpled telegram out of his pocket, flattened it out on his knee with great care and studied it. 31. Mike waited in ... main hall while Henry escorted ... party to ... elevator. 32. I don't believe ... word of it. 33. In London ... things were much as usual. 34. He was on his

feet as soon as ... curtain came down at ... end of ... second act. 35. He asked where I had picked up such ... word. 36. She gave ... same answer as before. 37. He liked going to ... new places. 38. Of all ... papers I read this morning none interested me as much as this one. 39. It was ... only birthday he had celebrated since he was ... child. 40. He was ... most interesting man. 41. He sent her ... offering of ... best flowers that Milford could supply. 42. In his digs Peter had no cooking facilities and he ate off ... newspapers. 43. He began to hum ... song. It was ... old popular song. 44. Then I heard ... voice asking if I was in. 45. I ate ... three cakes; he pressed me to have ... fourth but I didn't, in case it was vulgar. 46. I mean there are times when it's valuable for ... doctor to be independent of his job. 47. It was, after all, no disgrace to be connected with ... case reported in the Times. 48. ... young man listened to ... conversation with ... amused smile. 49. You should have accepted him on the spot. You mightn't get ... second chance. 50. My married daughter said exactly ... same thing. 51. He heard ... popular song played by ... dance band on the radio.

Exercise 64. Revision: supply the required articles for countable nouns in the following sentences:

1. ... girl from ... farm came once ... week to help clean ... house. 2. To them I must have appeared ... most undesirable visitor. 3. He sat down at ... piano and played ... piece that he had played in the morning. 4. 'What does ... penniless person do in ... case like this?' Marion said. 5. It's not ... story I could tell anyone else. 6. ... car drove up to ... front of ... movie theatre. They got out. Jack looked up at ... poster in front of ... theatre. ... poster advertised ... picture called 'The Stolen Midnight'. 7. '... only thing she lacked was ... daughter, and little Betty filled that gap,' the woman said. 8. For ... past hundred years ... parties at their house had been held according to ... same pattern. 9. They walked without speaking across ... lawn. 10. I know ... man who will lend me ... car. 11. His daughter is married to ... man who lives by his pen. 12. ... images were dancing over the water. Close to us ... reeds were high and lush, and on ... other side of ... stream ... bank ran up steeply, so that we seemed alone, alone in ... hot still garden. 13. I got ... impression that he wanted to tell me something. 14. He merely said: 'Ah, that's ... question nobody can answer, lad.' 15. Her people were too poor to provide her with ... books and ... proper clothes. 16. Mr. March looked over ... trees at ... roofs and towers, all soft and opal grey in the moist sunlight. 17. ... letter is supposed to make you see ... things in a different light. 18. He gave ... suspicious look to ... box I carried. 19. I found that they wanted me no more than they wanted ... company of ... dog or ... cat. 20. ... breeze blew some dead leaves onto ... terrace. 21. He tried to give ... impression that one word from him would be enough. 22. She herself was busy with ... gardening basket and ... gardening gloves. 23. Keeping in ... shadow of ... house, he crept to ... back door. 24. He was writing ... note for his wife when ... outer door swung open, and ... short man of thirty came in. 25. Harvest was over ... leaves were red and golden on ... trees. 26. He took ... cigar from his mouth and blew away ... long trail of smoke. 27. ... things are getting out of hand. 28. He could not help liking ... tall graceful young man who was standing beside him. 29. ... gates of ... sports

ground stood open, and we walked along ... road, under ... chestnut trees. 30. He went to ... corner of ... room and gazed at ... bookshelf. 31. I thought that English was ... language he had learnt from ... books. 32. You seem very fond of saying ... things behind my back. 33. There's hardly ... man among us who knows ... mountains as you do. 34. She sat on ... sofa, relating slowly and minutely ... plot of ... play which she had seen. 35. He drained his glass and set it down with ... air of ... man who had come to ... decision. 36. Yet I knew that in ... sense my mother was vainer than her sister. 37. Williams stood in ... middle of ... room, with ... expression of ... child from whom ... sweet has been taken. 38. Finally she stopped him in front of ... small picture. In silence and for a long time they stood looking at ... picture. It was ... very good picture. 39. There were ... three shelters on ... cliff between ... steps down to ... sea and ... lighthouse. 40. One winter afternoon she had been buying something in ... little antique shop in Curson Street. It was ... shop she liked. And ... man who kept ... shop was fond of serving her. 41. It is ... portrait of ... friend I told you about the other day. 42. She wished to speak to him about ... important message she had received from London. 43. All ... presents that he had given her were in their usual places. 44. They turned off ... road into ... drive that wound between ... tall trees. 45. He looked at ... figure that was standing on ... upper step.

Exercise 65. Revision: supply the required articles for countable nouns in the following text.

A) ... king was ... very learned person. Yet, when he saw me walk on ... two legs he thought I was ... kind of mechanism made by some clever artist. But when he heard my voice, and found that I could speak like ... person he was greatly astonished. He was not satisfied with ... story I told him of ... manner in which I had come into his kingdom. He thought that ... girl who found me and her father had taught me those words in order to sell me at ... better price.

He sent for ... three great scholars who were then in ... country. ... gentlemen, after they had examined me carefully, were of ... different opinions about me. However, after much argument, they agreed that I was only ... freak of nature. I was so small that I could not defend myself against ... other animals, they said, I could not run as fast as ... other animals, nor climb ... trees, not dig ... holes in ... earth to hide myself in. I was not ... dwarf, for ... queen's dwarf, ... smallest person ever known in ... kingdom, was nearly 30 feet high. They did not know what I was. Therefore I was ... freak of nature. Such ... conclusion would have satisfied ... philosophers of Europe who reason in ... same way.

After they had told me about their conclusion, I begged for permission to say ... word or two. I told ... king that I came from ... country where there lived ... people of my size. ... animals, ... trees and ... houses were all in proportion. Therefore in my country I might be able to defend myself, and get food for myself. To this they only answered with ... smile of contempt.

B) The teacher rode to ... place where ... small brook crossed ... road. ... few logs, laid side by side, formed ... bridge over ... brook. This had always been

considered ... haunted place, and as he approached it, his heart began to beat fast. He gave his horse ... kick; ... animal rushed forward but stopped just by ... bridge so suddenly that he nearly flew over ... horse's head. On ... edge of ... brook stood something big and black. It did not move. The hair of ... frightened teacher rose upon his head with terror. It was too late to turn back. Therefore he asked in ... trembling voice: 'Who are you?' He received no answer. Just then ... thing began to move, and stood in ... middle of ... road. Though the night was dark, ... teacher could see ... gigantic horseman mounted on ... huge black horse. He became horror-struck. But the horror grew still worse when he saw that ... head which should have been on ... horseman's shoulders, was carried before him. ... teacher kicked his horse and went away, ... figure following. He looked behind him. He saw ... figure raise ... head and hurl it at him. He tried to get out of its way, but it was too late. It struck his head ... terrible blow – he fell into the dust, and his horse, ... black horse and ... headless rider passed by like ... whirlwind. When a little later ... teacher came to, he found ... hollow pumpkin by his side.

C) ... story that impressed me concerned ... old Indian who kept ... snake in ... box. It was ... hooded cobra, and ... box had ... thick glass lid. Whenever there were ... new arrivals in ... barracks he always made ... same bet with them – to double their money if they could keep ... hand on ... glass for fifteen seconds. It seemed ... easy bet; ... glass was too thick to break. But as soon as ... snake struck at ... glass, no one could control ... impulse to snatch ... hand away. In this way, ... old man made ... great deal of money from ... new arrivals. One day, ... soldier with ... wooden hand asked if he could be allowed to wear ... glove while he laid his hand on ... box. ... old Indian agreed; he was aware that ... glove makes no difference to ... reflex of self-defense. ... soldier laid ... high stake. Everyone in ... barracks gathered round, hoping to see ... old man beaten at last. They were not disappointed; ... soldier kept his gloved hand on ... box while ... cobra struck again and again. ... old man suspected trickery and demanded to see ... hand, but ... crowd of ... British soldiers felt he had been fairly beaten, and forced him to pay up.

D) We drank tea, then we all went out for ... walk before it grew dark. ... children were gathering ... chestnuts in ... woods, and ... others were playing with ... kites in ... meadow on ... edge of ... wood. Some of ... best chestnuts were on ... highest branches, and they were throwing ... sticks to try to knock them down. Monty saw ... opportunity to display his athleticism; ... lower part of ... trunk was too smooth to climb, but he asked me to bend down so that he could stand on my shoulders. Then he leapt on to ... low branch, and swarmed up to ... top. ... boys cheered as he broke off ... branch and threw it down. Then Monty dropped down and slipped into his overcoat, and we walked on.

We stopped on ... outskirts of ... wood above ... village, looked at ... view for ... few minutes, and then turned to walk back. At that moment ... boy came running up to us: 'Mister, can you help us to get ... kite down? It's stuck in ... tree.'

We followed ... boy back into ... wood. When we saw ... tree we felt doubtful; it was ... very tall elm, and there were ... thorn bushes round its base that made it almost unapproachable. ... two more trees grew nearby whose branches touched it,

but ... branches looked very thin. ... owner of ... kite had already climbed one of ... smaller trees and was trying to reach ... kite by throwing ... stave cut from ... hedge. It was already dusk, so it was not easy to see how ... kite could be approached. However, Monty saw that he was expected to climb, so he threw off his overcoat and jacket, and climbed. He managed to get ... great deal higher up ... smaller tree than ... kite's owner had climbed, and could touch ... kite with ... stave; but ... string was tangled in ... branches, and he could not dislodge it. I watched this for ... moment; then, when no one was looking, dropped my own coat and climbed up ... other tree. I soon saw that I could get from here on to ... elm if I was willing to jump across ... space of about six feet; it was not as dangerous as it looked from below, because ... branch from which I would jump was several feet above ... branch on which I would land. My light weight was in my favour; I got into ... good position, steadied myself and jumped. I managed to scramble on to ... other branch without difficulty. From there on, it was easy. I climbed ... tree, which was as uncomplicated as ... ladder, untangled ... string, and let ... kite float across to Monty who caught it and took it down. Then I went down myself, descending ... lower part of ... trunk as if it had been ... drainpipe; this made my hands dirty, and took ... skin off my ankles, but it was not difficult or dangerous.

Nothing was said about it on ... way home. When we got back into ... cottage Monty and I washed our hands at ... sink. By the time I was ready, I knew I had missed ... six o'clock bus home. Monty then said that we could walk down to ... village and have ... drink at ... pub before we caught ... next bus.

In ... village, Monty suggested that we should go into ... pub. But I said that I was not yet allowed in ... pubs, being only seventeen. So Monty went inside and brought ... drinks out to us on ... tray. We sat on ... bench, feeling very cold and envying the warmth and light inside. By the time we had finished ... drinks I was warm and happy but we had to run for ... bus.

## CHAPTER 3 ARTICLES WITH UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS

§ 21 In normal situations you cannot use the indefinite article with uncountable nouns. You often have no article at all, although you can have the definite article in front of the noun.

e.g. Jane was trembling with *anger*.

I'll never forget *the anger* that separated me from her.

Uncountable nouns are of three main types:

1) Those which refer to concrete substances or materials which are not thought of as separate units, such as '*water*', '*wood*', and '*salt*'. These are sometimes called mass nouns.

2) Those which refer to groups of objects, such as '*furniture*', '*luggage*', and '*machinery*'.

3) Abstract nouns like '*love*', '*anger*', and '*information*'.

### 3.1 ARTICLES WITH NAMES OF SUBSTANCES

§ 22 **Absence of article** Names of substances are used in the singular, but they do not take the indefinite article as they do not express the idea of oneness. Names of substances are generally used without any article; the absence of the article has **the nominating meaning**:

e.g. Just add *water* to the cake mix.

Names of substances may be modified by descriptive attributes, which only narrow the notion denoted by a noun without specifying it. Therefore, nouns having descriptive attributes are used with the indefinite article as well:

e.g. Wash your hands thoroughly with soap and *hot water*.

§ 23 **The indefinite article** Uncountable nouns which refer to concrete substances or materials can sometimes become countable when their meaning is changed. When using these nouns, you can either consider the thing you are talking about as a substance (e.g. *rock*), or as an individual object (e.g. *a rock*). Among such nouns are *bone, cabbage, cake, chocolate, cloud, egg, fog, fruit, muscle, pie, powder,*

*pudding, rock, stew, stone, string, thread, wire, etc.*

e.g. The archaeologists had to dig down through a ten-inch layer of *rock*.  
The castle was built on *a big rock*.

Nouns which are usually uncountable nouns can be converted to countable nouns when:

1) They refer to 'a unit of' something, an amount of something in a container.

e.g. Two coffees and *a tea*, please.

Here is a list of words which are frequently used in this way: *beer, brandy, coffee, Coke, gin, lager, rum, sherry, sugar, vodka, whisky, yoghurt*, etc. Note that some other words are used like this in restaurants and cafes but not in people's homes.

2) They mean 'a type of' or 'a variety of' something. This happens when there's an attribute to the noun and this attribute brings out some aspect of the object. This type of situations is called '**aspectization**'. We have the case of aspectization only when, while characterizing an object in this or that aspect, we oppose this aspect to all the other possible ones.

e.g. Labels on packets of cheese often claim that *a cheese* should be consumed within three to five days of opening.

This shop is selling range of *French cheeses*.

Here is a list of words which are frequently used in this way: *beer, brandy, cheese, coffee, detergent, jam, lager, meat, medicine, metal, paint, perfume, sauce, soup, tea, whisky, wine, wood*, etc.

**Note 1** Some words, such as 'coffee', 'beer', and 'whisky' can be used as countable nouns to mean either 'a unit of' or 'a type of'.

e.g. He order *a whiskey neat*.

If *a whisky* is labelled "malt" it is almost certainly *a blended malt whisky*.

3) They indicate an object made of a certain material.

e.g. *A full glass* of apple juice stood beside Lin.

**§ 24 The definite article** The definite article is used with names of substances when the speaker has in mind specific (restricted) quantity of substance or substance situated at some particular place. Restriction by means of quantity or place is shown with the help of a limiting attribute or is understood from the context or the situation.

e.g. Respiratory tract disorders are triggered by the presence of air-borne pollutants in *the air* we breathe.

**Note 1** There's no restriction in such phrases and sentences as: *a bottle of milk, a cup of tea*.

e.g. The pond was covered with *ice*.

**§ 25 Converting countable nouns to uncountable nouns** Sometimes countable nouns are treated as names of substances and are used in the singular with an article. This kind of use is often found in some constructions after expressions like



'a piece of', 'a patch of', 'a scrap of', and 'a bit of' when you are referring to something that you are regarding on this occasion as a substance.

e.g. You see that great belt of trees with a scrap of *river* beyond?

Such countable nouns as *a duck, a lamb, a chicken, a fish, a turkey, a salmon, a lobster*, etc. are used as names of substances when they denote flesh used for food.

e.g. *Fried fish* is often eaten with chips.

**Note 1** In some cases, however, special words are used to denote flesh used as food: *a sheep – mutton, a calf – veal, a pig – pork*.

**§ 26 Using counting expressions such as 'a piece of' and 'a bit of' with uncountable nouns** Some collective nouns denoting a group of objects thought of as a whole, behave like names of substances. Among them are *furniture, machinery, equipment, crockery, hardware, silverware (silverplate), table silver, china-ware (china), luggage, baggage (AmE), foliage*, etc. These cannot be converted to count nouns and follow the rules of the use of articles for names of substances. However, with many uncountable nouns, it is possible to refer to a particular item by using an expression such as 'a piece of' before the noun.

e.g. You should not operate *machinery* after taking the medicine.

The manager planned to buy *the necessary equipment* in Japan.

If several fees apply to *a piece of baggage*, all of the relevant rates must be added together.

Exercise 66. Fill in the blanks with articles wherever necessary. Explain the use or absence of articles with nouns denoting names of substances.

1. ... water is precious in this area and must be paid for. 2. Don't drink from this pond, ... water is stale. 3. ... coal of Newcastle is rich in carbon. 4. ... coal gas is formed by burning ... coal; it is ... gas used for heating and illuminating. 5. ... hot coal fell from ... fire and burned a hole in the carpet. 6. According to the Greek myth Prometheus stole ... fire from Olympus to give it to men. 7. They built ... fire to mark the place for the plane to land. 8. ... air was filled with the odour of flowers. 9. ... fresh air was circulating through all the rooms to my uncle's great discontent. 10. There was ... air of importance about him. 11. Sacks of ... sand were taken up in the balloon as ballast. 12. The tide was out and the children were digging in ... wet sand. 13. This is ... tea I am particularly fond of. I don't think there is ... better tea than this. 14. ... tea is cultivated in the south of our country. 15. 'Two teas and ... coffee please, some milk, too.' 16. 'What will you have for breakfast?' '... egg and a cup of ... coffee.' 17. A sandwich consists of two slices of ... buttered bread with ... meat, ... fish, ... egg, ... cheese or something of the kind between them. 18. I won't eat ... fish. It's not fresh. 19. A shark is ... fish which is destructive to other fishes and dangerous to man. 20. Dishes, piled with ... fruit, stood at either end of the table. 21. In a week or two ... fruit in our garden will be ripe. 22. The old man's head shook from side to side like ... ripe fruit in the wind ready to drop.

Exercise 67. Fill in the blanks with articles wherever necessary. Explain the use or absence of articles with nouns denoting names of substances.

1. We sipped ... tea so weak that it tasted like ... metal against the teeth. 2. You will be wishing to have ... tea after your journey, I'm thinking. 3. George said that we must take ... rug, ... lamp, ... soap, ... brush and ... comb, ... toothbrush, ... tooth-powder and ... couple of big towels for bathing. 4. ... children of his age seldom have natural pleasure in ... soap and water. 5. He bought ... cold beef, and ... ham, and ... French bread and butler, and came back with his pockets pretty heavily laden. 6. There were two bottles of ... wine, ... plate of ... oranges with ... powdered sugar. 7. Here, have ... champagne, I quite forgot to offer you any, or would you rather have ... tea? 8. She made ... coffee. 9. ... coffee without ... bread could never honestly serve as supper. 10. ... rest of us had finished eating, but Cave had cut himself another slice of ... cheese. 11. Mrs. Leek frankly gave way to ... soft tears while eating ... bread-and-butter. 12. You've caught cold: I saw you shivering, and you must have ... gruel to drive it out. 13. She did not answer, but her face was hard and pale as ... stone. 14. She hurried in again and found ... water almost boiled away. 15. ... blood is thicker than ... water. 16. She went about looking into ... dining room, which had been transformed into ... kind of jewel box glowing with ... flowers, ... silver, ... gold, ... tinted glass. 17. Rosa tasted ... wine. It was harsh but refreshing. 18. You drank ... wine with breakfast, dinner, and supper, and fifty people always drank it with you. 19. She looked with ... eager, hungry eyes at ... bread and ... meat and ... beer that ... landlady brought her. 20. Willows replied that he had made friends with ... sculptor in Pisa and had commissioned this artist to make ... bust of himself in ... marble. 21. ... coffee was better than Dinny had hoped and very hot. 22. Without giving her ... opportunity to protest any more, he went to ... telephone and ordered ... coffee and several sandwiches. 23. She wears ... little sailor hat of ... black straw that has long been exposed to ... dust and soot of London. 24. The mother was yellow in colour and her skin resembled ... leather. 25. The maid brought in ... pears, ... cold chicken, ... tongue, ... cheese. 26. My heart felt as heavy as ... lead. 27. Every meal was ... bread and ... coffee and ... cigarettes, and now he had no more bread.

Exercise 68. Fill in the blanks with articles wherever necessary. Explain the use or absence of articles with nouns denoting name of material.

1. I can't live in fear that each time my wife or my children leave the house there is ... stone or a Donatti or an execution team waiting for them. 2. Wouldn't you like to get yourself something too? ... beer or something? 3. I ordered ... ice-cream for her and two coffees. 4. '... salad?' 'No, thanks, I'm not hungry.' But when she bit ... chicken leg again, he reached over for two of her French fries. 5. In the taxi with Dick and Collis Clay – they were dropping Collis, and Dick was taking Rosemary to ... tea from which Nicole and the Norths had resigned in order to do the things Abe had left undone till the last – in the taxi Rosemary reproached him. 6. I was drinking ... tea, astonished at the number of good-looking people who apparently did not have to work for a living. 7. He kept a pub called the Saracen's Head and having invited

Sally into the private bar had been disappointed when she would not partake of ... small port or ... glass of ... sherry. 8. Into the bakery shop, the most famous and costly of its kind in New York, came a customer with an order for ... cake to be baked in the shape of the letter 'S'. 9. This is ... light French wine. 10. The convicts make their cigarettes out of ... coarse, strong tobacco that is sold in square blue packets.

Exercise 69. Translate into English.

Однажды на свете жил человек, который очень любил золото. Он всегда говорил: 'Пока у меня есть золото, я самый счастливый человек во всем мире'. Поэтому всю свою жизнь он копил золото. Как-то раз, путешествуя в пустыне в Северной Африке, он заблудился. У него не осталось ни еды, ни воды. Он был настолько слаб, что едва мог идти. Вокруг него были только камни и песок. Вдруг на песке он увидел сумку. Из последних сил он пополз к сумке, надеясь найти в ней еду и воду. Но, открыв ее, он увидел, что сумка полна золота. «Зачем человеку, умирающему в пустыне от голода и жажды, золото?» подумал он, и оставил сумку на горячем песке.

Exercise 70. Fill in the blanks with articles it necessary before names of substances.

1. 'Thanks,' he said and she cut him a slice, reaching up to unhook ... big cheese that hung in a net from the ceiling. 2. ... sand was special. Elsewhere around the airport, on roadways and areas which the public used, ... salt was added to ... sand as a means of melting ... ice. 3. Everywhere, mingled with the smell of cooking were odours of ... stale eau-de-cologne, ... strong talcum powder and the sharp smell of ... antiseptics. 4. There had still been ... snow then, ... snow that had ruined them. 5. Bart heard Jan calling him. It was ... water that she wanted. He remembered that he had forgotten to place ... water near her bed in the evening. 6. She lay back. She didn't want to watch ... snow any more. 7. At once a draught of ... cool fresh air suffused the room. 8. I think you are unwise to eat ... meat. 9. This year the additional demand for ... fuel and ... rolled ferrous metal is to be met by saving of 60 per cent, as compared with the planned 50 per cent. 10. We were enjoying a breakfast of ... cake and ... chicken when gunfire slapped through the woods. 11. And now the thing that had been Doris – was only ... clay, just the raw material that would soon be fashioned into something else. 12. She was chewing ... gum. I couldn't bear the fact that she was chewing ... gum. 13. 'It's ... best tea I've had for 18 months,' Bart said tipping the last of a bottle of ... beer into the glass. 14. Every drug store has a food counter with high stools in front of it and there they serve ... various juices, ... coffee, ... ice cream, ... sandwiches, ... omelettes and ... other egg dishes. 15. She had no words, but she went on packing, wrapping sandals in ... paper. 16. He's made of ... iron, that man. 17. He dropped silently back into ... blue-black waters. 18. He broke open the carcass of the first bird and was cutting off thin bits of ... brown meat from the ribs, but he could stand it no longer. 19. It's on the edge of the lake and ... water comes right under it at high tide – you can hear it. 20. Bart filled the blackened kettle and set it beside ... fire while Jan arranged chops on ... grilling iron and placed

it on ... stones he had rolled up to make a fireplace. Soon ... fat was dripping on ... fire and ... meat sizzled tempting. 21. The alarm of ... fire was admirably done. ... smoke and shouting were enough to shake nerves of steel. 22. Arline opened the bedroom door and softly went over between the twin beds, ... silk of her dress making a slight rustle in the quiet room. 23. It sounded like the clank of ... metal, and seemed to be coming nearer every moment. 24. He smashed up through eight solid inches of ... Antarctic ice like a black missile. 25. It was like ... ice water pouring through her veins to realise it. 26. ... strong black coffee that she had drunk did not bring wakefulness in its train unless she wished it to do so. 27. I like ... French wines which are so light. 28. I'll slip across the alley one ham and one cheese on ... rye bread, ... lettuce and ... mayonnaise, and may be one bottle of ... milk and ... coke for later. 29. My eyes adjusted slowly and I saw Ahmed with his elbows on the counter, sipping ... beer and discussing the weather with the bartender. 30. 'What's inside it?' asked Mole. 'There is ... cold chicken,' replied Rat briefly, '... cold tongue, ... cold ham, ... meat, ... ginger beer, ... lemonade, ... soda water.' 31. Out in ... cold night air, he wiped ... sweat from his forehead and pulled the second hat with which he had provided himself lower over his eyes.

Exercise 71. Supply the required articles, paying special attention to uncountable concrete nouns (names of materials).

1. 'I shan't have ... fish,' said Robin. 2. Her room smelled of ... soot and ... face powder. 3. ... mud was drying rapidly, but ... car was still stuck. 4. James asked for ... water and drank it thirstily. 5. On the travel he drank ... tea, but in the cabin it was ... coffee with ... sugar and ... tinned milk. 6. They found plenty of signs of deer in ... snow. 7. ... men moved heavily as though they were walking in ... mud. 8. They were buying ... new furniture. 9. ... equipment from ... wrecked plane has to be saved. 10. She had ... brown shining hair which hung down on either side of her face. 11. Dinner began in silence. In silence ... soup was finished. It was ... excellent soup, though a little thick. And ... fish was brought. Someone said: 'It's the first spring day!' 'Spring!' said John. 'There isn't ... breath of ... air.' No one replied. ... fish was taken away. Then ... maid brought ... champagne. 14. Your design requires ... very expensive equipment. 15. Boss took up the pen, picked the fly out of ... ink, and shook it on to a piece of blotting paper. 16. She taught ... children to work with ... paper, which could be crumpled up at ... end of ... lesson, with ... plasticine, which could be squeezed back into ... shapeless lumps, with ... bricks and ... stones and ... coloured balls which could be jumbled together again. 17. She stirred ... melting sugar with ... spoon. 18. But John treated me like ... precious china. 19. Father, at ... head of ... table, began to slice ... hot meat. 20. Barber went to ... bar and ordered ... coffee, then changed it to ... brandy because ... coffee wasn't enough after ... talk like that. 21. Roy was already sliding down the slope toward ... water far below. He was churning up ... soft snow as he allowed his body to carry itself hurtling down the slope. 22. Oh, I don't like ... tea, I'll have ... lemonade instead. 23. 'Would you like to have ... hot chocolate?' Mrs. Page asked. 24. But look at ... dirt on that suit. You must have it cleaned. 25. They've taken to giving you ... extremely bad teas in the

club. 26. He was covered in ... fresh snow, his thin cheeks pink and flushed. 27. When ... soup was finished Bertha turned round to the fire. 28. She was still warm with the memory of Milly's pancakes which had dripped with ... butter, and of ... coffee which had been served with ... real cream. 29. Monty and I drank ... beer. 30. 'I knit them myself,' I heard ... woman say, 'of ... thick grey wool.' 31. 'You're drinking nothing.' 'You know I never do. ... wine is such horrid ... stuff.' 32. Several other men dropped in, and ... air was soon thick with ... tobacco smoke.

Exercise 72. Translate from Russian into English paying special attention to the use of articles with names of substances.

А) 1. Вода слишком холодная. 2. Подлей воды в суп: он слишком густой. 3. Он попросил стакан воды. 4. Снег был очень глубокий. 5. Он стал белым, как снег. 6. Очень трудно ходить по глубокому снегу. 7. Чай горячий, а я не люблю горячий чай. 8. Подогрей кофе. 9. Положи лимон в чай. 10. Лимон очень полезен. 11. нарежь лимон. 12. Купи лимон к чаю. 13. Конфеты не заменяют сахар. 13. Вино сладкое, а я предпочитаю сухое вино. 14. Приходи. Я угощу тебя вином, какого ты никогда не пробовал. 15. Некоторые люди едят мороженое на улице даже зимой. 16. Купи ребенку мороженого. 17. Пока вы разговаривали, мороженое растаяло. 18. Портфель мал, но кожа хорошая. 19. Я люблю зеленый бархат. 20. Не забудь дать кошке молока. 21. Я ходил по аллее и думал о вишневом варенье.

В) 1. Сидя на веранде, Барт мог слышать звон фарфора, стук серебра. 2. Ни один из них не ел хлеба в течение десяти лет. 3. Холодная вода освежила его после долгого сна. 4. Она носила коралловое ожерелье в серебряной оправе. 5. Вы хоть раз получали табак, который я посылал? 6. Джейн и Джон шли по грязи и слякоти, взявшись за руки. 7. Восхитительный аромат жарящегося цыпленка наполнил квартиру. 8. Когда суп был съеден, он повернулся к огню и зажег сигару. 9. Я наполнил ванну холодной водой. 10. На поверхности воды лежали листья. 11. Она приготовила себе кофе. 12. Мейбл вязала что-то из толстой красной шерсти. 13. «Диета? – подумала она. – Когда мне будет шестьдесят, я позволю себе распуститься. Я буду есть столько хлеба и масла, сколько мне захочется». 14. Перед Беатрисой стояла тарелка с маслом, горшочек с клубничным джемом, кофе и кувшин со сливками. 15. Ее слова повисли в тишине комнаты, как туман над водой. 16. Правда ведь, что не имеет значения, написано завещание пером или напечатано на машинке. 17. Она пила крепкий черный кофе, намазывая масло на кусок черствого хлеба. 18. Крыши и земля были покрыты снегом. 19. Джанис последовала за ней с чашкой теплого молока и померила у нее температуру. 20. У него кончились продукты, и он питался рыбой и кокосовыми орехами.

Exercise 73. Revision: fill in the blanks with articles wherever necessary paying particular attention to the words ‘tea’ and ‘coffee’.

### Interview

Tom met John Begg, ... young sales assistant, when he was buying ... coffee in ... big London department store. As John wasn't busy, he had ... talk with Tom.

Tom: There are such ... lot of ... departments in ... store. Why did you choose to work in ... grocery department?

John: My father has ... grocery shop in ... Ireland, so I already knew ... bit about selling ... groceries when I came to England. I thought that blending and selling ... teas and ... coffees from all over ... world would be particularly interesting.

Tom: You certainly sell many different kinds of ... coffees and ... teas – some with ... strange names, too. What is ‘mate’, for ... instance?

John: ‘Mate’ is ... tea made from ... mate plant in ... Argentina. We also sell ... Jasmine-scented tea, amongst ... others, as well as ... dozens of ... different types of ... coffees that you can see.

Tom: I suppose ... different customers want ... special blends.

John: Oh yes. Some of them are very particular indeed about ... blending, and want ... three or four different teas or coffees mixed together, or ‘blended’ as we say.

Tom: Your customers must know quite ... lot about ... tea and ... coffee to ask for these special blends.

Exercise 74. Revision: supply the required articles, paying special attention to uncountable concrete nouns (names of materials).

### Traditional Methods of Food Preservation

Though some foods, such as ... rice, ... wheat and ... other cereals, can be ripened and then stored for years before they deteriorate, ... other foods, such as ... meat and ... fish, normally deteriorate quickly. But no single method of preservation is suitable for all ... types of ... food.

... traditional methods of drying, smoking, salting, or pickling ... foods were widely used long before it was known why these methods were effective. It is now known that ... processes of decay are accelerated by ... enzymes already present in ... food cells and by ... bacteria or ... other microorganisms which may be already present or may come from) ... external sources. To preserve ... food from decay, it is necessary either to destroy ... bacteria or to create ... environment in which ... bacteria cannot multiply and ... enzymes are inactivated. ... bacteria can be destroyed by heat and be inactivated by depriving them of moisture. ... enzymes can be inactivated by cold or by reducing their moisture content.

... moisture content of ... food can be reduced by drying it in ... sun or by ... other means. ... meat or ... fish suspended over ... smoking fire is partly dried and ... smoke also has ... bactericidal properties. ... salt and ... vinegar can also be used effectively to preserve ... food products.

Exercise 75. Fill in the blanks with articles if necessary paying particular attention to the use of articles before names of materials.

At ... dinner table ... last night Mrs. Shannon said, 'I hope you'll all appreciate this steak. It may be ... last steak you'll have in this house until ... prices of ... beef go down.'

'How much did you pay for it?' her husband asked.

'I'm not going to tell you,' Mrs. Shannon said. 'You'll think I shouldn't have bought it.'

'Maybe we should try ... horse meat,' her son Steve said. 'I've heard that it tastes as good as ... beef, and it's much cheaper.' Steve's sister Sharon was shocked. 'Would you eat ... horse?' she asked. 'I wouldn't. I'd rather become ... vegetarian.'

'So would I,' her grandmother agreed. 'To me, eating ... horse would be like eating ... friend. But then, I don't suppose you ... young people, have ever known any horses, really.'

'Did you ever own ... horse, Grandma?' Michael asked.

'No, but I remember when our Milkman had ' ... horse. Every morning ... milk wagon stopped in front of our door. Whenever I was up early enough, I used to go and talk to ... horse. Sometimes I gave him ... sugar.'

'I would have liked that,' her granddaughter said. 'But there aren't any milk wagons nowadays.'

'That's right,' Steve said. '... people get their milk at ... store or out of ... milk machines.'

'Most people do,' Mr. Shannon said. 'But there are ... trucks that deliver ... milk in some places. They don't come every day, though. They come about once ... week.' 'Did you read that article in ... last night's newspaper?' Mrs. Shannon asked. 'It was about all ... things that ... milk trucks deliver these days.'

'I read it,' her husband said. 'It seems that ... milk trucks now deliver ... bread, ... butter, and ... eggs, as well as ... milk and ... cream.' 'Why?' Sharon asked.

'Because ... milk companies lose ... money if they deliver nothing but ... milk,' Mr. Shannon answered. 'People don't want to pay ... high prices to have their milk delivered. ... milk prices are lower in ... stores.' 'You can even buy ... cakes and ... pies from some of ... milk trucks now,' Mrs. Shannon added. 'Some even sell ... powder, ... towels, and ... cosmetics. You can buy all those from ... milkman who comes to your door.'

'I wish they'd do that around here,' Michael said. 'It would be like having ... traveling store.' 'Maybe they will,' his father said. 'The drivers seem to like it. One driver's sales have gone up thirty-five percent since he started delivering those other things to his milk customers.'

'It's profitable, I guess,' Sharon said. 'But I still think it would be nicer to have ... milk wagon with ... horse.'

## CHAPTER 4 ARTICLES WITH ABSTRACT NOUNS

§ 27 **Absence of article** Abstract uncountable nouns (like names of substances) take no article when used in a general sense. The absence of the article before abstract nouns has **the nominating meaning**.

e.g. A healthy diet should provide *protection* against disease.

Abstract nouns may be modified by descriptive attributes. If a descriptive attribute narrows the notion denoted by the noun making it less general no article is used. Such attributes (attributes of the first type) are expressed by adjectives the main identifiable semantic groups of which are as follows:

1) Adjectives denoting nationality (*Ukrainian, French, English, etc.*).

e.g. *French poetry* is a category of *French literature*.

The definite article is used if there's a limiting attribute:

e.g. One American Imagist who was thoroughly conversant with *the French poetry of his time* was John Gould Fletcher.

2) Adjectives denoting social characteristics (*feudal, capitalist, proletarian, racial, religious, bourgeois, etc.*).

e.g. Pressure to end *racial segregation* in the government grew among African Americans and progressives after the end of World War II.

A work on *feudal law* has also been attributed to him, but without foundation.

3) Adjectives denoting periods of time, often historical periods (*contemporary, modern, ancient, Victorian, mediaeval, daily, further, etc.*).

e.g. Chastity was one of the keys of *Victorian morality*.

The notion of *modern art* is closely related to Modernism.

4) Adjectives denoting authenticity or reliability (*true, authentic, solid, false, dubious, reliable, real, genuine, etc.*).

e.g. *Genuine happiness* also comes from contentment.

Seeking another person's highest good is the essence of *true friendship*.

5) Adjectives denoting degree or extent (*perfect, great, sufficient, immense, sheer, utter, huge, tremendous, complete, absolute, infinite, considerable, etc.*).

e.g. Find out the exact work that offers you *immense joy*.

Everyone has been given *infinite power* but they don't know it.

6) Adjectives denoting various genres or trends in art (*dramatic, theatrical, classical, romantic, detective, etc.*).

e.g. Latin literature yields little more material in *dramatic criticism* and theory than Greek.

Certain *romantic prose* parallels the poetry of the period in a number of ways.

7) Adjectives referring to man's social and spiritual life (*social, public, political, intellectual, spiritual, moral, mental, humane, immoral, personal, reasonable, etc.*).

e.g. *Human philosophy* changed much over its history.

Every one in this world would take *public recognition* into consideration when measuring the results of one piece of work.

8) Adjectives characterizing man's manner or behaviour (*polite, brusque,*



*formal, nervous, serious, etc.*).

e.g. *Formal behaviour* is very polite, and is used in official or important situations.

I admire you for *serious attitude* toward work.

9) Adjectives denoting position or locality (*outside, inside, inner, local, internal, external, etc.*).

e.g. I think it is because my *inner vision* is blocked and I cannot visualize.

Article 7 of regulation on *insider information* defines the liability for breach of provisions for inside information use.

10) Adjectives characterizing phenomena as recurrent or going on without stopping (*continual, continuous, constant, incessant, etc.*).

e.g. I don't like filling up spaces of noise with *incessant talk*.

*Constant aggression* can lead to bad health and unhappiness.

There are also some other adjectives of different meanings which serve as descriptive attributes of the above type to abstract uncountable nouns. They are: *good, bad, free, critical, ordinary, plain, physical, human, consistent* and some others.

e.g. Even *ordinary honesty* is not universal.

If a descriptive attribute is expressed by a noun in the common case, an abstract noun as a rule requires no article either:

e.g. *Family affection* is a pillar that supports me when I think of giving up.

**§ 28 The indefinite article** An abstract noun may be used with the indefinite article when a certain aspect of the notion denoted by the noun is meant: an abstract noun expresses a certain kind of quality, emotion, state, etc. This meaning of the indefinite article is called **aspective**.

An abstract noun mostly has a descriptive attribute in such cases (an attribute of the second type)<sup>1</sup>. Besides bringing out a certain aspect of the notion denoted by the noun the indefinite article also has a stylistic effect making a description more vivid. Therefore the use of the indefinite article with abstract nouns is characteristic of the belles-lettres style.

e.g. He was filled with *a loathing he had never known*.

If an abstract noun is modified by the adjectives '**certain**' or '**peculiar**' the indefinite article is obligatory:

e.g. There is *a peculiar tension* about her and yet her face doesn't show it.

The indefinite article in the aspective meaning may also be found with abstract nouns which have no attributes, but this kind of use occurs more rarely.

e.g. I was aware now of *a sickness*. (= a kind of sickness)

**Note 1** The indefinite article is often omitted if an abstract noun modified by a descriptive attribute of the second type is used in the following syntactic functions:

1) A predicative:

e.g. It was *gallant courage*, and it had stood her in such stead during her mother's long illness.

---

<sup>1</sup> For attributes of the first type see § 32

2) An attribute expressed by a prepositional phrase (mostly an of-phrase).

e.g. She was a woman of *wonderful generosity* and would give away everything she possessed.

3) An adverbial modifier of manner expressed by a prepositional group (mostly with the prepositions ‘with’ or ‘in’).

e.g. He shouted at them in *helpless rage*.

The nouns ‘comfort’, ‘disappointment’, ‘disgrace’, ‘pity’, ‘pleasure’, ‘relief’, ‘shame’ are always used with the indefinite article in the following constructions:

1) In sentences with the formal ‘it’ as subject when they are used as predicatives of the main clause.

e.g. It’s *a pity* we couldn’t stay longer in Boston.

It was *a shame* that you couldn’t come with us.

2) In exclamatory sentences after ‘what’.

e.g. She’s resigned? Oh, what *a shame*.

The following nouns are never used with the indefinite article; *advice, assistance, bliss, breeding, cunning, control, evidence, guidance, health, fun, information, luck, money, news, nonsense, permission, progress, trade, weather, work*.

e.g. Spending money is *fun*!

*Evidence* shows that global warming is definitely occurring.

**§ 29 The definite article** The definite article is used with abstract nouns when the abstract idea denoted by a noun is applied to a definite situation or object.

e.g. Sarah peered into *the darkness*, trying to see who was crying.

The meaning of the definite article with abstract nouns is **restricting**. The restriction of the abstract notion denoted by a noun is shown by a limiting attribute or is clear from the context.

The definite article is always used with substantivized adjectives denoting abstract notions.

e.g. I personally believe in *the supernatural*.

To this group also belong such nouns always used with the definite article as **the present, the past, the future, the singular, the plural**.

e.g. A singular noun ending in -s, -x, -z, -ch, -sh makes *the plural* by adding -es.

**Note 1** Some set-phrases:

*to be in despair/ in service/ in power/ of the opinion/ of importance/ out of control/ in danger/ out of danger/ in a rage/ in (a) good/ bad humour/ at a loss/ in a hurry*.

e.g. He laughed again, obviously *in a good humour*.

**§ 30** A number of abstract nouns may function both as countable nouns or uncountable nouns. Such nouns can refer to a state or process in general (e.g. difficulty) or to an instance of it (e.g. a difficulty). In the former case they follow the general rules for the use of articles with countable nouns. The following abstract nouns also behave like this: *ambition, analysis, attack, change, conflict, controversy,*

*death, desire, difficulty, disagreement, divorce, doubt, escape, failure, famine, fear, hope, improvement, investment, life, marriage, meaning, murder, noise, opportunity, pain, pregnancy, protest, rebellion, recession, retreat, sound, suicide, suspicion, theft, victory, war.*

e.g. He resigned in *protest* against the company's unfair policies.

Students will hold *a protest* this weekend outside Parliament.

In other cases where an abstract noun can be both countable and uncountable there is often considerable difference in meaning. Here are some common words which behave like this: *beauty, business, charity, charm, cold, education, experience, faith, grammar, history, language, law, memory, reason, room, speech, study, talk, time, trust, work*, etc.

e.g. She has years of *experience* in the computer industry.

The whole thing must have been *an interesting experience* for you.

Sometimes countable abstract nouns are treated as uncountable and take no article in the singular form. This kind of usage may be found in prepositional phrases (especially after the prepositions 'of', 'with', 'in').

e.g. He has refused to pay, not without *reason*.

Exercise 76. Insert articles where necessary.

A) '**weather**' 1. The airplane in which Francis was travelling East ran into ... heavy weather. 2. He had travelled in the plane faster than the rain and when he came to New York ... weather was sunny and mild there. 3. Everyone hates to have to go out in ... rainy weather. 4. ... weather was so warm that we decided to go swimming. 5. What ... fine weather we're having today! 6. In ... warm weather I spent most of the afternoon reading out in the garden. 7. I did not enjoy my holiday because ... weather was very cold. 8. We have been having ... frosty weather for the week. 9. Birds don't like this sort of ... weather. 10. You ought to stay at home in ... cold weather. 11. ... weather is changing for the worse. 12. Do you like such ... weather?

B) '**progress**' 1. ... progress from an absolute to a limited monarchy, from a limited monarchy to a democracy, is ... progress toward a true respect for the individual. 2. Wolzogen had come from Barclay de Tolly to report on ... progress of affairs on the left flank. 3. Then he added, 'But you gotta admit we been making ... progress as a team.' 4. In history we find ... very similar progress of conviction concerning the part played by free will in the general affairs of humanity. 5. Katie asked her about ... progress on the horse ranch. 6. ... progress of civilization has resulted in a vast change alike in the theory and in the method of punishment. 7. He saw that the history of Roman jurisprudence was ... continuous progress of the narrow, rigorous, primitive and almost iron law of the XII. 8. The march upon Naples became ... triumphal progress. 9. There is no hieroglyph for ... word 'progress' because the very idea of ... progress didn't exist. 10. She continues to make ... rapid progress in the acquisition of language as her experiences increase. 11. You can't be satisfied with ... progress you have made. 12. The patient was making such ... noticeable progress that the doctor hoped he would not have to stay in bed much longer.

C) **'advice'** 1. I am grateful to you for ... advice you gave me. 2. He wondered what ... advice the old worker would give him. 3. I think I can give you ... piece of ... good advice. 4. I'm not the man to give you ... advice. 5. Oh, this is not ... friendly advice. 6. I just want to ask you for ... advice. 7. ... advice he had got from most of his friends was to turn down the offer. 8. 'Is that ... general advice or forecasting?' she asked, frowning. 9. Celman, acting upon ... advice of General Roca, placed his resignation in the hands of congress on the 31st of. 10. He needed more than access to the underworld to save her; he needed ... medical advice of someone like Wynn. 11. ... impartial advice about the most important decision of all, whether to keep the baby or have an abortion, is often not available. 12. ... best advice I can give you is to try to relax. 13. 'I will give you ... piece of ... advice,' he said, unaffected by her tirade.

D) **'news'** 1. I am satisfied with ... news I managed to get. 2. Napoleon had landed in Cannes, and such ... fatal news had ruined Amelia's father. 3. I turned the radio on and listened to ... nine o'clock news. 4. What's ... news? 5. Have you heard ... news? 6. 'James is not coming tonight.' 'Oh, that is ... bad news.' 7. That's ... best news I've heard yet. 8. ... news from home is bad. 9. Even if he comes with ... news I'm hoping for, the situation will remain difficult for a couple of days. 10. 'Do you want ... good news or ... bad news,' he pronounced. 11. By the way, ... good news is you might have just saved another life. 12. It was ... great news and she should have felt relieved. 13. She prayed for her brother as living and was always awaiting ... news of his return. 14. ... bad news is we'd better double up on our level of caution if every greedy fortune hunter is bird dogging Howie.

E) **'information'** 1. Where have you got such ... important information from? 2. He tried to piece together ... information he got from different sources. 3. How did you manage to stumble upon such ... fine piece of ... information while we were still in the dark? 4. The Lieutenant told us to come back with ... information. So we must find out how many guns they have. 5. All Len wants out of me is ... information about Allen, and Howard couldn't care less where I am. 6. Considering ... information Katie had just disclosed, it wasn't surprising that he wanted to be in control. 7. Her mouth continued its revolt with her mind, delivering ... contradictory information to the other end of the line. 8. We don't always get ... timely information ourselves. 9. I proceeded to relate ... information Martha had conveyed. 10. Strange he would want to defend Howard after he had tried to dig up ... information on him. 11. ... unexpected information was coming so fast it was hard to absorb. 12. There was ... helpful information for us to improve observation techniques.

F) **'work'** 1. He received an evasive answer to his request for ... work. 2. He put away ... work, assuring me that he had nothing to do that could not wait till the next day. 3. Martin Eden had done his usual day's work, which was the equivalent to ... week's work of the average successful writer. 4. I intended to do ... little work before going to bed. 5. Look at the necklace. What ... fine piece of ... work! 6. 'Congratulations. That was ... very smart work altogether,' he said. 7. I know ... work I've done is ... good work, the best of my life. 8. He suddenly became aware that Mike had stopped ... work. 9. Uncle Nick made me feel that we had ...

tremendous work to do. 10. I'm going to cut the grass in the garden. It's ... hard work, but it has to be done. 11. I was trying not to think about ... work I was to do. 12. ... work on the nursery became ... work on Destiny's new room. 13. And when I say robots, I don't mean androids, which are people-shaped machines doing ... work of people.

G) **'pleasure'** 1. What ... pleasure to see you again! 2. You will read the book with ... pleasure. 3. I'm looking forward to ... pleasure of entertaining you and your wife. 4. ... work gave him ... increasing pleasure. 5. 'It's ... pleasure to talk to a man like that; he is not like our provincials,' he would say. 6. Added to it was ... pleasure of seeing Cynthia, after all she'd undergone, so utterly enjoying the day. 7. But they were so happy and contented that I lost all sense of pain in ... pleasure of their companionship. 8. Gabe realized she was coming to see him for ... pleasure, not business this time. 9. I have never played with words again for ... mere pleasure of the game. 10. Jane was graceful, coordinated and ... pleasure to watch. 11. Moreover, she knew what ... pleasure speech would be to her, and this definite knowledge of what she was striving for gave her the delight of anticipation which made drudgery easy. 12. The little princess went round the table and gaily spreading out her dress sat down on a sofa near the silver samovar, as if all she was doing was ... pleasure to herself and to all around her. 13. To ride this horse was ... pleasure to him, and he thought of the horse, of the morning, of the doctor's wife, but not once of the impending danger. 14. I believe in ... pleasure, but ... pleasure is always short-lived, like one-night stands.

H) **'silence'** 1. Andrew was the first to break ... silence. 2. There was ... silence for a few moments. 3. There was ... silence. Edward forgot all that he wished to say. 4. There was ... reflective silence. 5. They walked a few more yards in ... silence. 6. She gazed steadily out of the window, with her back to the room, and ... prolonged silence set in. 7. The breakfast proceeded in ... silence with nobody daring to look up from the plate. 8. ... silence grew oppressive. 9. After all these hours of excitement and nervous strain they all relapsed into ... silence of fatigue. 10. For more minutes there was again ... silence of the open. 11. After ... awkward silence, she glanced up at him with a mischievous smile. 12. ... uncomfortable silence surrounded them for a while as Rachel diced tomatoes and Adrienne chopped the lettuce. 13. The ride back was quiet, but ... silence was a comfortable one, only becoming awkward when they reached the door of his house. 14. They danced for a few minutes in ... comfortable silence, and finally he spoke again.

I) **'light'** 1. ... light was coming into the cellar from somewhere. With ... light there had returned hope. 2. Soon he saw ... light in the distance and understood that he was on the right track. 3. He turned the handle and was in the room before he was seen. ... light was shaded, his mother was sitting on the far side of the bed. 4. ... greyish light came through the small window in the garret. 5. Hours passed. He could only see ... faint light of the night through the dirty window. 6. No sooner had the nurse drawn the curtains aside when ... light flooded the room. 7. When it had grown dark in the hall, the servant brought in ... light. 8. Somebody asked for ... light and I heard a match strike. 9. A moment later, veins of ... light threaded through dark low

clouds. 10. Carmen turned ... light off and shut the door. 11. I saw ... light on in a large house so I ... just walked in. 12. ... light was green and she accelerated across the intersection. 13. The moon peeked shyly over the dunes and moved searching fingers of ... dim light across the dunes. 14. The next morning she woke to the first ray of ... light through the window. 15. The revelation also threw ... new light on why Alex halted his life to take care of Katie.

J) **'time'** 1. After ... time, when they had walked a short distance and returned, they sat down beside a timber which they found half buried in the sand. 2. He looked up at Rita with a grin. 'Have I ever told you about ... time I worked on the Northern Pacific?' 3. Asking Dave to talk about Spain was ... time wasted. 4. He was silent for ... time and drew thoughtfully at the pipe. 5. He was silent all ... time. 6. ... time flies when one is happy and creeps when one is in ... grief. 7. As busy as she was, ... time had to be set aside for play with Destiny. 8. But then, maybe Alondra was one of those people who simply took ... long time to warm to strangers. 9. I lost track of ... time until Alex came along and revived my interest in the ranch. 10. It was ... long time back, before they were married. 11. It wasn't ... first time she had gone to bed while he was out on a call, but it was ... first time she had done so away from home. 12. Still, by ... time they returned, Alex looked exhausted. 13. 'None of us has had breakfast,' said the boy; 'and in ... time of danger like this it's foolish to talk about eating.'

K) **'quiet'** 1. ... quiet settled over the little community of Stilleveld, ... quiet that was in tune with the stillness of the night. 2. At last, stepping on board the Pequod, we found everything in ... profound quiet, not a soul moving. 3. But even it does not exist, there is nothing but ... quiet and peace. 4. They are like the people whom they see every day, who prefer the crowded, noisy city to ... quiet of the country. 5. While it was feasible, Quinn's equipment was cumbersome and there were the ever present problem of ... absolute quiet, not to mention the security issue. 6. Familiar coldness and silence washed over her before ... quiet was replaced by the storm's furious bellow.

L) **'dampness'** 1. ... dampness of this part of the country disagreed with the travellers. 2. ... dampness in the air is called humidity. 3. There always was ... certain dampness about the room. The ceiling and walls were covered with wet patches. 4. After donning a heavy jacket against the mountain chill and ... continuing dampness, she kissed her husband goodbye. 5. Generally speaking, in the excavations springs are met with; these may be only sufficient to indicate ... continuous dampness at certain beds of the rock. 6. He steadied her with one hand, and a second later ... cool dampness of the shadow world swallowed her. 7. He was so much interested in that task that he was unable to sleep in spite of his cold which had grown worse from ... dampness of the evening. 8. She closed her eyes, and ... dampness slid through her, over her. 9. There is hardly any seasonal change to be observed, and ... dampness of the climate causes the heat to be more oppressive than are higher temperatures in drier climates. 10. The clothing was obviously quite old and now that it was out of its container, reeked of ... dampness and dirt.

M) **'nature'** 1. He had romantic affection for all manifestations of ... nature. 2. That morning ... nature was at its loveliest. 3. A diplomat by ... nature, he had long served in the peacekeeping capacity among his brothers, before he was rendered dead-dead seven months before. 4. As we noted earlier, people no longer disagree simply about what values to apply to a set of facts – rather, they disagree as to ... nature of the facts themselves. 5. Because fate and ... nature unequally distribute ability, ambition, and opportunity, people's financial outcomes vary greatly. 6. He just wished his stepfather would be more forthcoming about ... nature of his concern so he'd know how to help. 7. In discussing nutrition, not only is there little agreement on ... nature of the solutions, there is often disagreement on ... nature of the problems. 8. It calmed her to recall how beautiful and different ... nature was at night. 9. It is a sound admirably suited to swamps and twilight woods which no day illustrates, suggesting ... vast and undeveloped nature which men have not recognized. 10. It will become ... second nature to know when one lies to you. 11. Of ... retiring nature, he eludes both hunters and philosophers. 12. Every deity has ... different nature and source for their magic. 13. He seemed to have ... even nature, but maybe he was on his best behavior. 14. What is ... nature of the luxury which enervates and destroys nations?

N) **'fun'** 1. It would be ... fun for George to be Governor and for her to be Governor's wife. 2. He began to think of ... fun he had planned for this day. 3. Your friend is ... great fun. 4. We hid his watch for ... fun. 5. Dean didn't think Lydia Larkin did anything for ... fun of it. 6. Further, assume the best job pays the most and is ... most fun, and the worst job pays the least and is ... least fun. 7. I thought it ... great fun to sit on a big rock in my bathing-suit and feel wave after wave dash against the rock, sending up a shower of spray which quite covered me. 8. It was ... fun cooking for him – delightful talking to him. 9. She understands and doesn't make ... fun of me. 10. I cannot help wishing sometimes that I could have some of ... fun that other girls have. 11. They told you that for ... fun, and you believed it! 12. You can make all ... fun you want about that stuff, but I'm still working on selling it. 13. 'It would have spoiled ... fun,' replied the kitten, yawning. 14. And so ... fun went on until the clock showed that it lacked only ten minutes till school would be dismissed.

O) **'money'** 1. At first I found it difficult to understand ... English money. 2. I lent him five pounds last week. Do you think he will pay ... money back? 3. After all, it was the doctor's job to keep you healthy, not to make money when you were sick. 4. Alex had provided the money to remodel the home, but insisted that it stay in her name only. 5. He wasn't involved in anything illegal and you have no reason to be concerned about spending any of the money he acquired. 6. I don't want the kids thinking that just because we have money they can blow it on every whim. 7. I keep telling him that as long as he gives her money, she'll never get out of trouble, but he just says she's the only sister he has and he has the money. 8. I thought you had finally accepted that the money belonged to both of you. 9. In the modern age, money is once again represented by bits, but a different kind altogether: money went from gold to paper and is now digital. 10. Sarah and Giddon both seemed content with the arrangement, but she felt guilty about the money she earned... or didn't earn. 11. She

wasn't contributing money, but she was certainly contributing her share. 12. What does he have that I don't – besides money and good looks? 13. Would she ever reach the point that she felt comfortable about spending the money he had earned before they met? 14. Money usually traveled with a companion called trouble. 15. Then there was the money he left to Carmen.

P) **'luck'** 1. 'I didn't work there long. I fell ill and had to give up the job.' 'That's ... hard luck.' 2. What ... good luck that I found you in! 3. 'It probably won't work. If you're with me long, you'll find I have ... worst luck ever. But it's worth a try,' Katie answered then muttered. 4. You never need ... 'luck' when there's a woman involved, Dean called after him. 5. But I've just had ... bad luck to come out of the sky, skip the solid earth, and land lower down than I intended. 6. Feeling I'd have ... better luck searching for notes, I began to rummage through Quinn's files. 7. We're out of ... luck asking Fred for any research help, too. 8. We'll donate it for ... good luck so you're sure to come back.

Exercise 77. Fill in the blanks with articles wherever necessary.

1. There was ... pain in her eyes, which could hardly be seen without tears. 2. ... sorrow and temptation began to wash away in ... good red anger. 3. And like them, so did Andrew Rose move from ... horror back to ... horror. 4. The record lasted over nearly 20 years, ... amount of the separate entries growing larger as ... time went on. 5. ... lights changed from the dusk-blue of April to the purple-grey of ... madness and the room was another world that floated in ... hush that was not exactly ... silence. 6. He was an active member of the organizations that have been founded to further ... interests of authors or to alleviate their hard lot when ... sickness or ... old age has brought them to ... penury. 7. What made ... reality unbearable was that Anna understood the chasm between them now. 8. His frequent calls at Aunt Fifty's house was ... greatest humiliation of all. 9. He had taken ... news with ... equanimity that was again unnatural. 10. ... anger splashed up in Ethan before he knew it and he was surprised. 11. But then ... trade was as bad at Havre as everywhere else, and in a few months he found himself once more without ... employment. 12. For some time he was disturbed by wild shrieks of ... laughter from the twins, who, with ... light-hearted gaiety of schoolboys, were evidently amusing themselves before they retired to ... rest. 13. Victor laughed. 'You're ... disgrace for ... military tradition.' 14. 'Very well,' said Fontini-Cristi, confused by ... brutality as well as ... swift decisiveness of the last thirty seconds. 15. There were ... moments when he looked on ... evil simply as ... mode through which he could realize his conception of the ... beautiful. 16. And when at last ... inevitable happened it came upon Mr. Warburton with all ... shock of ... unexpected. 17. She felt all things were possible, ... future was in her power and she wanted to shout, sing and dance. 18. He was told strange stories of ... past, stories of hazardous expeditions in ... unknown, of ... love and ... death, of ... hatred and ... revenge.



Exercise 78. Fill in the blanks with articles wherever necessary.

1. The flame had ... lovely light staining the paper, curling the edges, making the slanting writing impossible to distinguish. 2. It was ... anger that had seized Mrs. Strickland and her pallor was the pallor of ... cold and sudden rage. 3. There was ... cold feeling in the pit of his stomach, ... creeping horror along his nerves. 4. That fine side was that she could almost at any hour, by ... kindled preference or ... diverted energy, glow for another interest than her own. 5. After the final wave of the hand, Mr. Golspie, a very massive figure now in his huge ulster, made ... slow, steady and very dignified progress down the gangway. 6. There was ... numbness in the street, ... sense of ... disbelief that resulted in pockets of ... silence. 7. 'I think it's silly not to do the things you want to,' she blurted out then was silent again, for the words sounded like ... criticism of Leonard and she had not meant them to be. 8. She lay in the silvery shadows with ... courage rising arid made the plans that a sixteen-year-old makes when ... life has been so pleasant that ... defeat is ... impossibility and a pretty dress and a clear complexion are weapons to vanquish ... face. 9. ... sound itself had taken on ... weariness; ... repetition had lulled ... terror. 10. They have shown it poisoning every pleasure till ... life is so intolerable that ... discovery and ... punishment came as ... welcome relief. 11. ... chilly emptiness in the water reflected ... terrible emptiness in his soul. 12. What ... time I was going to have when I get out of here. 13. Between the hounds and the horses and the turns there was ... kinship deeper than that of their constant companionship. 14. There was ... momentary silence. 'I don't like this, Fontine.' 15. 'You are ... beauty,' he said kissing the tips of her fingers. 16. Please, signore. It is always ... pleasure to welcome a member of the Fontini-Cristis. 17. I looked to see if there was ... light in the place.

Exercise 79. Fill in the blanks with articles wherever necessary.

1. He introduced himself with ... smoothness that bypassed my awkwardness. 2. The rhododendrons were upon us. They already looked a little over-blown, a little faded. Theirs was ... brief beauty. 3. Mary had ... vague curiosity about this young man. 4. Their eyes met in ... cold stare. 5. She thought of her girlish dreams sometimes with ... smiling sadness. 6. There was ... curious pleasure in lying awake in the night when all the rest of the ward was asleep. 7. He had ... stubborn desire for his own way which the Committee did not like. 8. His anger rose to ... sudden white heat. 9. Owen read the letter with ... sudden brightening of his face. 10. He hung up the receiver between ... satisfaction and ... odd irritation. 11. It seemed to him that she had fallen back upon ... inner life where he could not penetrate. 12. I hoped that ... merciful forgetfulness would help him to take up once more the burden of ... life. 13. He was conscious that she regarded him with ... profound indifference. 14. Don't bother to make conversation for my benefit. I'm the type that prefers ... quiet understanding. 15. If I can teach something to one child, if I can awaken in only one child ... sense of ... beauty, ... joy in ... truth, ... admission of ... ignorance and ... thirst for ... knowledge, then I am fulfilled. 16. I awaited, with ... sense of ... exhilaration, permanent thing. 17. He was dazed with ... horror. 18. 'Oh, Harry?' cried ... lad, with ... ripple of ... laughter. 19. ... table roared with ... hysteric

laughter at one of this woman's anecdotes. 20. My stomach was rumbling with ... hunger. 21. It was always he who inquired, with ... great anxiety about my health. 22. He looked at Dorian in ... absolute amazement.

Exercise 80. Fill in the blanks with articles wherever necessary.

1. We both appreciate ... simplicity. 2. In less than ... week Cowperwood knew ... financial condition of Messrs. Waterman as well as they did, better, to ... dollar. 3. It is such ... weary, weary work. 4. He had ... comfortable feeling of working alone in ... large empty building, ... feeling of ... peace and ... complete privacy. 5. I've reason to believe she has never properly got over ... feeling she used to have. 6. I had seldom heard my friend speak with such ... intensity of ... feeling. 7. His footsteps were now heard striking upon ... stony road at ... distance of about twenty yards. 8. We had ... wonderful weather. 9. You must learn to face ... life seriously, Stephen. 10. However, ... life of such striking monotony does not seem to depress him. ... 11. May you be happy in ... life you have chosen! 12. I love to think of ... time that must come some day when ... man will have conquered ... nature, and ... toil-worn human race enter upon ... era of ... peace. 13. She was panting now, and in her face was ... terror which was inexplicable. 14. His round blue eyes behind ... spectacles were ghastly with ... terror. 15. I think in some curious way ... horror which she felt for him was ... transference of ... horror which she felt for herself because he so strangely troubled her. 16. She was brilliantly familiar with ... literature, ... tongues, ... art, ... history, ... physics, ... metaphysics, ... philosophy, and ... politics (in which I include ... modern politics). 17. It was ... cold, bleak, biting weather. 18. ... weather was sunny and dry. 19. ... modern science is ... wonderful thing. 20. He was ... steady, uninspired researcher in ... properties of ... liquid state of ... matter. 21. Their blue eyes became filled with ... gaiety and ... ferocity and ... joy, and their mouths with ... laughter. 22. Jon laughed, and ... sound of ... laugh was hard. 23. Then she gave ... crisp, ironic, almost cheerful laugh. 24. On that fine day ... poverty of ... district she was entering seemed to her country-nurtured eyes intensely cheerless. 25. ... reason is ... greatest discovery ever made by ... man. Yet it is ... most disregarded and least used. 26. What I offer is ... security and ... respect. That doesn't sound very exciting, but perhaps it's better than ... passion. 27. And ... passion that held Strickland was ... passion to create ... beauty. 28. She looked incarnation of ... supreme loveliness, ... loveliness which was always revealing itself anew. 29. She knew nothing of literature except ... certain authors who to truly cultured might seem banal. 30. ... expression on her face – hungry and hard and feverish – had the most peculiar effect upon Soames. 31. She listened with ... expression impatient, strained and intent. 32. At that age I had ... very faulty view of ... geography. 33. ... poor fellow's face looked haggard with ... want: he had ... aspect of ... man who had not known what it was to live in ... comfort ... for ... weeks, perhaps ... months past. 34. He longed for ... comfort of his sister's society. 35. He pines for ... kindness. 36. She sighed for ... air, liberty, ... quiet of ... country. 37. Miss Cherrell, I am going to do all I can to remove ... unpleasant impression you have of me. I am your very humble servant, and I hope some day to

have ... chance to be something else to you. 38. Then all four sat down and began to inspect Hunter and Calvin with ... air of suspicion and curiosity. 39. He spoke with ... air of someone who has got over with an unpleasant duty and can now get on to ... brighter matters. 40. How quietly you live, John. I love ... silence of this room and garden. 41. At other times he would come and sit for long periods in her room in ... silence. 42. What ... noble thing ... courage is. 43. Nothing gave him greater pleasure than to listen to all ... wonderful things ... Miller used to say about ... unselfishness of ... true friendship. 44. ... friendship which he had imposed from ... beginning he now emphasised more than ever. 45. And when multitudes of men are hurt to ... death in wars I am driven to ... grief which borders on ... insanity. 46. She could not only sing like ... lark but she had such ... kindly, smiling, tender, gentle, generous heart of her own as won ... love of everybody who came near her. 47. What ... delightful weather we are having! 48. Pray, don't talk to me about ... weather, Mr. Worthing. Whenever ... people talk to me about ... weather, I always feel quite certain that they mean something else. 49. Such ... weather makes everything and everybody disgusting. 50. When he let her go, she sank breathless into ... chair, gazing at him with ... expression of such ... terror that he put his hands over his face. 51. And so, concerned in that touched not on ... feelings within them, they reached Mount Street. 52. Owen saw ... figure of Edward at ... distance of two or three hundred yards. 53. Mrs. May lie took up her abode with her son and daughter-in-law to enjoy during ... tranquil remainder of her days ... greatest felicity that ... age and worth can know, ... contemplation of ... happiness of those on whom ... warmest affections and tenderest cares ... have been unceasingly bestowed. 54. ... art is ... manifestation of ... emotion, and ... emotion speaks ... language that all may understand. 55. Ada sat at ... piano, Richard stood beside her. She touched ... notes so softly, and sang so low, that ... wind, sighing away in ... distant hills, was as audible as ... music. 56. Mr. Bob Sawyer adjusted his skates with ... dexterity which to Mr. Winkle was perfectly marvellous. 57. He had not been stationary half ... minute, when he heard his own name pronounced by ... voice which he at once recognized as Mr. Tupman's, and looking upwards, he beheld ... sight which filled him with ... surprise and ... pleasure. 58. She sat by ... window reading. From her position she could see up ... lane for ... distance of at least ... hundred yards. 59. I can see ... beauty and ... peace of this home; I think I have never been more at ... rest in my life than at this moment. 60. Beside his bed, for ... first time during ... period of nearly twenty years, he fell down on his knees in ... passionate outburst of ... feeling. 61. It was ... new fear, different from that which she had once confided in her own flat, yet grown from ... same root. 62. ... empty windows of ... ruins were filled with ... life of their own. 63. Cowperwood awakened to ... sense of ... joy in ... life such as he fancied he had never experienced before. 64. Mr. Pickwick stood in ... principal street of this illustrious town, and gazed with ... air of ... curiosity not unmixed with ... interest, on ... objects around him.

Exercise 81. Fill in the blanks with articles wherever necessary.

1. She had attached herself to ... youth and ... hope and ... seriousness and now they had failed her more than ... age and ... despair. 2. Harry rested in ... certainty that his duty was to set an example of ... loving kindness. 3. His face had ... calmness that was new to her. 4. There was a look of such ... deep loneliness on her mother's face that Lucy felt her heart turn over in ... pity. 5. ... ownership of the land was less important to him than ... work and ... sweat he had put into it. 6. However, I don't propose to discuss ... politics, ... sociology or ... metaphysics with you. 7. I was wrapped in ... security of ... childhood. 8. ... instinctive kindness made him want to protect Gorin. 9. After dinner, of which he ate little, thinking with ... dreary satisfaction how ... grief destroys ... appetite, he went round to see his confessor. 10. She anticipated ... time when they would begin ... life which she was sure would give her at last ... perfect happiness. 11. The rest of the meeting passed without ... interruption. 12. We were having ... spring weather when it began to freeze again. 13. ... work got done somehow and she never troubled her head as to how. 14. ... hospitality was ... passion with him. 15. Each moment was sensually enhanced because of ... love inside me. 16. He nodded briefly without ... comment. 17. She said it without ... malice, there even was ... genuine sympathy in her voice. 18. He nodded and turned his eyes away with a sense of ... guilty discomfort. 19. 'Yes, the dilemma we're in is of ... greatest importance,' said Paine. 20. Anthony read the book with ... most passionate attention. 21. He could tell a story with ... dramatic intensity. 22. I think that we must all have a feeling of ... profound satisfaction. 23. 'Mind you,' said Aunt Milly, 'I shouldn't wonder if you're no better at school than ... average.' 24. She talked about herself with ... frankness that startled me. 25. He spoke with ... awkwardness of a man unused to words. 26. During his first talk with them he felt ... certain uneasiness. 27. He put the situation before her, weighing the pros and cons with ... unflinching impartiality. 28. He had been brought up to admire ... French culture. 29. When I heard the news I felt ... perfect relief. 30. There is in the streets of Paris ... peculiar vitality which excites the blood and prepares the soul for ... unexpected.

Exercise 82. Supply the required articles, paying special attention to uncountable abstract nouns:

1. He went back home with ... bitterness he had never known before. 2. This thought gave him ... immense satisfaction. 3. She thought that Francis would give her ... happiness Guy couldn't. 4. When I had received the invitation I felt ... certain curiosity. 5. With ... mock gallantry he took her hand and leaned over to kiss it. 6. There was ... quick, startled wonder in her eyes. 7. He was ashamed of ... harshness that leapt to his tongue. 8. He rose from ... chair and stood by ... window in ... agitated silence. 9. She went back to bed feeling ... curious emptiness. 10. He spoke with ... slow earnestness and his habitually solemn face had ... outraged look. 11. I had ... terrible youth though my father was ... great man. 12. I feel ... real fear as I watch Robert suffering. 13. I felt ... malicious delight at ... absurdity of his position. 14. ... music and ... philosophy are like wine – they are intended to enhance ...

pleasure of being alive. 15. He spoke of it with ... boyish eagerness. 16. His confession forced upon me ... truth that I had never permitted myself to see. 17. ... doubt is ... essence of ... excitement. 18. The woman was on her feet with ... swiftness amazing in ... person of her age. 19. He enjoyed ... warmth of her approval. 20. Dave played ... piano with ... peculiar delicacy. 21. At that early hour ... glassy sea often had ... immobility which seemed to make all ... earthy sorrows of little consequence. 22. He arranged everything with ... competence. 23. His eyes were so dark that the iris made one colour with the pupil and this gave them ... peculiar intensity. 24. As she learned to understand him better she discovered ... rare sensitiveness that lay under his aggressive manner. 25. He observed his guest with ... amused detachment. 26. He sometimes referred to his daughter's marriage with ... gloom. 27. The young man said good-bye with ... jauntiness which deceived no one. 28. A look of ... joy came into his eyes. 29. For ... next two days he was in ... state of ... greatest excitement. 30. ... kindness was not one of ... things she had normally met with in ... life. 31. ... ancient jealousy invaded his heart. 32. ... courage and resourcefulness of ... women perpetually amazed him. 33. ... humour teaches ... tolerance. 34. I have ... greatest admiration for Racine. 35. My first inclination was not to give it ... serious attention. 36. He was sorry to leave his friend in ... comparative poverty. 37. I did not realize how motley are ... qualities that go to make up ... human being. Now I am well aware that ... pettiness and ... grandeur, ... malice and ... charity, ... hatred and ... love can find place ... side by ... side in ... same human heart. 38. In ... tone of ... most extreme politeness he said: 'I think we had better go downstairs.' 39. There was ... refinement in his face and ... spirituality that was oddly moving. 40. In ... acute distress I turned to ... window.

Exercise 83. Fill in the blanks with articles if necessary.

1. 'He is an abolitionist, no doubt,' observed Gerald to John Wilkes. 'But in an Orangeman, when a principle comes up against ... Scottish tightness, the principle fares ill.' 2. This certainty of the morrow gave ... zest and ... enthusiasm to ... life and the County people enjoyed ... life with ... heartiness that Ellen could never understand. 3. Her vanity leaped to ... aid of her desire to believe, making ... belief ... certainty. 4. I am telling you ... truth. There is ... fatality about all physical and intellectual distinction, the sort of ... fatality that seemed to dog through ... history the faltering steps of kings. 5. For the first time since she had come here, ... peace no longer frightened her, ... solitude no longer oppressed her. 6. Larry was strong enough to refuse to sacrifice for Isabel's sake ... life that he thought was ... life for him. 7. And there was ... peace, ... peace and ... quieting majesty of the scene before him. 8. His son, the most capable of them all, had ... hollowness in him. 9. There seemed to be ... sadness in her and he wanted to talk to her about his wife and ... bitter loneliness in his heart. 10. ... rage inside him welled; his body trembled in ... anger. 11. ... grossest indecency would not have fallen on the ears of those three women with such a shock. 12. There were ... pain and bewilderment in her face, ... bewilderment of a pampered child who has always had her own way for the asking and who now, for the first time, was in contact with ... unpleasantness of ... life. 13. I

dwelt in ... pleasure as a fish lives in water. To fall asleep was ... pleasure; to wake, to stretch, to lace one's shoes, to walk down ... street was ... pleasure. Merely to exist was ... pleasure. To speak was ... pleasure equalled only by ... silence. 14. That must be what ... despair looks like, she said to herself, but it's more than ... despair, it is ... despair and ... exaltation together. 15. He mounted and pedalled off into ... darkness towards the stables. 16. When he stood on the platform and faced his audience seriously, frankly, but with ... engaging diffidence you could not but realize that he was giving himself up to his task with ... complete earnestness. 17. M-me Chiron regarded him with ... steady graveness in her deep blue eyes. 18. They heard a voice, Davidson's voice, through the wooden partition. It went on with ... monotonous, earnest insistence. 19. Kitty could not easily meet the eyes which rested on her with ... ironical kindness. 20. As I lounged in the Park or strolled down Piccadilly, I used to look at everyone who passed me, and wonder, with ... mad curiosity, what sort of lives they led. 21. He looked at Mason with ... certain impatience. 'What are you going to do then?' 22. If only she could find what lay behind ... moodiness that settles over him at times. 23. We both know ... fear, and ... loneliness, and ... very great distress. 24. Anything to do with the word 'hammer' meant ... sudden, extreme danger. 25. They have ... little confidence in Rome, none in the provinces. 26. But ... beauty, ... real beauty ends where an intellectual expression begins. 27. The Italian knew that the Patriarchate had ... total confidence in the padrone. 28. ... solemn peacefulness seemed to reign in that lobby. An air of ... calmness and ... resignation, of ... gentle sadness pervaded the room. 29. In her face were too sharply blended the delicate features of her mother, a Coast aristocrat of ... French descent, and the heavy ones of her florid Irish father. 30. These thoughts gave him ... enormous pleasure, bringing with them a fine feeling of ... cunning and ... strength. 31. He shook Jan's hand with ... brisk, businesslike manner. 32. There's ... serenity over her that I've never met in anyone before. 33. I may be wrong, but there is ... mystery here, ... soft, sure mystery that is understood and only remains ... mystery because I want it so 34. He went to all ... places where ... fashionable congregate. 35. It seemed incredible but ... incredible was commonplace in these times of ... madness. 36. Three things will never be believed – ... true, ... probable and ... logical. 37. 'The refreshments are on us,' ... plural did not escape me. 38. He saw ... future for himself sitting on hotel-room beds trying to get his thoughts straight. 39. Of what use to be reminded of ... joys of ... past when your life had shrivelled to a husk? 40. They talked of ... future once more, ... future that now gleamed rosily at the end of the year.

Exercise 84. Fill in the blanks with articles if necessary.

Suddenly I realized that ... knocking had stopped, someone was speaking in ... low voice outside and someone was replying. ... whispers are dangerous. I couldn't tell who ... speakers were, I got carefully off ... bed and with ... help of my stick reached ... door of ... other room. Perhaps I had moved too hurriedly because ... silence grew outside. Silence like ... plant put out ... tendrils. It seemed to grow under ... door and spread its leaves in ... room where I stood. It was ... silence I

didn't like, and I tore it apart by flinging ... door open.

Exercise 85. Fill in the blanks with articles wherever necessary.

His whole expression was stamped with... suffering and ... kind of... weary patience. Observing these signs of... severe and far from recent stroke, Andrew was conscious of... sudden shock of... dismay. There was... odd silence.

'I hope you will like it here,' Doctor Page remarked at ... length, speaking slowly and with ... difficulty, 'I'm not afraid of ... work,' Andrew answered awkwardly. ... even deeper immobility settled on Page's face. As Andrew went down to ... supper his thoughts were painfully confused. It would be months before Doctor Page was fit for ... work, if, indeed, he were ever fit for ... work again. Andrew was young, strong, and had no objection to ... extra work in which Page's illness might involve him.

Exercise 86. Translate from Russian into English paying special attention to the use of articles with abstract nouns.

1. Это очень хороший совет. 2. Совет хороший. 3. Что нового? 4. Новости хорошие? 5. Он привез плохие новости. 6. Такие сведения всегда нужны. 7. Сведения уже поступили? 8. Не стоит трогаться в путь в такую погоду. 9. Мы не тронемся, пока погода не переменится. 10. Дай деньги мне. Ты ведь такой рассеянный, ты их всегда теряешь. 11. Какой мудрый совет! 12. Какие полезные советы! 13. Какая скверная погода! 14. Был такой чудесный день! 15. Какой неожиданный визит! 16. Это такая неожиданная новость! 17. Он нашел такую хорошую работу! 18. Какая интересная работа! 19. Не забудь прочитать книгу. Это такая интересная книга! 20. Группа сделала такие успехи! 21. Какой успех имела пьеса! 22. Какие ценные сведения! 23. Это такая серьезная статья! 24. Какую хорошую статью вы написали! 24. – Какие последние новости? – Они очень интересные. 25. Есть одна новость, которую хотелось бы обсудить. 26. Репортер просматривает новости, которые сумел получить. 27. «Мама, мы пришли к тебе за советом.» 28. Ты хочешь совета? Хорошо, один я могу дать тебе. 29. Люди любят говорить о погоде, так как это безопасная тема. 30. Работа в банке была трудна для него. 31. Это интересная работа? Она тебе нравится? 32. У него обширные знания в области физики. 33. Рок-концерт прошел с большим успехом. 34. Мои студенты делают большие успехи в языке. 35. В ящике есть деньги. Возьми их. Деньги – твои. 36. Он тщательно пересчитал деньги и положил их в бумажник. 37. Образование – это лучшее капиталовложение. 38. Он дал своему сыну первоклассное образование.

Exercise 87. Translate from Russian into English paying special attention to the use of articles with abstract nouns.

1. Я еще никогда не видел дружбы крепче, чем дружба этих двух людей. 2. Рыба, заплывающая в Мертвое море, гибнет моментально. Я нашел одну мертвую рыбешку. Она была тверда, как палка и была покрыта солью, как панцирем. 3. Эти нежные растения нужно первое время держать под стеклом. 4. Через стекло рыбы казались больше, чем они были на самом деле. 5. Часовщик

рассматривал механизм через увеличительное стекло. 6. Молодежь с энтузиазмом работала на строительстве нового театра. 7. Старик взялся за работу с энтузиазмом юноши. 8. Его специальность – литература. Сейчас он уже много лет занимается китайской литературой. 9. Воздух, окружающий землю, называется атмосферой. 10. В доме царила атмосфера покоя и благополучия. 11. Компания веселых молодых людей с шумом высыпала на улицу. 12. Не составите ли вы нам компанию? 13. Язык служит обществу как средство общения между людьми. 14. При изучении языка необходимо глубоко изучить грамматику. 15. Нам его рекомендовали как человека с хорошим знанием языка. 16. Гостеприимство – характерная черта украинцев. 17. Иностранцы, приезжающие к нам, поражаются гостеприимству нашего народа. 18. Она, должно быть, была красавицей в молодости. 19. Художник глубоко чувствует красоту. 20. Новый ассистент еще не имеет опыта такой работы. 21. Это было такое переживание! 22. Этот старый солдат прожил жизнь, которая может служить примером того, как надо жить и бороться. 23. Уже много лет ученые работают над проблемой происхождения жизни на земле. 24. Декабристы погибли в борьбе за свободу народа. 25. Я очень ценю в людях скромность и простоту. 26. Природа играла большую роль в творчестве романтиков. 27. Музыкант должен знать историю оперы. 28. С ней он мог говорить о литературе, об искусстве, о чем угодно, мог жаловаться ей на жизнь, на людей. 29. Я хочу быть артисткой, я хочу славы, успехов, свободы. 30. Я с детства люблю музыку. 31. Он изучает английскую историю. 32. Он изучает историю Англии. 33. На расстоянии 20-30 шагов мы увидели странную фигуру. 34. Если вы себя плохо чувствуете, не выходите в такую погоду. 35. Мой брат очень любит архитектуру и мечтает стать архитектором. 36. Меня интересует история английского романа.

Exercise 88. Translate into English paying special attention to the use of articles with abstract nouns.

1. Молчание нервировало его. 2. Это была его мать. Она не могла скрыть тревоги в голосе. 3. Ему не нравилась вежливость, с которой она обращалась с вами. 4. Необходимость вынуждала его усваивать язык быстрее, чем это казалось возможным. 5. Странно, что вы ожидаете найти здесь поддержку. 6. У Китти создалось впечатление, что он говорит откуда-то издалека. 7. К тому времени, когда он дошел до дома, гнев прошел, но страх еще остался. 8. Он вынужден был уехать из Бостона. Уныние охватило его. 9. Отчаяние придало ей храбрости, и она произнесла речь, которую, видимо, подготовила. 10. Меня поразило спокойствие этой женщины. 11. У него было терпение, которое изумляло всех. 12. Это горькая правда, с которой большинство из нас должны смириться. 13. Он чувствовал себя неловко в присутствии этого человека. 14. В его голосе была нежность, которая тронула ее. 15. Будьте счастливы в жизни, которую вы выбрали! 16. Ее лицо выражало спокойствие, новое для нее. 17. Ее неприязнь проявлялась в холодности, с которой она говорила, но Чарли только улыбался. 18. Его охватил страх. 19. Она обернулась и посмотрела на него. Ее



взгляд был теперь спокойнее. Он выражал лишь презрение. 20. Как быстро невообразимое стало реальной действительностью! 21. Казалось, ничто не удивляло его. Возможно, он слишком часто сталкивался с неожиданным, чтобы теперь чему-либо поражаться снова. 22. Он пригнулся к земле и был начеку, стараясь уловить это необычное. 23. Эшли не может больше смотреть вперед. Он не может видеть настоящего, боится будущего и поэтому он оглядывается назад. 24. Она была весела и разговорчива, как в прошлом. 25. Я знал, что в будущем меня ожидает много страданий. 26. Впредь мне надо быть осторожнее.

Exercise 89. Revision: fill in the blanks with articles if necessary and comment on the use (or absence) of articles with names of substances and abstract nouns in the following extract.

‘Know this place? Let’s go in here, Phyllis. ... cocktails for my friend Mr. Caister and myself, and ... caviare on ... biscuits. Mr. Caister is playing here! You must go and see him!’

... girl who served ... cocktails and ... caviare looked up at Caister with ... interested blue eyes.

‘What shall we have now – ... lobster?’ and Caister murmured: ‘I love ... lobsters.’ ‘Very fine and large here. ... waiter, bring us ... big lobster and ... salad; and then ... small fillet of ... beef with ... potatoes fried crisp, and ... bottle of my special hock. Ah! and ... rum omelette – plenty of ... rum and ... sugar.’

They had sat down opposite each other at one of two small tables in the little recessed room.

‘Luck!’ said Bryce-Green.

‘Luck!’ replied Caister.

‘And what do you think of ... state of ... drama?’

Oh, ... question after his own heart! What ... feast! And what ... flow of his own tongue suddenly released on ... drama, music, art, mellow and critical, stimulated by ... round eyes and interjections of his little provincial host.

‘I often wish,’ sighed Bryce-Green, ‘I had gone on ... stage myself. Must be ... topping life, if one has ... talent, like you.’

Topping? Caister thought. ... topping life? – ... dog’s life’ Cadging – cadging – cadging for ... work. ... life of draughty waiting, of ... concealed beggary, of ... terrible depressions, of ... want of ... food.

Exercise 90. Revision: supply the required articles.

1. It would have been as difficult to think of him being ... master of ... house as it would have been to think of his wife not being ... mistress of it. 2. ... landscape was flat and covered with ... snow frozen hard. 3. He munched ... sandwich with ... neurotic violence. 4. This is ... story and not ... piece of ... history. 5. But I won’t have ... cup of ... tea. I’ll have ... coffee. 6. He told himself it was ... stupid case of ... injured pride. 7. Mrs. Peck was ... very young woman who wore ... dirty yellow sweater and ... thick tweed skirt. 8. Only ... champagne was served at ... ball. 9. ...

huge Saturday night sadness descended upon Laura. 10. He might at least have ... decency not to read ... letter now. 11. Dancing, ... girls banged into each other and stamped on each other's feet. ... girl who was ... gentleman always clutched you so. 12. 'It is ... funny thing, but every time I dance with you ... dances seem very short.' 'They are. My fiancée is ... leader of ... orchestra.' 13. He was ... only living relative I had, and when I was ... kid I'd lived with him. He'd worked as ... fireman on ... railroad. 14. It was ... simple statement of ... fact, but there was ... certain wistfulness behind it. My wife did not hear ... wistfulness. 15. He came in with ... three cups of ... black coffee. 16. Schumann was ... composer he liked best. 17. He had ... series of ... landscapes of Tibet by ... painter Nicholas Roderich. 18. She had ... mature distrust of ... trivial. 19. I felt ... elation I used to feel when I heard front door open. 20. ... things aren't going too smoothly. 21. I noticed ... Baron take ... three lumps of sugar, putting two in his cup and wrapping ... third in ... corner of his handkerchief. 22. I know practically nothing about ... criminal law. 23. She'd been to Oxford and she'd taken her degree in ... economics. 24. Margaret was standing against ... wall with ... unlighted cigarette between her lips. 25. Everything in ... room was covered in ... drifts of white. It was ... torn paper. 26. ... correctness was ... quality he most valued: ... correctness of ... machine, ... correctness of ... report. 27. London is full of ... people from all ... parts of the world during the summer. 28. I've no doubt it will give ... immense satisfaction. 29. He knows a great deal about ... ancient Greek sculpture. 30. He turned ... pages over, observing how consistently each story was used to appeal to ... regrettable in ... reader. 31. He had ... charm that was irresistible. ... children doted on him, and he would play with them and tell them ... stories. 32. He had not very much pity for ... weakness, but he had for ... suffering, for it was, he knew, ... strong who suffered. 33. 'Your father used to make ... planes for ... Nazis, I'm told,' ... chief remarked with ... studied casualness. 34. He entertained with ... magnificence that never overstepped ... bounds of ... good taste.

Exercise 91. Revision: fill in the blanks with articles wherever necessary. Define the meaning of the articles you have used.

1. Now in ... shade of this cool green bush he looked about him with ... fancy of ... lover. 2. ... police are still on it, and they won't let up, you know. 3. Beyond ... lighted decks the harbour was ... sheet of ... sparkling silver under ... full moon. 4. She was never at a loss with a new topic and could be trusted immediately to break ... awkward silence with ... suitable observation. 5. She taught her to wear ... flannel all ... year round. 6. I'm sorry for you because you're such ... child, Scarlett, ... child crying for ... moon. 7. 'Buryats are ... expert riders and remarkably accurate archers,' wrote Rainier of Switzerland who worked as ... teacher in Siberia in ... last century. 8. Probably nine tenth of all ... people of the United States are disposed to doubt when they hear it asserted that ... future can be predicted. 9. James and Andrew listened to his story patiently but they gave him ... little encouragement. 10. With ... deep hunger of ... Irishman who has been a tenant on ... lands his people once had owned and hunted, he wanted to see his own acres stretching green before

his eyes. 11. That such ... scene might stir ... less expensively dressed to emulate ... more expensively dressed could scarcely be laid at ... door of anything save ... false ambition of ... minds of those so affected. 12. ... world of which he was a part had passed away and ... future belonged to a meaner generation. 13. What ... nonsense! 14. There was ... cool recklessness in his face and ... cynical humour in his mouth as he smiled at her and Scarlett caught her breath. 15. The studio was filled with ... rich odour of roses and when ... light summer wind stirred amidst ... trees of ... garden there came through ... open door ... heavy scent of ... lilac or ... more delicate perfume of ... pink-flowering thorn. 16. ... French were really extraordinary creatures of ... habit. 17. Julia took her scene away from her and played it with ... miraculous virtuosity. 18. Something was wrong with ... world, ... sombre frightening wrongness that pervaded everything like ... dark impenetrable mist, stealthily closing around Scarlett. 19. On ... eastern horizon ... sun was brightening a tumbled bank of cloud, its rays tipping ... petalled edges with ... gold. 20. When ... coffee and cigarettes had been brought and ... man turned to go, he felt ... wild desire to tell him to remain. 21. An expression of ... pain and inward concentration altered ... pale contours of his face. 22. Soon the flat countryside, parched under ... midsummer sun, stretched out before her. ... pale summer sky rested on the rim of the valley. 23. Her sufferings were physical as well as mental, for over one eye rose a hideous plum-coloured swelling which her maid, a tall austere woman was bathing with ... vinegar and ... water. 24. In Hackney where the council faces possible bankruptcy from April 1 the situation has been created largely through ... mischief-making of ... Social Democrats. 25. It is rather fashionable to marry ... Americans just now, Uncle George. 26. He rode out of ... forest onto the yellow road that led into La Granja and ... horses' hooves raised ... dust that hung over them as they rode. 27. I shall have my books and Eva, children, I hope, and above all, ... infinite variety of ... sea and ... sky, ... freshness of ... dawn and ... beauty of ... sunset, and ... rich magnificence of ... night. 28. 'I didn't expect to find you selling three and a half yards of ... rotten cotton to ... greasy nigger,' he laughed. 29. The shops kept by ... Chinese are there to satisfy ... wants of the warders, the doctors and the numerous officials. 30. The day would lie before us both, long no doubt, and uneventful, but fraught with ... certain stillness, ... dear tranquility we had not known before. 31. Under ... Tories the number of inspectors has been out by at least 20 per cent. 32. With ... sensitivity of a surgeon he pressed his fingers around the area of ... chiselled numbers. 33. ... West Germans are said to have developed after the war an effect of 'negation' of ... past. 34. ... women represent ... triumph of ... matter over ... mind, just as ... men represent ... triumph of ... mind over ... morals.

## CHAPTER 5 ARTICLES WITH NOUNS IN SOME SYNTACTIC POSITIONS

### 5.1 ARTICLES WITH PREDICATIVE NOUNS

§ 31 Singular nouns in the function of a predicative are mostly used with the indefinite article and plural noun without an article. The indefinite and the absence of the article have **the classifying meaning**.

- e.g. It was *a cold frosty morning*.  
They are *nice people*.

If a predicative noun is modified by a limiting attribute the definite article is used.

- e.g. This is *the only letter my father ever wrote to me*.

When a predicative noun denotes a unique post (rank, occupation, state) it is used either with the definite article or without any article:

- e.g. He was (*the*) *head of a great publishing firm*.

**Note 1** No article is used in verbal word-combinations of the following type: *be son (daughter, nurse, heir, etc.) to smb*.

- e.g. Cynthia McCool is as *Secretary to the director* at the OC

**Note 2** With the nouns ‘**son**’ and ‘**daughter**’ the definite article is typical.

- e.g. He was *the son* of an eminent scientist.

However, the indefinite and the omission of the article are also possible, the former stressing that there are more than one son or daughter in the family and the latter – the social position of the person denoted by the predicative noun:

- e.g. He is a *son of a University professor*.  
He is *son of a University professor*.

Predicative nouns after the link-verbs ‘**turn**’ and ‘**go**’ take no article. The verb ‘**turn**’ indicates a change of occupation or allegiance. The verb ‘**go**’ denotes change of political allegiance.

- e.g. Duval turned *professional* in 1993.  
He went *Democrat*, though his brother remained a Republican.

When predicative nouns are followed by the adverb ‘**enough**’ they acquire an adjectival character and are used without any article.

- e.g. I was *fool* enough to trust her.

In adverbial clauses of concession with inverted word order predicative nouns are used without any article. It should be remembered, however, that the use of the construction with inverted word order is restricted to literary style.

- e.g. *Child* as he was, he was desperate with hunger and reckless with misery.

Exercise 92. Supply the required articles, paying special attention to the nouns used predicatively:

1. He was at that time ... lieutenant in ... British Army. 2. Mr. Richardson was ... owner and editor-in-chief of the publishing house. 3. Rudy had ... gift of being liked. That was why he had been elected ... president of his class three times in a

row. 4. She was ... wife of ... doctor. 5. Philip was not ... humbug but ... hard and realistic man. 6. At the time I was ... manager of ... Crawford Street branch of ... bank. 7. I saw ... group of ... workmen coming toward us. One of them was ... fat, red-faced man, and I presume he was ... foreman. 8. Mr. Knight was ... excessively lazy man, who preferred to sit down. 9. It's ... girl called Betsy. She's ... boss's secretary. 10. Henry Greene was ... son of ... general. 11. It seemed that Aunt Milly had been ... only relative to offer practical help. 12. His study was ... darkest room in ... house. 13. His father was ... good soldier. 14. I might be ... leader of ... party instead of you. 15. His wife and Sheila were ... active, strong women, who loved using their muscles. 16. I'm going to be ... president of this company. 17. This fellow is ... man I want for the job. 18. He was ... manager of ... largest estate in ... district. 19. ... man who wore ... glasses was ... husband of Mrs. Holt. 20. 'We are merely ... tourists,' Tom said. 21. 'She is ... very silly creature,' he said. 22. There seemed no reason why he should not eventually be made ... Governor. 23. 'I call it ... mediocre play,' he said. 24. On ... way back to our compartment we passed Natalie Winter. She was ... very shy woman. She was also ... star of the season. 25. She is proud of being ... daughter of ... poet. 26. If anyone could tell her what Mr. Potter wanted to know, Mrs. Ferguson was ... woman. 27. Even before George introduced me I knew that ... man was ... senior partner. 28. 'They've made me ... head of the department,' he whispered. 29. I know he is ... sculptor. 30. Katherine was ... wife of ... poor clerk in ... Ministry of Education.

Exercise 93. Explain the use of articles with nouns used predicatively in the following sentences:

1. He was ... lawyer by profession. 2. Aunt Laura was ... widow of an auctioneer. 3. When Murry was appointed ... editor of 'The Literary Gazette' his salary became eight hundred a year. 4. As it was, she was ... best-looking woman there. 5. Jasper was ... son of my father's elder brother. 6. My father had been ... Chairman of an organization of doctors in New York. 7. He was ... talkative fellow. 8. They made him ... major-general after he left the headquarters. 9. We were ... children of our class and time. 10. 'Heavens! Look at the dog. Or is he ... lion?' 11. Hart was ... uneasy nervous man who broke into flashes of speech. 12. I wouldn't be ... Prime Minister if they asked me on their knees. 13. Johnson is made ... secretary of the club. 14. John could not make up his mind about the blackmail. He had been led to think that McGrath himself was ... blackmailer, or at least ... blackmailer because he had the personality to be ... blackmailer. 15. She was ... only Liberal in their family. 16. After some most astonishing adventures in New Guinea he made himself ... king of some wild tribe. 17. No, you are getting this quite wrong. She's ... wife of a friend of mine. 18. Prynne was ... manager of the estate up the river. 19. With a face like yours I'd be at least ... president of a steel company. 20. The waiter was ... old friend of mine, and at that season he was ... boots, ... porter, ... chambermaid and ... cook as well.

Exercise 94. Fill in the blanks with articles wherever necessary.

### **Unknown Raphael Found**

... previously unknown painting by Raphael, ... Renaissance master, has been purchased 'for ... sum in six figures' by ... Boston Museum of Fine Arts, Mr. Perry Rathbone, ... museum's director announced.

... painting, ... formal portrait of ... dark-eyed girl of twelve dressed in ... lace and ... velvet and wearing ... gold and pearl jewelry, was discovered in ... private collection of ... old European family. Mr. Rathbone refused to identify ... family or to disclose ... price ... museum paid.

Dr. John Shearman, ... British art historian and authority on Raphael, has said ... painting is 'unquestionably authentic', and he succeeded in identifying ... girl in it.

Undiscovered Raphaels are extraordinarily rare. Raphael has been in vogue for ... centuries and his art was already expensive while he was alive. His paintings were commissioned not by ... common men, but by ... popes and ... dukes and ... families of ... great wealth and ... sophisticated taste.

Dr. Shearman believes that it was one such family – ... della Roveres, ... rulers of Urbino, where Raphael was born – who commissioned ... girl's portrait in 1505.

Eventually, through marriage, it became ... property of ... Fieschis, ... family of Rome and Genoa. Members of that family always assumed that ... portrait was by Raphael, but nothing was known about ... girl.

It was Dr. Shearman who concluded that she was Eleonora della Rovere, later Duchess of Urbino. She is so identified at ... Museum of Fine Arts.

Exercise 95. Fill in the blanks with articles wherever necessary. Explain the use of articles with predicative nouns.

### **The Education of Benjamin Franklin**

History has given Benjamin Franklin ... place of ... enduring fame. He was ... writer, ... inventor, and ... statesman, whose life story has enjoyed ... popular success for 200 years.

Franklin's education at ... school stopped when he was ten years old. But he never stopped learning. For him, ... books held ... key to living happily and successfully. They were ... precious gifts.

In his early youth, he had ... friend who worked for ... bookseller. Sometimes his friend would lend him ... book, which he was careful to return quickly. Often he sat up in his room reading most of ... night in order to return ... book before his friend's employer noticed its absence.

But Franklin was not ... lonely scholar. For him, learning was ... social experience. In his "Autobiography" he tells about organizing ... club called the 'Junto' which met every Friday night to improve its members' minds:

'... rules I made required every member, in ... turn, to produce one or more questions on any point of ... Morals, ... Politics, or ... Natural Philosophy. ... questions would then be discussed by ... whole group. Also, once in three months,

each member was required to read ... article he had written on any subject he pleased.'

'Our discussions were directed by ... president and conducted as ... honest search for (30) ... truth. We were to avoid ... unpleasant arguments or ... desire for ... victory. Any member who did not obey these rules had to pay ... fine.'

... Junto which Franklin organized continued for many years. It was ... best group for ... discussion of ... philosophy, ... morality, and ... politics that existed in that part of ... country. ... questions were given to ... members during ... week before they were to be discussed. This encouraged ... members to read carefully about each subject so that they might speak with more understanding. They learned to become ... better conversationalists, too, since ... rules prevented ... disagreeable arguments.

When the Junto was organized, before ... middle of ... eighteenth century, there were no public libraries. There was even not ... good bookstore ... south of Boston. In New York and Philadelphia, ... printers sold only a few ordinary schoolbooks. ... people who loved to read were obliged to send to England for their books. Franklin decided to improve this situation.

Each member of the Junto owned a few books. ... room had been rented in which ... members held their meetings. Franklin suggested that all ... members should bring their books to that room. In this way ... books would be ... help to all during ... weekly discussions. Also, each member would be allowed to take and read at ... home any book he chose. ... arrangement was so satisfactory that Franklin soon decided that something similar should be done for ... other people in his city. His autobiography tells how he put ... idea into ... action.

'Realizing ... benefits of ... Junto's little collection, I suggested starting ... public library. I made ... necessary plan and rules and had ... lawyer put them in ... proper written form. Each man who signed ... agreement promised to pay forty shillings immediately to purchase ... first books and ten shillings each year to buy more books.

We began with ... small amount of ... money, and ... books were ordered from England. ... library was open one day ... week for lending. Any one who took ... book signed ... promise to pay double ... value if he didn't return it to ... library. ... library soon showed its usefulness and was copied by ... other towns. Reading became fashionable.'

Franklin's experiences in trying to get people to join ... library taught him ... valuable lesson: 'I soon learned that it is not wise to present one's self as ... proposer of any useful plan. When one needs ... help of one's neighbors for such ... purpose, one must remember this: Do not let them think you are trying to increase your own fame in ... community.'

'Therefore, I kept myself out of it as much as I could. I presented ... library as ... plan of several friends. I said they had asked me to propose it to those whom they considered to be ... lovers of reading. In this way, ... organization progressed more smoothly.'

'I used this method on many later occasions. From my frequent successes, I can strongly recommend it.'

Franklin's ability to learn from ... observation and ... experience contributed greatly to his success in ... public life. He once explained how his observations concerning ... human nature helped him win ... friendship of ... man who could have been ... powerful enemy.

'In 1736, I was chosen to be ... secretary of the Assembly. No one opposed ... choice that year. ... next year I was proposed again. This time ... new member made ... speech against me. However, I was chosen again.'

'I liked being ... secretary to ... Assembly. I did not like ... opposition of this new member, who was ... wealthy, educated gentleman. It was probable that, in time, he would have great influence in ... Assembly, and I wanted to gain his favour.'

'So after some time had passed, I used this method of winning his friendship. I had heard that ... gentleman had ... certain special and interesting book in his library. It was one of very few existing copies. I wrote him expressing my desire to read that book. I asked him to favour me by lending it to me for ... few days. He sent it immediately, and I returned it in ... week with ... note telling him how very grateful I was for ... favour.'

'... next time we met in ... Assembly, ... gentleman spoke to me with ... great kindness. (He had never done this before.) After that, he was ready to help me on all ... occasions. We became ... good friends, and our friendship continued to his death.'

'This is another instance of ... truth of ... old saying: 'He who has once done ... kindness will be more ready to do you another than he for whom you yourself have done ... favour.' And it shows how much profit there is in removing ... causes for ... hate.'

Throughout his life, Benjamin Franklin continued his education learning from ... human contacts as well as from ... books.

## 5.2 ARTICLES WITH NOUNS IN APPOSITION

§ 32 Singular nouns in apposition are usually used with the indefinite article and plural nouns without an article. Both the indefinite and the absence of the article have **the classifying meaning**.

e.g. I'm sure you know Alfred, *a professor at London University*.  
My friends, *all students then*, often discussed war.

If a noun in apposition has a limiting attribute or if the speaker is certain that the object (person, thing) denoted by the appositive noun is known to the hearer, the definite article is used.

e.g. Monday, *the day of our departure*, was cold and rainy.

When an appositive noun denotes a unique post (rank, occupation, state) it is used either with the definite article or without any article.

e.g. Mr. Turner, *(the) head of the firm*, spent a few days there waiting for a ship.  
Sheila, *the only child of well-to-do parents*, had money of her own.

**Note 1** The rules for the use of articles with the nouns 'son' and 'daughter' in the function of a predicative hold good for these nouns in the function of an apposition.



e.g. John, *a son of an eminent politician*, was a student at Oxford.  
Johnson was born in Aberdeen in 1942, *the only son* in a family of six children.

Appositive nouns denoting titles (ranks, posts) are used without any article when they precede personal names.

e.g. Dr. Ross, President Roosevelt, Lord Byron, Princess Margaret, Sir Charles, Prof. Drake, Queen Elizabeth, Colonel Casey

Foreign titles, however, require the definite article before personal names.

e.g. the Emperor Napoleon, the Czar Peter

**Note 2** It is important to remember that when titles are not followed by a personal name articles are used.

e.g. He is *a professor*.

Appositive nouns denoting family relations take no article before personal names.

e.g. Aunt Agatha, Cousin George, Uncle Tom

Other appositive nouns take the definite article when used before personal names.

e.g. the painter Hogarth, the critic Hudson, the girl Martha, the student Jones

**Note 3** In AmE the definite article is often omitted.

e.g. critic Hudson, Republican leader Foster

A frequent use of this kind of apposition is found with names of books, films and with scientific terms.

e.g. the novel 'War and Peace', the film 'Lady Hamilton', the verb 'to be', the term 'heavy water'

Exercise 96. Explain the use of articles with nouns used in apposition:

1. The girl he loved was Laura Merton, ... daughter of a retired colonel who had lost his temper and his digestion in India. 2. It wouldn't be hard to make up a story for ... Uncle Philip. 3. For some days Hotchkisson, ... solicitor to whom Eden had deputed the case, sent me no news. 4. He had been to the tomb of Hafiz ... poet. 5. Two men, ... two passengers, came along the gangway, and she amused herself by trying to guess whether they were single or married. 6. Charles was dancing with his cousin, ... good-looking girl. 7. Even Mr. March, ... most realistic man there, could not forgive me. 8. He now arranged with Spender, ... editor of 'The Times Literary Supplement', to write articles on current French literature. 9. They drove up to the terminal, ... brightly lighted and air-conditioned building. 10. I was chatting with the man's wife, ... lady in purple trousers, when he was called to the telephone. 11. He accepted the post of ... secretary to a diplomatic mission. 12. In the rear of the car, Margaret Howden, ... wife of the President of the firm, said to her husband: 'You look tired.' 13. He's Doctor Evans, ... nephew of your host tonight. 14. The principal of the school decided to send ... boy Chalmers back home. 15. That evening I was introduced to ... Captain Riley.

Exercise 97. Supply the required articles, paying special attention to the nouns used in apposition:

1. Then Rudy saw ... Professor Denton, ... head of ... History and Economics department. 2. The sun was hanging over the hill behind them, ... large red ball which had lost its fierceness. 3. ... Philip's wife, ... biggest snob in ... family, invited me to tea. 4. Then we were joined by ... two women, ... acquaintances of Charles and Ann. 5. Across from her sat Delaney, ... producer of the picture. 6. I said: 'This is Mary Summers, ... old school friend of mine.' 7. I have got ... job of ... secretary to our new MP. 8. ... figure 5 is ... same for ... Russian or ... American while ... word 'five' is not. 9. ... Admiral Lacey was ... red-faced man. 10. They sat in ... drawing-room round the portable wireless, ... present from Fleur. 11. Then he walked down Broadway, ... main street of ... town. 12. She was ... daughter of ... well-known theatrical manager, ... willowy, wispy, fair-haired girl with ... colourless eyes. 13. He assumed ... role of ... breadwinner for ... family. 14. ... General Holt withdrew his plan. 15. They had lunch at Hexley, ... small village on ... coast. 16. He was their favourite nephew, ... son of their dead elder sister. 17. Grant got little information from Andy, ... mail-car driver. 18. He introduced me to ... girl Patricia, and I was glad of an opportunity to look at her face. 19. Peter hit so hard that he broke my arm. I fell to ... ground yelling. Waters, ... gym teacher, carried me off ... field. 20. We spoke to ... Philip's secretary, ... youngish man called Williams. 21. Within a short time, Gregory married Zalia Phelps, ... daughter of Angus Phelps, ... planter in Georgia. 22. Sam, ... man who ran ... elevator, didn't like Peter. 23. Smiley, ... captain of ... team, got up on ... bench and told them of his plan. 24. ... nurse Everett, ... bony woman of fifty, herself opened ... door. 25. He would be given ... post of ... Minister of Justice.

Exercise 98. Insert articles where necessary.

A) 1. ... academician Zhukovsky is called the father of aviation. 2. The description of how ... Uncle Podger tried to hang a picture is one of the funniest episodes in the book. 3. Many famous people were frequent visitors at Abramtsevo, among them ... writer Gogol, ... poet Shevchenko and ... actor Shchepkin. 4. ... husband and ... wife Curie were jointly awarded the Nobel Prize for physics in 1903. 5. Once upon a time there lived ... doctor Aibolit who was a great friend of all animals. 6. ... captain Barlow was what was called an 'old sea dog.' 7. 'Who operated on your son?' '... certain surgeon Kryukov.' 8. ... peasant Ivan Bolotnikov was the leader of one of the first antifeudal revolts. 9. ... brother Peter was the preacher of the community of Stilleveld.

B) 1. Clyde thought that he, ... nephew of the wealthy Griffiths, should be admitted into high society. 2. Quincey Taylor was ... New Englander, ... professor of English and ... Chairman of the English Department at a small California college. 3. Sir Christopher Wren, ... great British architect, is ... creator of St. Paul's Cathedral and many other wonderful buildings in London. 4. George Washington, ... first president of the United States, was strong opponent of the British Government's policy, and at the outbreak of war was chosen ... commander-in-chief of the

revolutionary army. After the war, from 1789 to 1797, he was ... president for two terms. 5. Democritus, ... Greek philosopher, was known to his contemporaries as ... laughing philosopher. G. The old cemetery of the Novodevichy Convent contains the graves of Anton Chekhov, ... famous writer, of Sergei Solovyov, ... distinguished historian, and his son Vladimir, ... philosopher.

Exercise 99. Use the proper article. Pay attention to the use of the article with the noun in apposition.

1. After my mother died, my father, ... travelling man, sent me to live with his cousins. 2. Sometimes Herbert, ... big boy of sixteen now, would challenge another kite-flyer. 3. Hautin, ... lawyer by profession, had business dealings in the town. 4. Maidenhead, ... river resort, is one of ... loveliest reaches of ... River Thames. 5. His father, ... missionary, was killed in ... uprising. 6. Here is Doctor Sheppard, ... close friend of poor Roger's. 7. Hopkin's car, ... black Cadillac five years old, was driven by ... ageing Negro chauffeur. 8. I've arranged for you to call tomorrow on a friend of his, ... editor. 9. They live in Lynton, ... small village in Devonshire. 10. On ... way across ... river he chatted to ... boatman, ... local man. 11. After ... weeks of ... worry with ... servants Christine chanced on Mrs. Bennett, widow of forty, clean and hard-working, who because of her daughter, ... child of seven, had found it almost impossible to find ... job. 12. On his first day he went round with Doctor Eustace Thoroughgood, ... elderly man of fifty, well under ... middle height ... Under ... existing system, ... survival of ... old traditions, he was 'responsible' for Andrew and for Doctor Milligan. 13. Sunday came fine, as she had hoped, ... soft spring day. 14. He rushed into ... little back yard of ... house, ... small well of ... darkness beneath ... stars. 15. Then ... second case came in, ... woman of forty-five, Miss Basden, one of ... most faithful of his followers.

Exercise 100. Translate into English paying attention to the use of articles with appositive and predicative nouns.

A) 1. Циолковского по праву считают основателем теории ракетных двигателей. 2. Все знают Бородина-композитора, но мало кто знает Бородина-химика. 3. Художник Серов, сын композитора Серова, был мастером психологического портрета. 4. Профессор Стефан Ликок, известный канадский писатель-юморист, является также автором ряда книг по вопросам политики и экономики и в течение двадцати восьми лет был руководителем кафедры экономики в одном из университетов Канады. 5. Немногие знают, что Вольтер – это только псевдоним французского писателя-философа, который был сыном Франсуа Аруэ – нотариуса.

B) 1. В 1937 году археологическая экспедиция отправилась в Хорезм. Экспедицию возглавлял профессор Толстов, известный специалист по истории народов Средней Азии. 2. Качалов, изумительный актер, которого оплакивали миллионы любителей театра, умер за месяц до 50-летнего юбилея Художественного театра. 3. Озеро Байкал, сердце Сибири, как его называют, замечательно редкой красотой берегов и удивительным цветом воды. Академик

Берг, выдающийся географ, называет Байкал чудом природы. 4. Беранже, знаменитый французский поэт, родился в 1870 году. В детстве он жил с дедом, бедным парижским портным. Когда началась революция, его отправили в провинцию к тетке, содержательнице гостиницы.

Exercise 101. Translate into English paying attention to the use of articles with appositive and predicative nouns.

1. Поль Дрейк, глава сыскного агентства Дрейка, сидел в кресле, ожидая Мейсона. 2. Это несчастный случай, который мог бы случиться с любым. 3. «Тони, – сказал Оливер, – пусть доктор Патерсон выскажет то, что хочет сказать». 4. Роберт Шеннон, маленький сирота-ирландец, жил в семье своего дяди. 5. Элли была дочерью преуспевающего фермера и принесла с собой хорошее приданое. 6. Она приятно улыбнулась. «Вы всегда были джентльменом, Майкл». 7. Ньютон стал членом Королевского общества, ведущего научного общества в Великобритании. 8. Бальзак, знаменитый французский романист, часто говорил своим друзьям, что может определить характер любого по его (или ее) почерку. 9. Я Энтони Андерсон, человек, который вам нужен. 10. Я думаю, что он получит свою педагогическую должность обратно, если он настоящий мужчина. 11. Одна из моих читательниц прочитала одну из моих книг и написала мне об этом. 12. Девушка, которую он любил, была Лаура Мертон, дочь полковника в отставке. 13. Я был достаточно глуп, чтобы пригласить ее жить здесь. 14. Ее отец, профессор Шрон, умер в этом году. 15. Леди Ривет была стройна и очень хорошо одета. 16. Она жена управляющего отеля. 17. «Что бы сказал вам дядя Рид, если бы был жив?» – спросила она. 18. Скульптор Андерсен зажигал трубку, и в тот момент это казалось ему самым важным делом во всем мире. 19. Мой отец был священником маленького церковного прихода в Кавингорусе, небольшой деревушке. 20. Считают, что он биржевой маклер. 21. Мою дочь считают большим ученым. 22. «Доктор, – сказал майор Синклер, – вы обязательно должны приехать к нам на рождество».

Exercise 102. Revision: fill in the blanks with articles before appositive and predicative nouns wherever necessary.

1. Melanie was ... fool, but there was nothing anybody could do about it. 2. She was ... only woman I had ever met who could behave so gracefully. 3. Charlie wasn't ... fool enough as to put up the back of the Assistant Colonial secretary. 4. Hemingway, ... son of a small town doctor, was born in Illinois in 1898. 5. Kust, ... bartender, gave Bill and Janice a smile of recognition. 6. Tara had risen to riches on cotton, even as the whole South had risen, and Scarlett was ... Southerner enough to believe that both Tara and the South would rise again out of the red fields. 7. Behind him his cousin, the tall George, ... son of the fifth Forsyte, had a strange look on his fleshy face. 8. 'You staying here?' – 'New boy in town. I am ... instructor in the ski school.' 9. My first thought that this should be ... son of Jane Fowler's fiancé proved to be correct. 10. My father was ... mayor of the village and ... honorable man. 11.

His laboratory, ... best institution of this kind, made Cambridge world known in the field of experimental physics. 12. Raiford Calvert was made ... first lieutenant because everybody liked Raif, and Able Wynder, ... son of a small trapper, himself ... small farmer, was elected ... second lieutenant. 13. The door to his office opened and ... Professor Fox saw a young man, about 21, enter behind the secretary. 14. Every Thursday morning ... Aunt Carrie took the cellar key from the place where she'd hidden it and herself fetched a bottle of claret from the cellar. 15. If he had had more conferences with ... scientist Krall they would have contributed a great deal towards his understanding of the vocational high school. 16. The black-clad servant of ... Baron de Belleme prepared to shoot at the impossible target. 17. James Clerk Maxwell, ... great physicist and mathematician, was born in Edinburgh, Scotland, on November 13, 1831. 18. When Mike had seen her, she was ... girl of eighteen. 19. I was ... young kid who didn't know which end was up. 20. Madame Surrane Bauvier, ... widow of an officer, has supported herself and her daughter by means of her talent. 21. And she dressed like – well, like what she was, ... wife of the assistant Colonial Secretary at Hong Kong. 22. ... prisoner as he was, Rhett Butler was ... dangerous man. 23. I'm ... Assistant General Manager. That's why I came personally. 24. Any man who was ... fool enough to fall for a simper, a faint or 'Oh, how wonderful you are!' wasn't worth having. 25. They think it ... lie to keep the patient from worrying. 26. She didn't know whether he had gone ... Republican, or ... Democrat, or ... Maoist. 27. He was made ... executive in his father-in-law's bank in Syracuse. 28. Edmund Halley, ... head of Greenwich Observatory, was among them too. 29. ... surgeon Laide explained the operation to her carefully. 30. ... Aunt Pitty completely forgot that the sight of blood always made her faint.

Exercise 103. Revision: insert articles where necessary (rticles with predicative nouns and nouns in apposition).

1. Ostrovsky commenced ... clerk in ... Moscow Commercial Court. 2. Selina, ... daughter of ... Paddocks, had been surprised that afternoon by receiving ... letter from her once intended husband. 3. My father became ... rector of Burnmore when I was nine. 4. Cashel was to go to sea, so that if his affairs became desperate, he could at least turn ... pirate. 5. He was ... particular friend of Sir John's. 6. You are not ... person you claim to be. 7. His money was ... money I brought him as my marriage portion. 8. That meeting had occurred at ... house of ... high official of ... British Museum, ... scholar with whom Artur was on friendly terms. 9. Mrs. Patterson, ... lymphatic woman, was holding her son Jim by ... hand. 10. ... trained diplomat and statesman as he was, his stern aristocratic face was upside down with ... fury. 11. I am not ... good fisherman myself. 12. Ever since then I haven't been able to suppress ... gnawing thoughts in my mind. I'm not strong enough to suppress them. I'm too weak. I'm not ... man enough. 13. You were ... dear little girl; I see it now, looking back. But not ... little girl I had in my mind. 14. He looked thin, and yellow as ... guinea, and he had turned ... miser. 15. You should have been ... woman enough to control yourself. 16. Martha, who was ... poor apprentice at ... milliner's then told them what kind of ... work she had to do. 17. What ... charming house you have,

Lady Chiltern! 18. I am Anthony Anderson, ... man you want. 19. Only, his forehead and mouth betray an extraordinary steadfastness; and his eyes are ... eyes of ... fanatic. 20. He had just been appointed ... Lord Justice of appeal. 21. His clothes are not ... clothes, nor his anxious wife ... wife of ... prosperous man. 22. I was ... fool enough to ask her to live here still, and direct ... affairs of ... house for me.

### 5.3 ABSENCE OF ARTICLES IN PARALLEL STRUCTURES

§ 33 There is no article in so-called parallel structures such as *from tree to tree*, *from street to street*, *from house to house*, etc. These are free combinations as they are freely built up by the speaker with the help of the pattern 'from + N + to + N', in which the same noun is repeated.

e.g. The trees swayed from side to side.

There are also set expressions among parallel structures, the most common of which are: *arm in arm*, *hand in hand*, *man to man*, *face to face*, *shoulder to shoulder*, *from beginning to end*, *from north to south*, *from floor to ceiling*, *from right to left*, *from head to foot*, *from top to toe*, *from top to bottom*, *day by day*, *man to man*.

e.g. We cleaned the house from top to bottom.

Exercise 104. Supply the required articles for nouns in parallel structures.

1. Listening to the minutes and other routine business he let his eyes move from ... face to ... face. 2. They went on from ... tune to ... tune till Fleur said: 'My God! I am hungry now!' 3. They walked on again, but only ... hand in ... hand. 4. Nevill beat his hands on his sides and moved from ... foot to ... foot. 5. They went ... side by ... side, ... hand in ... hand silently towards the hedge. 6. The young man who had been turning his head from ... side to ... side became transfixed. 7. Now he seemed to be chatty and talked to ... jury as ... man to ... man. 8. ... floor was carpeted from ... wall to ... wall. 9. The whole house needs cleaning from ... top to ... bottom. 10. They were covered in mud from ... top to ... toe. 11. They walked along the beach ... arm in ... arm. 12. These are the gentle giants that I've had the pleasure of meeting ... face to ... face many times underwater. 13. 'You've had your back ... shoulder to ... shoulder with these guys that our politicians are desperate to relate to every four years, right?' 13. Only by laying ... stone on ... stone with ... cooperation of all, by ... millions of ... generations from our forefather Adam to our own times, is that temple reared which is to be ... worthy dwelling place of ... Great God, he added, and closed his eyes.

## 5.4 ARTICLES WITH NOUNS INTRODUCED BY ‘AS’

§ 34 Nouns introduced by ‘as’ are mostly used with the definite or the indefinite article

e.g. I agreed to say something as *a favour* to Neil.

However, sometimes we come across the omission of article in this position.

e.g. We must teach English as *spoken language*.

It should be stressed that the use of articles (as well as their absence) after ‘as’ is always correct. Therefore, in the above example we can also say *as a spoken language*.

Exercise 105. Supply the required articles for nouns introduced by ‘as’.

1. I then stayed on with the company as ... manager. 2. The education office in the town hall had asked the school to recommend someone as ... junior clerk. 3. He was universally known as ... author of the book. 4. Margaret, who had not long graduated at Oxford, was working as ... secretary to a Labour member. 5. His father once occupied this room as ... president of the Town Council. 6. In 1949 I found myself working as ... clerk in the offices of the local electricity board. 7. She had given the watch to Julia as ... birthday present. 8. Ronald had been invited to the party as ... appropriate partner for Ann. 9. Maybe he’ll take you as ... assistant. 10. After a time Mr. Jones engaged the young poet as ... tutor to his three sons. 11. He describes himself as ... independent radical. 12. He took for granted his position as ... head of the family. 13. His reputation as ... painter is well established now. 14. In 1939 I began to write a story with a senior civil servant as ... main character. 15. At the party, Katherine was acting as ... hostess. 16. I thought I would get a post as ... surgeon on a ship. 17. If he hadn’t been so sophisticated, it might have been a thought to ponder – but at that point any idea of him quitting his job as ... top salesman and moving to Arkansas to become a veterinarian would have been ludicrous. 18. But it can also have this other function, as ... platform for the candle. 19. Because I always view music as ... pinnacle of hearing. 20. So for example, I’m making images of you, but there’s no physiological bond between the images I have of you as ... audience and my brain. 21. She passes that virus on to baby, and it takes a really, really, really long time – as ... redwood trees – for that serious meme to get out of our operating system.

## 5.5 ABSENCE OF ARTICLES WITH VOCATIVES

§ 35 There is no article with vocatives, i.e. nouns used in addressing a person.

e.g. Conan smiled. ‘Thanks, *Sergeant*. I’ll do that.’

## 5.6 ARTICLES AFTER THE EXCLAMATORY ‘WHAT’

§ 36 After the exclamatory ‘what’ the indefinite article is used with singular countable nouns

e.g. *What a horrible day!*

Care should be taken not to use the indefinite article before abstract uncountable nouns.

e.g. *What extraordinary news!*

**Note 1** In questions (direct or indirect) singular countable nouns do not take the indefinite article.

e.g. *What hotel* are you going to stay in?

## 5.7 ABSENCE OF ARTICLES IN ABSOLUTE CONSTRUCTIONS

§ 37 Articles may be omitted in non-prepositional absolute constructions.

e.g. She had her plump elbows on the table, *coffee cup* encircled in both hands.

Such constructions are characteristic of narration in novels and stories and are not used in spoken English.

## 5.8 ABSENCE OF ARTICLES IN THE CASE OF 'INTEGRATION'

§ 38 Sometimes we have to deal with situations the use of articles in which presents the case of '**integration**'. Such cases occur when two or more objects are thought of as integrated into one. In such cases we do not use any article before two or more nouns referring to a human couple, or to a pair of inanimate objects, or to a larger group

e.g. Wind-driven rain hammered *tree, bush, ground, man* with wet blows.  
Both *mother* and *son* looked surprised.

Exercise 106. Supply the required articles for nouns in the case of '**integration**'.

1. Less than ... year ago, the two of them seemed as close as ... mother and ... daughter could be. 2. We were more like brothers than ... father and ... son. 3. He was kept busy ... day and ... night with plans for his retirement. 4. He got up and began to pace ... Turkey carpet, between ... window and ... wall. 5. All she knew was that he had been in ... army and had lost both ... leg and ... eye shortly before the surrender. 6. Warren Trent's face reddened with anger, 'Don't play ... cat and ... mouse with me!' 7. She rubbed her head and glared at him, watching as he followed his father in ... direction where both ... sky and ... sea darkened into ... blackness. 8. 'The gallows, ye mean. – I am immortal then, on ... land and on ... sea,' cried Ahab, with ... laugh of ... derision; – 'Immortal on ... land and on ... sea!'

Exercise 107. Revision: fill in the blanks with articles before nouns in some syntactic position if necessary.

1. The elder Royce, who served Warren Trent as ... companion and ... privileged friend, had already spoken out with a disregard of consequences. 2. Ed Everhart, ... one-armed man, worked with the writer as ... telegraph messenger. 3. What ... odd, unsatisfactory child you are! I can't make you out. 4. The sky pressed



down like a metal dome from ... horizon to ... horizon. 5. Gretchen didn't wait for the three-day-old cherry because she was due at the army hospital just outside the town where she worked as ... volunteer. 6. And you really live off the river. What ... jolly life! 7. Since her return to Hong Kong Kitty had hesitated from ... day to ... day to go to her house. 8. Look here, ... Doctor! My wife's got a crazy idea in her head. 9. Before the first year had passed I had saved a thousand dollars and we had lived in comfort. But at what ... cost! 10. 'Jeff,' Tony said finally, 'how are you as ... fisherman?' 11. From ... time to ... time this morning I tried to concentrate, just on music, then on reading. 12. When they reached Sympathy Seat Leonard offered her a cigarette and they smoked peacefully ... side by ... side. 13. 'I am convinced that with you as ... teacher, everything will be possible,' Antonie said. 14. What ... progress you have made in your language learning! 15. 'I didn't mean to hurt you, ... sweet,' she said. 'But we are ... old friends and we used to say what we meant to each other.' 16. He took a room in an inn opposite Wolfgang's so that they could consult with each other from ... window to ... window. 17. After a few moments, ... other soldier found Jok lying on his side under the truck, shaking from ... head to ... foot, his arms clasped about himself. 18. He'll write something better than ... book 'The Match Girl'. 19. It's ... same reason I warned you about. 20. Among them was ... astronomer Christopher Wren, better known as ... architect. 21. What they felt the lack of most bitterly was ... tobacco. 22. ... former president Alt Budd warned delegates that affiliation to CND would split the union from ... top to ... bottom. 23. She was ... daughter of a solicitor in Liverpool. 24. 'Good morning, miss,' Michael said to the girl, who glanced up from her typing, ... hands on the typewriter. 25. Does it occur to you how boring that sort of ... scene is? 26. Her father had started life as ... errand boy, then became ... draper's assistant and was now ... owner of ... prosperous little business. 27. 'What ... beautiful portraits,' she said, 'and what ... lucky man you must be!' 28. Opposite ... window stood ... full-length painting of Charles as ... small boy. 29. Several of ... boys at the new school came from ... same part of ... town. 30. Who is ... best man at this sort of ... thing in your office? 31. Trevor was ... painter. Indeed, ... few people escape that nowadays. But he was also ... artist, and ... artists are rather rare.

Exercise 108. Revision: supply the required articles, paying special attention to the nouns used in certain syntactic patterns:

1. My friend Herbert Holt is ... professor of English literature in one of ... smaller universities of the Middle West. 2. What sort of ... family has he? 3. I don't know any of ... people living in the house next door. 4. 'Well, ... boy, you are not going out tonight, are you?' his mother asked. 5. Grant is indifferent to that sort of ... thing. 6. I did not swear as some of ... boys in ... form habitually did. 7. 'Yeats is one of ... greatest poets of ... age,' I said. 8. We sat ... side by ... side smoking and thinking. 9. It was ... sort of ... occasion when one wants to help but doesn't know how. 10. He didn't want to walk home with any of ... other fellows. 11. Marion, like most of ... girls in ... group, came from ... lower-middle-class family. 12. They cleaned ... house from ... top to ... bottom. 13. What ... long way you have travelled

since your first book! 14. What ... kind of ... place are your friends living in? 15. I recognized some of ... facts. 16. He was ... man who wandered mysteriously from ... hotel to ... hotel. 17. What ... odd collection you've got in here! 18. Mrs. Warren bought one of ... elm-shaded villas at ... end of the High Street. 19. She would know ... names of nearly all of ... people who lived there. 20. She kept the bills on the mantelpiece, and none of ... shopkeepers was allowed to wait ... hour for his money. 21. While they went from ... room to ... room, Blair explained ... purpose of his visit. 22. He turned to me and said, 'What ... extraordinary names these boys seem to have!' 23. It's ... kind of ... secret I'm not bad at keeping. 24. Bert Smith was ... art lover, or at least he bought ... pictures. 25. He often told ... people that he was ... Irishman but he couldn't fool ... Irish, they saw through him. 26. He was ... great believer in ... man. 27. I thought of him as ... equal. 28. He would have been ... captain of ... team if he had been less unpopular. 29. They were ... greatest friends, all four of them. 30. He was introduced to Carlotta Lee, ... girl who played ... leading part. 31. I gathered that she was ... widow of ... colonial governor. 32. There was still ... great deal of ... schoolboy about my father. 33. I did this purely as ... favour to you.

Exercise 109. Revision: fill in the blanks with articles before nouns in some syntactic position if necessary.

1. She was ... good hostess, and seeing my embarrassment came up to me. 2. Davis, ... owner of the bar, came over and Michael made his introductions. 3. I feel uncommon nervous about the ceremony, ... Colonel. I wish you come and see me through it. 4. This is Lord Henry Wotton Dorian, ... old Oxford friend of mine. 5. He had realized to the full that Irene had become ... world to him. 6. She is ... careful and accurate typist. 7. Fear was loose in ... Ward 21 creeping from ... mind to ... mind like a bush fire. 8. Mr. Baker, First National ... president, trusted Joey so completely that he let the teller do most of the work. 9. I was still ... child enough to consider a Christian name like a plume in the hat though from the very first he had called me by mine. 10. 'What ... touching young man!' she said and her tone was more playful than ever. 11. They found a seat hidden behind a slate-grey fir and sat there ... hand in ... hand, and the silence closed around them. 12. Professor Beans is ... man to whom you'll be responsible for your undergraduate teaching. 13. Hawkins shall come as ... cabin boy. You'll make a famous cabin boy, Hawkins. 14. His works are ... monuments to his great genius. 15. Those are ... risks you take. 16. She was considered ... burden on her husband and friends. 17. Turgenev, ... great writer, devoted most of his literary works to nature. 18. If ... Uncle Harold and ... Tante Elsa and the two girls fell sick and died in Saratoga, he would stay in this house in Elysium forever. 19. ... student Patterson was holding her son Jim. 20. 'I was just on my way to lunch,' said Sutton, ... irritation in his voice trying to make it sound as if he were in a hurry. 21. She was married to ... man called Bronson. He was ... planter. He was ... manager of ... estate up ... river. 22. Thames Street was ... broad road on ... edge of ... town half ... mile from ... park. Most of ... houses in it had been built just before ... war. 23. You can't treat Charles like ... child. He is ...

grown man. 24. ... pleasantest man in ... office was ... big ex-paratrooper named John Duncan. He was six feet tall, had ... face of ... farmer, and seemed to like everybody and everything. 25. I have married ... Philip's widow. I am ... richest man in ... town today, my friend. 26. He explained that he was ... head of ... department. 27. Slang is ... great pitfall. Henry James in his English stories made constant use of it, but never quite as ... English do, so that instead of getting ... colloquial effect he was after, it too often gives ... English reader ... uncomfortable jolt. 28. ... driver was ... strong athletic young man. 29. On the following Monday I left West Hatch, ... village where we lived. 30. ... friend of his, ... carpenter by trade, had given him ... job. 31. Philip had been ... hero of his childhood. 32. They were ... handsomest couple in London, and had not ... penny between them. 33. He left his wife in ... car as ... guard while he went back to ... house.

Exercise 110. Revision: translate into English paying attention to the use of articles with nouns in some syntactical positions.

1. Я слышал голос этого человека много лет назад, когда он был главой шайки. 2. Она была лучшей поварихой на острове. 3. Джеймс в ужасе стоял на тротуаре. Он дрожал с головы до ног. 4. О'Доннел был главою хирургического отделения и президентом медицинского совета госпиталя. 5. У меня есть там друзья, которых я навещаю время от времени летом. 6. Какими они были друзьями! 7. Его карьера школьного учителя прервалась в 1911 году из-за болезни. 8. «Я бы предпочел не говорить о нем, отец», – сказал он наконец. 9. В течение многих лет Ньютон был президентом Королевского общества. 10. Она была замужем за сэром Максом Маллованом, известным археологом. 11. Время от времени я встречался с Ирэн. 12. Он беспокойно ворочался с боку на бок, но сон не приходил. 13. «Вы обращались со мной как с ребенком до сих пор», – медленно сказала Люси. 14. «Как смешно!» – сказала миссис Ван Хоппер, когда мы поднимались в лифте. 15. Я путешествовал из города в город в поисках свободы. 16. Мы требовали, чтобы доктор Мэнсон ушел в отставку. 17. Академик Петров был самым опытным специалистом по туберкулезу. 18. Я вас очень уважаю, доктор, и мне было бы жаль, если бы вы обо мне плохо думали.

## CHAPTER 6 SPECIAL DIFFICULTIES IN THE USE OF ARTICLES

### 6.1 THE GENERIC USE OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE

§ 39 The definite article has the generic meaning when it is used with singular nouns referring to a class of objects as a whole but not to a single representative of a class. In this case the concrete correlation is not between the noun and a single object (or a number of objects) but between the noun and the whole class. This is possible due to the logical generalization of all generic qualities in one object.

e.g. *The steam engine* was a powerful instrument of human progress.

The generic use of the definite article is typical of only certain semantic groups of nouns, namely, of scientific terminology, inventions and technological developments, musical instruments, names of plants, species of animals and birds, occupations, etc.

e.g. Do you play *the piano*?

The principal trees are *the oak, the beech, and walnut*, which give way in the higher regions to *the pine and fir*.

It was not until the 19th century that *the microscope* was perfected as an instrument.

§ 40 The definite article in the generic meaning is also found with collective singular nouns denoting mainly social classes or groups as undivided bodies (*the proletariat, the bourgeoisie, the aristocracy, the nobility, the peasantry, the intelligentsia, the elite, the public, the press*). Some of these nouns, though singular in form, take the verb in the plural (*the clergy, the gentry, the police*):

e.g. *The clergy* always take sides with *the nobility* and *the bourgeoisie*.

*The fascists* were defeated in World War II but fascism still exists.

The regulations should be written in plain English that *the public* understands.

**Note 1** The noun ‘**public**’ may be used with a plural verb when it has no generic reference.

e.g. *The public are* admitted from 10 a.m. to 6 p.m. vs *The public wants* tougher sentences for terrorists.

**Note 2** The combination ‘**public opinion**’ is used without any article.

e.g. *Public opinion* demands that people should be moved from overcrowded areas in accordance with the decision of the town council.

§ 41 There are many ways of referring generically to human beings as a whole: ‘**man**’, ‘**people**’, ‘**mankind**’, ‘**humanity**’, ‘**the human race**’.

The noun ‘**man**’ has no article when used with generic reference meaning ‘*all human beings*’; the noun ‘**woman**’ is used either with the definite article or without any article.

e.g. ‘*Man* is helpless in this case,’ he said shrugging his shoulders.

(*The*) *Woman* rarely loses heart in the face of financial or other straits.

The noun ‘**people**’ when used generically (meaning ‘*all the persons forming a state*’) takes the definite article. When the noun ‘**people**’ means ‘*persons, human beings in general*’ it has no article.

e.g. On this issue, government has failed to listen to *the people*.  
*People* like stability.

The nouns ‘**mankind**’ and ‘**humanity**’, though used in a collective sense, take no article.

e.g. Weapons of this type are a threat to the survival of *humanity*.  
Only *mankind* would consider the ability to destroy the earth, a sign of intelligence – and call it civilization.

§ 42 Partially substantivized adjectives are used with the definite article in the generic meaning as they denote groups of people. They behave like nouns in the plural and are followed by a plural verb. Many adjectives can be used in this way; here are some common ones: *aged, blind, brave, dead, deaf, disabled, educated, elderly, free, handicapped, homeless, hungry, injured, living, needy, old, oppressed, poor, powerful, rich, sick, starving, strong, uneducated, unemployed, weak, wealthy, wounded, young*, etc.

e.g. Fortune favours *the brave*.

Partially substantivized adjectives are often names of nationalities (*the British, the French, the Irish, the Swiss*, etc.):

e.g. *The Chinese* have their own version of this proverb.

**Note 1** However, we can only say *an Irishman, many Frenchmen*, etc., when the idea of collectivity is absent:

e.g. *Two middle-aged Frenchmen* were having coffee at the next table.

Partially substantivized adjectives are used with the definite article in the generic meaning to mean something with that quality. The following adjectives are often used after the definite article in this way: *bizarre, exotic, impossible, incredible, inevitable, new, obvious, old, possible, ridiculous, sublime, supernatural, unbelievable, unexpected, unknown, unreal, unthinkable*.

e.g. People asked him *the impossible*.  
Politics is the art of *the possible*.

§ 43 The definite article in the generic meaning is used with plural nouns which denote nations and racial groups, and religious groups as undivided bodies (*‘the whole body of’*).

e.g. On their refusal *the Italians* attacked them at 3 a.m.

**Note 1** If there is no generic reference these nouns may be used without any article or with the definite article in the specifying meaning:

e.g. *Italians* are musical people as a rule.  
*The Italians* I have met all love opera.

Exercise 111. Select the correct answer to each question.

### The Animal World

- 1) Which is the largest of the ape and monkey families, full-grown?  
a) chimpanzee    b) orang-outang    c) gorilla
- 2) Which of these is not a mammal?  
a) whale    b) shark    c) dolphin
- 3) Which of these hasn't got a shell on its back?  
a) snail    b) tortoise    c) turtle    d) crab    e) octopus
- 4) Which of these hasn't got horns?  
a) rhinoceros    b) hippopotamus    c) bull  
d) goat    e) deer    f) antelope
- 5) Which of these has spots rather than stripes?  
a) zebra    b) leopard    c) tiger
- 6) Whose fur might you expect to pay most?  
a) fox    b) mink    c) rabbit
- 7) Which of these insects doesn't sting?  
a) ant    b) wasp    c) bee    d) ladybird
- 8) Which won't bite you?  
a) mosquito    b) flea    c) butterfly    d) fly
- 9) Which of these birds can fly?  
a) penguin    b) ostrich    c) goose    d) emu
- 10) Which of these birds has the most impressive tail?  
a) peacock    b) pigeon    c) sparrow
- 11) Which of these has most legs?  
a) spider    b) scorpion    c) centipede  
d) beetle    e) worm    f) piranha fish
- 12) Which of these creatures is not extinct?  
a) mammoth    b) dinosaur    c) pterodactyl  
d) buffalo    e) brontosaurus
- 13) Which of these is not a fabulous creature?  
a) dragon    b) unicorn    c) chameleon    d) mermaid
- 14) Which of these reptiles is not an amphibian?  
a) crocodile    b) iguana    c) alligator
- 15) Which of these is not related to the dog?  
a) wolf    b) jackal    c) yak
- 16) Which of these would win the high jump?  
a) frog    b) grasshopper or cricket    c) giraffe
- 17) Which of these four is a cross between two of the others?  
a) horse    b) ass    c) donkey    d) mule
- 18) Which of these is not a bird of prey?  
a) hawk    b) falcon    c) vulture    d) woodpecker    e) eagle
- 19) Which of these birds has the longest wings?  
a) albatross    b) seagull    c) humming-bird
- 20) Which bird:

- a) starts the day with its cry?      b) is a bit of a petty thief?  
 c) is the symbol of peace?          d) is supposed to be very wise?

Exercise 112. Say in which of the following sentences you are dealing with generic singulars and generic plurals and explain the use of all the articles:

1. Nature provides ... animals with ... weapons of defence: ... snake, ... scorpion, ... bee have their sting. 2. ... French, he thought, are always finding occasions to block traffic. 3. 'Do you know why ... Americans like fried stuff?' John asked. 'They've lost their taste.' 4. There was nothing of ... artist in her. 5. ... man's flight to the moon and his safe return to the earth has now left the realm of science fiction. 6. '... Italians are a wonderfully hospitable people,' she said. 7. They wouldn't put out a finger to keep ... hard-working little man from going down the drain. 8. From the door to the end of the line ... unemployed began hopefully discussing their families. 9. But the desire for approbation is perhaps the most deeply seated instinct of ... civilized man. 10. ... Tories were trying hard to attack the mining industry. 11. ... article is generally placed before ... noun or its attribute. 12. I'm sure ... Labour could find a better man for the job. 13. ... ignorant naturally fear those who are interested in things they don't understand. 14. 'The respect for property is ingrained in ... English soul,' she remarked. 15. At birth ... man is not yet ... man. To become one he must provide himself with the things that make ... man ... man. In other words, with that which distinguishes ... man from ... animals. 16. She loved to talk on the quality of television entertainment for ... young. 17. It was a drama depicting the life of ... aristocracy. 18. '... man is fundamentally honest,' he observed. 19. ... police said that ... Indians could come freely to the town and do their shopping. 20. '... boys of your age ought to be in bed by eight,' she said. 21. ... chemists tell you that matter is never completely destroyed. 22. 'Do you know why ... American women live longer than ... American men, Jimmy?' 'Because they sleep as long as they like in the morning.' 'Then my ambition is to live as long as ... American Woman,' Jimmy said lying back on the bed again. 23. I spoke of the economic position of ... woman. 24. ... tiger is a big cat-like animal ranging in several races from India and the Malay Peninsula to Siberia. 25. ... clown appeared in ... English circus first. 26. All ... four sides and angles of ... square are equal. 27. ... invention of ... radio was for a long time ascribed to Marconi. 28. Kennedy's Plain was always a good trapping ground because it was unfrequented by ... man and yet lay between ... heavy woods and ... settlement.

Exercise 113. Supply the required articles for nouns in the following sentences, paying special attention to their generic use:

1. He killed reluctantly those animals he liked. He hated ... mink because it was ... most voracious little predator in ... bush. He liked ... skunk because it was fearless, he liked ... bear, because it was ... great fool, he liked ... racoon because it was clean, ... beaver because it was clever, but he despised ... fox, because it was cunning, ... wolf because it was ruthless, and ... squirrel because it was ... nuisance. 2. ... English are ... political nation, and I was often asked to ... houses where

politics were ... ruling interest. 3. Princeton University is said to have collected ... data on the relative intelligence of ... men of ... various professions. According to them ... mathematicians rate highest, with ... physicists a close second. 4. There is so much of ... schoolgirl still about her. 5. '... Swiss haven't had ... war in a hundred and fifty years and what have they produced?' Jimmy shrugged: '... cuckoo clock.' 6. When they are hurt, ... tough usually suffer more than ... tender. 7. He is ... man who is always ready to work round ... clock. 8. Hopkins was ... rich man as well as ... successful novelist. 9. ... man does not live by bread alone. 10. While waiting for ... flight, and without ever leaving ... terminal, ... visitor could shop, take ... bath, have his hair cut and suit pressed. 11. She spent ... great part of her life looking after ... sick. 12. ... roses are ... only flowers that everybody is certain to know. 13. '... French are ... easy-going people,' her father used to say. 14. Slowly but surely ... man is conquering Nature. 15. 'Only ... two kinds of ... people,' she said, 'arrive in ... noiseless cars: ... millionaires and ... police. Since we have no acquaintances among ... former and an ever-widening acquaintance with ... latter, I deducted who had arrived.' 16. In many things it is hard to tell the difference between ... Labour and ... Tories. 17. No man born of ... woman can live in such conditions. 18. In the town there were lots of shops kept by ... Chinese. 19. 'Do you notice the way ... Italians drive?' Maurice asked. 'Well,' Jack said, 'it's better than the way ... Frenchmen drive.' 20. Beyond ... river, ... Germans had their lines. 21. ... auxiliary verbs have no meaning of their own and are used to build up ... analytical forms of ... verb. 22. She learned entirely by ... eye. 23. Learning comes easier to ... young. 24. I was told not to talk to ... strangers. 25. ... public are requested to keep off ... grass in ... park. 26. ... woman can't resist buying ... cosmetic articles in ... shops. 27. I thought they were ... French. 28. I believe there is ... theory that ... men and ... women emerge finer and stronger after suffering. 29. ... Future Tense is not used in ... adverbial clauses of time and condition.

Exercise 114. Fill in the blanks with the definite article in the generic meaning if necessary.

1. For centuries very little was known about ... American lobster. 2. ... heart understands when it is confronted with contrasts. 3. He recalled that ... atom bomb was the result of research and development within the framework of the Manhattan project. 4. On the top of this ... average teacher is not working ten hours a week on top of their stretched working hours of a decade ago. 5. From a social standpoint ... man of science does not exist. 6. ... soul is distinct from ... body, its senses are from the mind: it is not part of the absolute, for the absolute can have no parts. 7. That is because ... public isn't really interested in ... theatre. 8. The SDP – Liberal Alliance is, vote for vote, a greater threat to ... Conservatives than to Labour. 9. She came out of her sleep, the cough tearing her again and again till it seemed impossible that ... human body could endure so much. 10. This is just one example of the hundreds of crimes perpetrated by ... Israelis in the south of Lebanon today. 11. ... doctor oughtn't to sin against his professional etiquette. 12. Had he forgotten that Arnold Jackson had a tongue of silver, a tongue by which he had charmed vast sums out of



... credulous public? 13. ... man crossed ... space in metallic cylinders that twisted time and space. 14. Who but ... English would fill Covent Garden to listen to an aged prima donna without a voice? Who but ... English would pay to see dancers so decrepit that they can hardly put one foot before the other? 15. In the light of the world's attitude toward ... woman and her duties the nature of Carrie's mental state deserves consideration. 16. But the Prime Minister should recognize that he is again face to face with a section of ... working class which, having learned through bitter experience in the past, now knows how to put up a fight. 17. A United Nations force spokesman in the area said that a man was found dead near the village with a bullet in his head after ... Israelis left. 18. I reflected that there must be a bowl of goose grease on most farms; it was the all-purpose lubricant and liniment for ... man and beast. 19. These feel as much as ... poet though they have not the same power of expression. 20. There is no firm evidence for either of these explanations for the end of ... dinosaur. 21. He had the feeling that I have noticed in some Americans that America is a difficult and even dangerous place in which ... European cannot safely be left to find his way about by himself. 22. The trouble is once the weeds are gone biologists don't know what will happen or where ... carp will migrate. 23. So long, also, will the atmosphere of this realm work its desperate results in the soul of ... man. 24. What absurd fellows you are both of you! I wonder who it was defined ... man as a rational animal. 25. ... artist can express everything. 26. Founded by ... French, ruled for a few decades by ... Spanish and finely fought by ... Americans, it's a city of contrasts. 27. Milk is very nice, especially with a drop of brandy in it, but ... domestic cow is only too glad to be rid of it. 28. When ... Tories say ... class struggle no longer exists they hope to persuade ... workers not to fight for their just demands.

Exercise 115. Fill in the blanks with articles wherever necessary.

Mrs. Barthwick: You ... Liberals and ... Conservatives, you're all alike. You ought to join hands.

Mr. Barthwick: You're talking nonsense. How is it possible for ... Liberals and ... Conservatives to join hands, as you call it? Why, the very essence of ... Liberal is to trust in ... people.

Mrs. Barthwick: Now, John, eat your breakfast. As if there were any real difference between you and ... Conservatives. All ... upper classes have ... same interests to protect, and ... same principles.

Mr. Barthwick: Indeed. I am ... Liberal! Drop ... subject, please!

Exercise 116. Fill in the blanks with articles wherever necessary.

### **Riding**

In ... recent years riding has become ... sport for everybody. There are many reasons for this modern interest in ... horse. One of ... strongest is ... coming of ... television, ... medium which has shown... millions of... families... beauty of ... large international horse shows and... horse trials. Gradually people began to realise, particularly... younger ones, that here was... sport which they could enjoy all... year round.

Riding is... hobby that one can follow both in... winter and in... summer. It is also... pastime that... whole family can enjoy, you are never too old to learn to ride. It is... good healthy outdoor sport and it can be recommended to anyone – ... housewives,... tired businessmen, and... hard-working high school pupils.

Learning to ride should be... slow and carefully planned process, studying first... horse as ... living personality, and then training oneself into ... correct attitude towards riding as ... art, which is needed if one wishes to ride well.

At ... beginning of ... horse's evolution he was ... small hunted animal. It is because of this natural feeling of being ... hunted that ... horse by ... nature is timid, and sometimes very nervous. ... horse is not ... attacking animal. His only method of ... defence is to run away, and he has ... natural speed. ... horse is not ... intelligent animal, and his mental powers have ... childlike quality.

Exercise 117. Fill in the blanks with articles wherever necessary.

... world's fastest four-legged animal is not, as many people think, ... gazelle. It is ... cheetah. Many authorities say that ... cheetah can run along at 80 miles ... hour. ... cheetah, sometimes called ... hunting leopard, lives in Africa and Southern Asia.

And which is ... most dangerous animal in ... world? It is very difficult to say.

What do we mean by dangerous? By dangerous we mean ... animal that is very strong and always aggressive. ... bull will attack you only if you make him very angry. ... tiger will not attack you if he is not hungry. But there is one animal which is ... strongest and most aggressive of all. He is ... black buffalo of South Africa.

... black buffalo is always aggressive. He will attack almost anything and ... only thing is to get out of ... way quickly. ... buffalo has killed more hunters than any other animal in ... world.

Exercise 118. Fill in the blanks with articles wherever necessary.

### **On ... cats and ... dogs**

... cat and ... dog have been ... man's pets for many centuries.

... cat is ... extremely self-willed animal doing only what it actually wants. In no way can ... cat be persuaded to do anything against its will. If you have ... cat you must already know that you cannot, for instance, stroke it just because you wish to do so. You must wait until ... cat comes to you of its own free will and invites you to stroke it. ... cats make their feelings abundantly clear. ... cat that feels happy and purrs contentedly can be ... most enchanting of pets. If, on ... other hand, it lashes its tail in anger or arches its back, you should watch out for its paws: its claws can, of course, cause severe scratches. This sometimes happens when ... cat accidentally scratches its owner's hand while playing.

... dog is different: it is believed to obey its master and his wishes unquestioningly. But in real life it is often ... other way round. Here is ... story which illustrates how ... dog can sometimes make his master do what it likes.

... friend I met ... other day walking his dog up ... lane laughed about how he had come to be there. ... dog, it seemed, had decided it was time they both had some exercise, for it had come to its master and sat with ... cloth cap in its mouth. When

my friend took ... cap from ... dog and placed it on his knee ... disappointed animal sat for ... moment and then picked up ... cap again. There had been nothing else for it but to go.

... dogs always watch everything their masters do and come to associate particular things with particular events. Putting on ... hat or picking up ... walking stick means ... outing and many dogs encourage their masters in this way.

Exercise 119. Senator Wilson has made some notes for a speech. Complete them by adding *the* in front of the adjective in brackets wherever possible. Otherwise add *people* after the adjective.

1) We must give more help to (poor), even if this means that some (rich) have to pay very heavy taxes.

2) Last week a group of twenty (unemployed) came to see me. I began to realize how difficult life is for (unemployed).

3) We should also look at the problems of (young). The present government is spending less on education, with the result that the standards of education of our (young) have fallen.

4) But it is not only (young) who are suffering. The situation of many (old) is desperate also. And every society must help (old).

5) It is our responsibility to look after (old), (weak) and (sick). Recently life has become harder for those (sick) who do not have enough money to pay for treatment and medicine.

6) Unfortunately, there are a minority of (greedy) in our society who care only about themselves.

7) But we must stand up against such (selfish).

8) All (decent) should reject the arguments of (heartless or uncaring).

Exercise 120. Translate into English using partially substantivized adjectives.

1. Уважайте старших. 2. Все участвовали в общем деле – и старые, и молодые. 3. Она считала своим долгом заботиться о слабых и беспомощных. 4. «Как будто богачи могут понять бедных», – с горечью прошептала старая женщина. 5. Прекрасное никого не оставляет равнодушным. 6. Неизбежное надо принимать спокойно. 7. У него было искреннее желание привлечь внимание умных людей к этому самобытному таланту. 8. В ней поднялось раздражение, которое так быстро охватывает старых людей, когда они сталкиваются с неожиданным. 9. Ангине подвержены и сильные, и слабые, и, иногда, слабые переносят болезнь легче, чем сильные. 10. Неудовлетворенные – самые нудные люди в мире. Они не могут говорить ни о чем, кроме себя. 11. Эта часть больницы отведена для больных, а эта – для раненых. 12. В этом не было ничего необычного. 13. Сон к молодым приходит также быстро, как утро в тропический город. 14. Американцы менее формальны, чем европейцы. 15. Большинство датчан хорошо говорят по-английски, чего не скажешь о французах. 16. Не говорите плохо об отсутствующих. 17. Опытные знают, что опыт – лучший учитель. 18. Моя соседка работает в школе для глухонемых. 19.

Японцы живут дольше, чем другие народы. 20. Даже для самых умных и опытных это очень сложная работа. 21. Давайте забудем все худшее и будем надеяться на лучшее. 22. Очень неразумно обвинять молодых. Старики должны постараться их понять. 23. Швейцарцы часто говорят, что жизнь в Швейцарии очень скучна. 24. – Как называется этот сериал? – «Дерзкие и красивые».

Exercise 121. Translate into English using the definite article in the generic meaning if necessary.

А) 1. Волк и шакал принадлежат к семейству собачьих. 2. Долгое время братья Райт считались изобретателями самолета. Теперь документально доказано, что самолет изобрел инженер Можайский. 3. – Работая с магнитофоном, вы можете улучшить свое произношение. – Само собой разумеется, что это верно. 4. Во время войны многие писатели сменили перо на винтовку. 5. В Бирме торговля всегда была занятием женщины. Она же наследует имущество, и муж, как правило, входит в дом жены. 6. Это одно из прекраснейших сооружений, когда-либо созданных человеком. 7. Попугай может подражать человеческой речи. 10. Телескоп нужен астрономам, а микроскоп – биологам. 12. Скрипка – струнный инструмент, флейта – духовой.

В) 1. Малайцы застенчивы и очень чувствительны. 2. Эрнст пользовался любой возможностью для разоблачения жестокости капиталистов и их эксплуатации рабочих. 3. Он всегда проявлял большой интерес к культуре не только персов, но и турок, армян, арабов, грузин. 4. «Нацисты не остановятся ни перед чем, я повторяю – ни перед чем», – сказал он. 5. Ни один человек, рожденный женщиной, не может жить в таких условиях. 6. Если дерево гнилое, оно должно быть срублено и брошено в огонь. 7. Я пошел на виллу, где у англичан был госпиталь. 8. Я полагаю, что он принадлежит к аристократии. 9. Для американцев война была военной экспедицией с благородными целями. 10. Грузины известны своим гостеприимством. 11. Католики всегда пытаются выяснить, не являетесь ли вы католиком. 12. Художник – это творец красивого. 13. Женщину справедливо называют душой семьи. Большинство самых прекрасных человеческих качеств воспитывается в семье. 14. Говорят, что англичане очень консервативны. 15. Полный текст соглашения вскоре стал известен прессе. 16. В других местах, куда она обращалась, требовались только имеющие опыт. 17. В борьбе за существование, как я показал, сильные и потомки сильных имеют тенденцию выживать, в то время как слабые и потомки слабых уничтожаются и имеют тенденцию погибать. 18. В то время универсальный магазин находился на самой ранней стадии успешного функционирования, и таких магазинов было немного. 19. Анализ стоимости жизни дал неоспоримые свидетельства того, что во многих странах богатые становятся богаче, а бедные беднее.

Exercise 122. Translate into English.

1. Иногда романист чувствует себя богом и готов рассказывать вам все о своих героях. 2. Насколько она могла видеть, пляж, море, и небо – все было

серым. 3. Девушки заказали кока-колу, а я – пиво. 4. Он вошел, неся чай в коричневом чайнике. Цейлонский чай, очень крепкий, с молоком и сахаром, напомнил ей о днях, которые, как ей казалось, она забыла. 5. Я думала, – что вы исчезли с лица земли. 6. Я изобрел машинку, которая раскалывает орех и выскрабливает ядро. 7. Как умно с вашей стороны обирать беспомощных, и вдову, и сироту, и невежественных! Но если уж вам надо воровать, Скарлетт, почему бы не красть у богатых и сильных вместо бедных и слабых? 8. Барт поднял крышку чайника и, налив воду, поставил его обратно на огонь. 9. Я жил в свое удовольствие, как рыба в воде. 10. Он задернул плотные зеленые шторы, и на складе стало темно. 11. Нефть гуще воды. 12. Молчание раздражало Шелтона. 13. Душу его согревало чувство удовлетворения, которое, казалось, растопило его застенчивость. 14. Он не представлял себе, что женщина осмелится так говорить с мужчиной. 15. Несмотря на все сомнения и опасения американцы все-таки избрали его президентом. 16. В сердце парня была ревность и жестокая убийственная ненависть к незнакомцу, который, как ему казалось, встал между ними. 17. Теперь, когда я был далеко от шума и от чопорности этих зданий, безмолвие и пустота окутали меня. 18. Они нашли такси, и он восхитился грациозностью, с которой она подняла руку, чтобы остановить машину. 19. Она не должна упоминать о туберкулезе, она находится там из-за болезни бронхов. Она это запомнила. Помнить об этом – все равно, что сыпать соль на рану. 20. Общественность чтит память американских жертв войны – общее число погибших составляет 400000. 21. Джен намазала куски свежего хлеба маслом и разрежала помидоры. 22. Я надеялся, что вы проявите больше храбрости. Я думал, что ирландцы говорят то, что думают. 23. Я намереваюсь петь на радио и заработать кучу денег. 24. Его извиняющийся смех не скрыл удовольствия, которое он испытывал. 25. «Вы когда-либо думали о будущем?» – спросил он меня. 26. Голос Девидсона дрожал от волнения. 27. Холл был обит панелями из черного дуба. 28. Именно бездеятельность угнетала его; он не был ленивым человеком. 29. Они двое были лучшими в мире актерами. 30. Обе дамы посмотрели друг на друга опять, на этот раз с некоторым смущением.

## 6.2 ARTICLES WITH NOUNS REFERRING TO UNIQUE OBJECTS

§ 44 There are several things which are said to be unique in that only one example of them (or one set of them) exists. Nouns referring to objects which are treated as unique for practical human purposes are generally used with the definite article. The definite article is used in the specifying meaning, since the noun refers to a specific object which is the same for the whole of mankind. Here are some words which belong to this group: *the atmosphere, the cosmos, the devil, the earth, the equator, the ground, the horizon, the moon, the North Pole, the planets, the pope, the sky, the solar system, the South Pole, the stars, the sun, the universe, the weather, the world, etc.*

e.g. The Sun is the star at the center of the Solar System and is by far the most important source of energy for life on Earth.

**Note 1** The noun ‘**Earth**’ when used as the name of our planet is a proper name and doesn’t require an article.

e.g. They studied life on *Earth* in all its forms. *vs* The Moon goes round *the Earth*.

**Note 2** The noun ‘**sky**’ is sometimes used in the plural for talking about the weather.

e.g. Tomorrow we expect clear *skies* in the morning, with rain in the afternoon.

**Note 3** ‘**Outer space**’/’**space**’ is used without any article.

e.g. When a small town is invaded by aliens from *outer space* who are capturing and killing the townspeople, no one takes them seriously.

There are also nouns which refer to objects (persons or things) treated as unique in their own sphere. Because of that these nouns are used with the definite article. For example, if a country has a president, he is always *the president* to citizens of the country as reference is always made to the same person.

e.g. *The President* was in his country residence.

**§45** A noun referring to a unique object is sometimes used with the indefinite article if it is the rheme of a sentence, i.e. if it introduces new information or the most important part of the information conveyed by a sentence. Nouns are often (but not necessarily) modified by descriptive attributes in such cases:

e.g. Or Cape Palinuro, a remote, forest-fringed Calabrian beach where we all were sunning ourselves under *a still-warm October sun*...

Exercise 123. Analyze the use of articles with nouns referring to unique objects.

1. ... few gulls circled beating in ... gunmetal sky. 2. He could see ... earth itself was spinning faster. 3. I can see ... rippled sky fluffy with clouds, and ... white-whipped sea. 4. Now ... sun came clear of the bank of cloud and flooded ... world with light. 5. ... miserable world, ... wet world, but always and predominantly ... white world of softness and beauty and strangely muffled sound. 6. It would be hours before ... air would warm up even under ... hot Mediterranean sun. 7. ... moon hung low in ... sky like a yellow skull. 8. He went to the lock and twirled it open and stepped out on ... ground. 9. I put myself in harmony with ... universe. 10. ... full moon sailing across ... unclouded sky made a pathway on ... broad sea that led to the boundless realms of Forever. 11. ‘Welcome to ... Earth, sir,’ said the man and ‘sir’ struck a chord of memory. 12. ... sun blazed down out of ... cloudless noon sky, the spears of the palm leaves shredded the sunlight over him. 13. The clouds broke away and we had the advantage of ... full moon. 14. Magellan was killed in battle. 18 of his companions reached Spain in 1522, completing the first voyage round ... world. 15. Quite ... new world opened before him. 16. The night was so dark that the sailors could distinguish neither ... sky nor ... sea. 17. ... sea was sparkling under ... cloudless sky. 18. ... clear midday sky was suddenly overcast by heavy clouds coming from nowhere. 19. The air was filled with the odour of ... sea of blossoms. 20. ... high noon sun was incredibly strong, ... summer sun now, sudden,

uncompromising. 21. The clouds were lying so closely below the plane that nothing could be seen of ... earth. 22. The huge disc of ... moon was rising in ... east. 23. He explained later that he hadn't rung up again because he had had no more coppers for ... telephone. 24. Kim threw up ... tremendous party. And, of course, ... press was also cordially invited. 25. Through ... gateway ... thousands of ... miners every day enter ... cages that plunge them more than ... mile into ... earth. 26. ... cloud, hitherto unseen, came upon ... moon. 27. Aunt Bertha liked my company, let me listen to ... radio, and made me ... cakes and ... tarts. 28. ... stars were faint and dim and lovely in ... soft misty night sky. 29. 'We've got to make arrangements for ... future.' 'But have we ... future?' he asked. 30. And curiously enough, at this moment, there came ... distinct rumble of ... thunder out of ... cloudless sky. 31. We hope for ... future and regret ... past. 32. Obviously we take ... different views of ... world. I want ... better world. 33. ... moon made ... faint pathway on ... water, but ... house was still lit up by ... setting sun. 34. There was ... hamburger stand ... block to ... east. 35. ... moon set, and in ... sky ... countless stars shone with their terrifying brilliance. 36. ... man is ... master of ... whole earth, above and below, from ... Equator to ... Poles. 37. It was ... glorious night. ... moon had sunk and left ... quiet earth alone with ... stars. 38. He was faced with nothing but ... decidedly bleak-looking future.

Exercise 124. Fill in the blanks with articles wherever necessary. Pay attention to nouns referring to unique objects.

1. You can't tell those birds from ... sky and that's why the hawks don't catch them, don't see them up there in ... high blue sky near ... sun. 2. Sattorn stood quietly and stared at ... world before him, at the upthrust of towers shining in ... morning sun, at the green of park and meadow, at the dark green of trees. 3. A lamp or candles would close them into a soft illuminated space, but obliterate ... sky, which now bent towards them through the pillars of the verandah, ... full deep sky, holding a yellow bloom from ... invisible moon that absorbed the stars into a faint far glitter. 4. ... sun was so full of promise, and ... sea was whipped white with ... merry wind. 5. Far away to the southeast ... dazzling white sun climbed up above ... cloudless horizon. 6. We live in such ... mysterious universe, don't we? 7. ... world is a busy place. Communication is difficult. 8. The town lay still in ... Indian summer sun. 9. Once let her make up her mind, get her heart set on something, and you might as well howl at ... moon. 10. Jan woke on Saturday to ... world thrilling with expectancy. 11. I kept my eyes on ... horizon, sharp against the bright blue of ... winter sky. 12. The Norfolk Island pines at Manly came up dark and stately against ... white-freckled sky. 13. They don't know how lucky they are, Hugo thought bitterly as he peered out of ... window, hungry for ... ground. 14. I shouted, 'What the hell gives you people the right to decide for ... world?' 15. There was a softness in ... air which speaks with an infinite delicacy of feeling to the flesh as well as to the soul. 16. He was buffeted away from the huge fuselage, the force of ... wind crashing into his body. 17. As they entered the avenue of Canterville Chase ... sky became suddenly overcast with clouds, a curious stillness seemed to hold ... atmosphere. 18. I

remember opening wide my window and leaning out, hoping ... fresh morning air would blow away the telltale pink under the powder. 19. ... King exacted huge sums from the barons and they in turn taxed ... people. 20. People all over ... world want peace. 21. He turned away, and lay with wide-open eyes, looking out of the window at ... sinking sun. 22. The storm had blown itself out. The last clouds, broken in lurid, ragged-edged fragments, were sailing gently over ... soft blue sky. 23. Henry did his best to lend an appearance of secrecy to the proceedings of the commission that were reported daily in ... press. 24. 'I suppose I oughtn't to tell you, but someone ought to be thinking of ... future,' said Aunt Milly. 25. She opened her eyes to their widest when she was told what ... brilliant future spread before her. 26. On such an evening every one looks up at ... Milky Way. 27. In Milford if you call John Smith on ... telephone you expect John Smith to answer in person. 28. Charles broke in: 'She wants ... good world.' 29. It was the same house all right. We entered the tall gloomy archway as we had so often in ... past. 30. The night was very dark, with a cold, damp gusty wind from ... west. 31. That is ... Sirius, ... gigantic sun, many millions of miles from us.

Exercise 125. Translate into English paying attention to the use of articles with nouns referring to unique objects.

1. Был воскресный полдень, и солнце, которое светило уже несколько часов, начинало согревать землю. 2. Они самые неблагодарные люди в мире. 3. Небо давило как металлический купол, от горизонта до горизонта. 4. Задул пронзительный ветер, и ей стало холодно. 5. Сквозь деревья ему была видна луна. 6. Воздух под деревьями казался гнетущим. 7. В эту ночь небо было покрыто облаками и луны не было видно. Майкл взял с собой карманный фонарик, чтобы освещать дорогу. 8. Луна опустилась за гору. 9. Свежий воздух и отдых начали оказывать на его здоровье положительное действие. 10. Дети спали; последний ветер зимы дул порывами за окнами их спальни. 11. Ребенок остановился и посмотрел на серебристый самолет, кружащий высоко в небе. 12. Хотя солнце село, на узкой улице держалась жара. 13. На востоке над горизонтом светила звезда. 14. Серебряная луна светила на небе. 14. Он видит себя центром вселенной.

### 6.3 ARTICLES WITH NAMES OF SEASONS

§ 46 When talking about a specific occurrence of a season, we usually use the definite article.

e.g. You'll feel better in the spring.

When you are talking generally about a season or what happens in a season, you can use the definite article or no article.

e.g. I do some rock-climbing in the summer, ski in *the winter*.

It was a wide, high-ceilinged room, excessively cold *in winter*.

**Note 1** The use of the definite article with the noun 'fall' (AmE=autumn): *in (the) fall*.



Names of seasons are used without any article in the function of a predicative. However, when these nouns in their predicative function are modified by a descriptive attribute, the indefinite article is used. If names of seasons are modified by limiting attributes or limitation is clear from the context or situation, we use the definite article.

- e.g. It was *spring* and the air was pleasant.  
“It has been *a terrible summer*,” he said.  
It was *the long hot summer* of 1976.

When names of seasons are modified by descriptive attributes or you want to pick out one particular period the indefinite article is used.

- e.g. I spent *a summer* in the Cyclades.  
We’ve had *a particularly severe winter* this year.

When names of seasons are modified by the adjectives ‘late’, ‘early’, ‘next’, or ‘last’ there is no article.

- e.g. The fruit will ripen in *late summer*.  
We haven’t heard from him since *last autumn*.

The definite article is obligatory after the prepositions ‘during’, ‘for’, ‘through’.

- e.g. The family moved to the country *for the winter*.

The definite article is generally found when names of seasons serve as an object in the sentence. This is usually found after the verbs *to spend, to like, to love, to hate, to wait for, to talk about* and some others. In this case reference may be made to a particular season or to any season in general.

- e.g. We spend *the winter* in the south.

No article or the definite article may be used after the prepositions ‘in’, ‘till’, ‘until’, ‘before’, ‘after’.

- e.g. Can’t you wait until *(the) winter*?  
This room is cold even in *(the) summer*.

In attributive ‘of’-phrases names of seasons usually have no article, as in: *the warmth of spring, the dust of summer, three months of winter, the colours of autumn*.

**Note 2** Notice the following set phrases: *(to work) winter and summer, early (late) in the autumn (summer, etc.), all the winter (spring, etc.)*.

**Note 3** Notice the use of the article in dates: ‘spring 1974’ but ‘the spring of 1974’.

Exercise 126. Fill in the blanks with articles before names of seasons if necessary.

1. They looked in awe at this proof of returning life, moved too deeply for words that it should have just come this morning to remind them when ... winter lay heaviest on them that ... spring would come again and with ... spring freedom and reunion. 2. I should remember the rose-garden in ... summer, and the birds that sang at dawn. 3. The weather was wet and cold for quite a week, as it often can be in the West Country in ... early summer. 4. ‘During ... summer I always feel uneasy for ...,’ he swallowed. ‘For it reminds what happened three years ago.’ 5. I am transported from this indifferent island to the realities of ... English spring. 6. There was a good

deal of story-telling and comparing notes on ... past summer and all its doings. 7. The sun had brought the old men out from wherever they spent ... winter. 8. In ... summer of his sophomore year, when he got the job after hours and on Saturdays at Caldewood's Department Store he was quite happy. 9. The West Country must be delightful in ... spring. 10. In ... spring of the year 1881 he was visiting his old schoolfellow and client G. Liver sedge. 11. I'm tired to death of Europe and we can come back in ... early fall. 12. ... winter passed into ... spring and ... gardens on the Riviera were ablaze with colour. ... spring passed into ... summer. 13. He shivered. He always hated ... winter. 14. Christmas of 1862 had been a happy one for Atlanta, for the whole south. Every one knew that when the campaign reopened in ... spring, the Yankees would be crushed for good and all. 15. And you frightened me with it, that winter when you and I were here as girls ... winter I was engaged to Delphin. 16. Even the mists of ... autumn and the smell of the flood tide – these are the memories of Manderley that will not be denied. 17. In the evening the bars on the Croisette were thronged by a restless, chattering crowd as many-coloured as the flowers of ... spring. 18. It was ... early spring when she chanced to meet Walter Fane. 19. New York is beautiful at ground level, but on a fine day in ... early winter from the air, it is one of the loveliest sights a man can hope to see. 20. You know our blood gets so thick during ... winter. 21. That was ... terrible summer with the sound of milk-cans rattling in the street, rubber-shod feet padding on pavements. 22. Whether in ... winter or ... summer, ... spring or ... autumn it's always got its fun and its excitements. 23. I raked up visions of ... Wyoming spring, warm, bright. 24. ... winter settled down over the mountains and the long trip from the city to her ceased to be an adventure for Bart, and became a hardship. 25. There was a small lake nearby with two hotels that were open for ... summer, and holiday cottages owned by people who came from Cleveland.

Exercise 127. Supply the required articles for nouns in the following sentences, paying special attention to denoting seasons:

1. We used ... cottage for ... weekends in ... summer. 2. It was ... first day of ... summer. 3. Quite early in ... autumn he began visiting us two or three times each week. 4. As ... autumn passed, I saw ... good deal of Charles and Ann together. 5. It was ... remarkably fine autumn. 6. He walked along ... streets smelling ... spring in ... air. 7. ... spring had come early that year. 8. I saw him before he went down to ... Mr. Bell's country house for ... summer. 9. It was ... brilliant summer of 1971. 10. During ... winter I had heard a rumour that she was abroad. 11. They must have met in ... summer. 12. He felt more at home in ... winter than in ... summer because in ... winter there were ... firelights and ... drawn curtains and one's own company. 13. ... summer faded gloomily into ... autumn. 14. In ... autumn young Ben was to go away to a prep school and my job would be ended. 15. ... winter passed. 16. He went duck-shooting with the locals in ... autumn and trout fishing with Mr. Clark in ... spring. 17. I expect I shall loathe Manchester. However, I shall not be there long. I'm off to school in ... autumn. 18. It was ... summer and ... place broke out in ... red

flowers. 19. 'Can't you wait until ... winter?' Sam asked. 20. ... winter had now settled into ... bright cold days and ... hard cold nights.

Exercise 128. Insert articles where necessary.

1. The year wore on and it was ... summer. 2. ... winter was coming on. 3. It was ... warm and glowing autumn, and she lay in the mellow sunshine. 4. I think the country in ... winter would be horrible, don't you? 5. ... summer was here with its bright, short nights. 6. People realized that ... winter must come sooner or later, and were determined to make the most of the sun while it lasted. 7. 'It has been ... terrible summer,' he said. 8. He cleaned the barn for ... winter. 9. Through ... autumn, a busy time for me, I was often uneasy. 10. It was ... late summer. 11. In March came the first break in ... winter. 12. We had ... short summer this year. 13. To walk in the garden and watch ... spring returning was like rediscovering the world. 14. Later when it grew warmer and the sun seemed as hot as in ... summer, she would go out into the garden. 15. She went to Scotland for ... summer. 16. It was ... winter, and ... night of bitter cold. 17. You see, ... winter was ... very bad time for me, and I really had no money at all to buy ... bread with. 18. It was ... very dark evening for ... summer. 19. ... summer drew to ... end, and ... early autumn. 20. I wondered if ... autumn would come upon us two months before her time. 21. It was ... lovely evening in ... spring time of ... year; and in ... soft stillness of ... twilight, all ... nature was very calm and beautiful. ... day had been fine and warm; but at ... coming on of ... night, ... air grew cool. 22. It was pretty late in ... autumn of ... year when ... declining sun, struggling through ... mist which had obscured it all day, looked brightly upon ... little Wiltshire village. 23. There was going to be ... election soon, we all knew: this was ... spring of 1955. 24. It was ... cold fall and ... wind came down from ... mountains. 25. It was ... fine day, early in ... spring, and we were in ... good humour.

Exercise 129. Translate into English paying special attention to the use of articles with names of seasons.

1. В течение лета я часто встречал своего школьного друга. 2. «Была поздняя осень, когда она написала мне», – сказал он. 3. Они должны были пожениться в самом начале весны. 4. Прошлым летом Сара переехала за город. 5. Лето, которое Сюзанна провела с Ларри, было самым счастливым временем в ее жизни. 6. Я думаю, ты знаешь, что Ларри пробыл в Санари всю зиму. 7. Видишь ли, осенью я собираюсь поступить на работу в дядину фирму. 8. Была ранняя весна, когда они прибыли в Одессу. 9. Какое унылое лето ждет нас впереди! 10. В тот год зима была холодная. 11. В течение зимы средняя температура была минус 10°. 12. За пределами госпиталя жители Берлингтона страдали от ужасно жаркого лета. 13. Но действительно, кажется довольно абсурдным, что я не увижу свою собственную работу, тем более, что осенью я собираюсь выставить ее на выставке в Париже. 14. Зима была уже на носу, а у нее не было теплой одежды, а теперь и работы. 15. Летом 1985 года она победила на соревнованиях. 16. Была ранняя весна. 17. Была дождливая,

холодная осень. 18. Осень была исключительно теплая; стояла ясная, солнечная погода. 19. Мое любимое время года – лето. 20. Лето 1941 года было очень жаркое. 21. Мы планировали уехать из города в самом начале лета, но из-за болезни ребенка поездку пришлось отложить.

## 6.4 ARTICLES WITH MONTHS AND DAYS OF THE WEEK

§ 47 With the names of months and days of the week you usually use no article when you want to relate a period to the present.

e.g. We are leaving on *Tuesday*.

We're taking an early holiday in *May*.

However, you can use the indefinite article with the days of the week to identify one day of the week in general.

e.g. New Year's Day will be on *a Tuesday* this year.

Jane was always washing on *a Monday* and baking on *a Wednesday*.

You can use the definite or indefinite article with modification to refer to one particular day.

e.g. It all began on *an ordinary Monday*.

We are starting the project not later than *the second Monday in May*.

A definite article without modification suggests a day in the week you are talking about.

e.g. It got under way at two o'clock on *the Tuesday*, having been meant to start on *the previous Friday*.

**Note 1** Compare 'He bought it on *Monday*' (= last Monday) and 'They are arriving on *Wednesday*' (=this Wednesday).

Exercise 130. Insert articles where necessary.

1. 'It's ... Sunday again – another week past,' she thought, recalling that she had been here ... Sunday before, 'and always ... same life that is no life, and ... same surroundings in which it used to be so easy to live.' 2. '... next Monday,' he answered, not taking his eyes off ... book he was reading. 3. ... president and vice-president are voted for every fourth year, in ... years divisible by four, on ... first Tuesday following ... first Monday of November. 4. Because I am ... forty-two-year-old man and I pay with ... American Express and was born on ... Friday, part my hair on ... left, and have ... thirty-four-inch waist, ... machine suggests what I should buy. 5. Biennial sessions are held beginning on ... first Monday in ... January of ... even-numbered years. 6. He apparently was given ... whiff of ... bigs in ... losing September when ... few fortunate minor leaguers get ... peek of how ... other side lives. 7. It was ... Tuesday so I was at class and Randy at baseball practice – otherwise we remembered nothing. 8. Jeffrey Byrne spent ... Tuesday and ... Wednesday in ... early March in Scranton. 9. ... June leaped into ... July and Random gave birth to ... little filly for Jonathan. 10. ... March came in like ... lion with ... snow storm. 11. Neither was ... woman who was from ... last Friday, or ... Tuesday before. 12. ... Saturday and ... Sunday were both productive days with four

sessions taking place each day. 13. Sessions of the General Assembly are held biennially, beginning on ... Wednesday after ... first Monday in ... January. 14. She left work on ... Thursday and no one heard word one. 15. She slept most of that day and ... next, and by ... Friday she was slept out. 16. Surely no one would come all ... way out here on ... Sunday to seek veterinary services from Alex – especially not dressed like that and on Easter morning. 17. ... next two letters mention her visit in ... January to her relatives in Memphis, Tennessee. 18. ... wet season, during which ... heavy rain falls almost daily, lasts from ... April to ... October, coinciding with ... south-west monsoon. 19. Then, in ... dreary month of ... February, came ... illness which closed my eyes and ears and plunged me into ... unconsciousness of ... new-born baby. 20. There's ... auction on ... Wednesday right here in town at one of them storage places. 21. We were set to run renewed sessions on ... Saturday but on ... Thursday Martha telephoned in tears. 22. Whenever I find myself growing grim about ... mouth; whenever it is ... damp, drizzly November in my soul; then, I account it high time to get to sea as soon as I can.

## 6.5 ARTICLES WITH NAMES OF TIMES OF THE DAY AND NIGHT

§ 48 Names of times of the day and night are used without any article in the following cases:

1) When they denote **'light'** or **'darkness'**.

e.g. *Dusk* fell without my noticing it.

2) After the prepositions **'at'**, **'after'**, **'before'**, **'by'**, **'till'**, **'until'**, **'towards'**, **'past'**.

e.g. *By day* he is a banker, but *by night* he sings in a club.

The parties usually take place *at night*.

I don't think he went to sleep *until dawn*.

We need to set off long *before sunrise*.

3) In the function of a predicative.

e.g. It was *dusk*, but the men were still at sea.

4) When these nouns are modified by nouns denoting days of the week or the words **'yesterday'** or **'tomorrow'**.

e.g. I'm seeing Bob *tomorrow afternoon*.

Police say the incident took place at around 9 o'clock *yesterday evening*.

**Note 1** Compare: *'We met on Saturday night'* (=last Saturday night) and *'We met on a Saturday night'* (=some Saturday night).

5) If they are modified by the adjectives **'late'**, **'early'**, **'last'**, or **'next'**.

e.g. Did you watch the football on TV *last night*?

6) In the combinations of adverbial character *all day (long)*; *all night (long)*; *day after day*; *day in, day out*; *from dawn till dusk*; *from morning till night*; *morning, noon, and night*; *night after night*; *day and night (night and day)*; *from day to day*; **b u t** *all through the day/night*.

e.g. It's been raining *morning, noon, and night* since we arrived.

It snowed *all night long*.

He had worked *from dawn till dusk* without a break.

I'm sick of doing the same thing *day after day*.

7) There is a tendency to use the nouns denoting parts of the day without any article in attributive 'of'-phrases. Yet, the definite article is used when a particular day, night, etc. is meant.

e.g. He always woke up with the first sounds *of morning*.  
He woke up with the first sounds *of the morning*.

8) There is no article with the nouns '**morning**', '**day**' and '**dawn**' when they are used as subject to the verb '**break**' and word combination '**be at hand**'; the same is true of the nouns '**evening**', '**night**', '**dusk**' when they are followed by the verbs '**fall**', '**gather**', '**set in**', '**come**', and word combination '**be at hand**'.

e.g. As *dawn broke*, queues of people began to form at all the border crossings.

§ 49 Names of times of the day and night are used with the indefinite article if they are modified by descriptive attributes.

e.g. She came home exhausted after *a hard day* at the office.  
There was *a glorious sunrise* over the mountains.

§ 50 Nouns denoting times of the day and night are used with the definite article in the following cases:

1) When a specific night or day, etc. is meant (the limitation is mostly clear from the context or situation; sometimes a limiting attribute is used).

e.g. The rain had stopped and *the night* was starry.

2) When these nouns are used in a generic sense.

e.g. He spent *the morning* working at his novel and *the afternoon* walking in the fields.

3) After the prepositions '**in**', '**during**', and '**through**'.

e.g. The restaurant is only open *during the day*.  
We could still just see the hills *in the twilight*.

**Note 1** After the preposition '**for**' both the definite and indefinite articles are possible depending on the meaning.

e.g. I must go to Sheffield *for the day* (=the day is specified).  
I must go to Sheffield *for a day* (=for one day; it is not specified which day it is).

4) When these nouns are preceded by the pronoun '**other**'.

e.g. I met Andy in Oxford Street *the other day*. (=recently)  
I went round to see her *the other night*. (=a few nights ago):

Exercise 131. Explain the use of articles with nouns denoting parts of the day.

1. It was almost ... noon. 2. 'Lewis! What are you doing at this time of ... night?' I heard the well-known voice. 3. I sat all ... night reading. 4. On ... evening of the departure the whole village turned out to give us the promised farewell dinner. 5. He used to spend ... morning lying about the beach. 6. Toward ... midnight he saw the gleam of many lights. 7. It was ... high noon when I woke. 8. ... twilight was

falling when they came back to the great city. 9. At ten o'clock on ... hot September evening he strolled idly down the street. 10. And in ... afternoon I used to lie alone, and watch the sun get lower and lower. 11. He always slept late on ... Sunday morning. 12. It was not ... warm afternoon. 13. I made my speech ... yesterday night. 14. ... day was hot and muggy. 15. It was early in ... morning that a loud knock at the door took me out of bed. 16. ... day broke cold and windy. 17. The sun rose heralding the break of ... day. 18. We returned late in ... afternoon. 19. It was ... late afternoon when we returned. 20. Now and then, a low roll of thunder broke ... night. 21. ... evening fell; lights began to appear in the windows. 22. It is pleasant to go for a stroll on such ... evening. 23. The elevator was closed for ... night and she slowly walked up the two flights of stairs. 24. We are expecting them towards ... evening. 25. He spent ... restless night, thinking of what could be done. 26. In ... winter they used to plan what they would do on ... warm day in ... summer. 27. Have you got enough wood for ... winter? 28. It was ... wild and snowy winter. 29. ... sky was still dark to ... east, but it would soon be ... dawn. 30. In ... past when they had come to ... country in ... summer he had taken ... rest from ... research. 31. ... morning was bright and sunny. 32. It all happened on ... bright and sunny morning. 33. When ... morning came we were already far out in the sea. 34. It was ... early morning; the sun had just risen. 35. It was ... night still, but ... stars were pale in ... sky, and ... day was at ... hand. 36. It was ... August night of ... extreme beauty, ... moon was just about to rise over ... hills. Coming down ... street, George had noticed that it was ... clear night with ... full moon and he insisted on going to the Embankment to see ... moonlight on the Thames. 37. It was ... perfect night and ... moon was just rising.

Exercise 132. Use the proper article. Pay attention to the use of the article with nouns denoting the parts of the day.

1. It was ... hot day and there were many flies in ... room. 2. At ... dusk, on ... evening of St Valentine's Day Boldwood sat down to ... supper as usual. 3. ... morning was perfect but there was ... suggestion of ... approaching storm in ... air. 4. It was ... blue night with ... full moon hanging over ... city. 5. ... day had been fine and warm, but at ... coming of ... night ... air grew cold. 6. Even in ... broad day she looks beautiful. 7. He awoke in ... morning, feeling that something was wrong. 8. Don't give me ... milk. – You know I hate it at this time of ... day. 9. It was mad, she knew, to let him go and play ... organ at this hour of ... night. 10. On ... day of his departure we had no classes. 11. On ... warm September evening he strolled idly to ... river. 12. ... dawn was breaking among ... olives, silvering their still leaves. 13. I came to Warley on ... wet September morning. 14. It was ... pleasant evening, warm and still. 15. When we started it was already ... morning. 16. ... next day, which was Friday, we got them all together, and met in ... evening to pack. 17. I feared to see him on ... day which followed this sleepless night. 18. The expected Monday was ... wild, wet morning. 19. ... night was cloudy and still very dark. 20. ... next day his knee was badly swollen. 21. He spent most of ... evening in ... morning-room, playing ... bridge. 22. It was ... worse-than-usual night.

Exercise 133. Insert articles where necessary.

1. Outside it was ... night. 2. It was ... warm summer night. 3. ... night outside seemed very quiet. 4. It was ... foggy evening in November. 5. During ... evening we played innumerable games of piquet. 6. It was ... evening, and he was walking across the school grounds on his way home. 7. He wondered what hour it was. ... sun seemed to indicate ... late morning. 8. I think it's going to be ... fine morning, after all. 9. ... morning was cold and sharp and sunny. 10. It is ... early morning. 11. We are going to have ... ideal night. 12. ... night being sharp and frosty, we trembled from ... head to ... foot. 13. It was early in ... afternoon. 14. ... night was ... windy one, with broken clouds drifting swiftly across ... face of ... three-quarter moon. 15. ... night came and he sent his sadness into his sleep. 16. I was up at six in ... morning. 17. She has had ... bad night, probably ... rather delirious night. 18. ... machines at ... factory were in perpetual motion ... day arid ... night. 19. Arthur did not pass ... sleepless night; he slept long and well, for ... sleep comes to ... perplexed, if ... perplexed are only weary enough. 20. It was about ten o'clock at ... night. 21. ... fine September afternoon was dying fast. 22. I persuaded him to stay ... night with me, and I put him into my own bed. 23. It was ... morning after Roger had talked to me in Park, and Margaret and I were sitting at breakfast. 24. ... day was by this time approaching; ... West was dim, ... East beginning to gleam. 25. On ... bright January morning ... telephones kept ringing in my office. 26. I cannot describe to you ... intense silence of ... night. 27. I shall not forget ... evening I spent with him. I had not intended to stay more than ... hour, but he insisted that I should spend ... night. 28. He painted and he read, and in ... evening, when it was dark, they sat together on ... veranda, smoking and looking at ... night. 29. It was as lovely ... morning as one could desire. 30. It was ... glorious night. ... moon had sunk, and left ... quiet earth alone with ... stars. 31. Nell dropped ... curtsey, and told him they were ... poor travellers who sought ... shelter for ... night. ... school master told them that they were welcome to remain under his roof till ... morning. 32. Every day I was up at ... dawn, clearing, planting, working, on my house, and at ... night when I threw myself on my bed it was to sleep like ... log till ... morning.

Exercise 134. Supply the required articles, paying special attention to the nouns indicating parts of the day.

1. It was nearly ... midnight, and Margaret rose to go. 2. It was ... early morning when ... train pulled into ... station. 3. Outside was ... cold, drizzling twilight. 4. It was ... Saturday morning, and ... weekend guests were coming. 5. It was ... grey, cold day. By ... nightfall, it would rain. 6. We got back to ... inn as ... night was falling. 7. I paid my first visit to them on ... clear cold February night. 8. Martha's talent for sleeping was extraordinary. If nobody went in to awaken her in ... morning she would sleep till ... noon, till two o'clock in ... afternoon, even if she had gone to bed early ... evening before. 9. Charles was in a hurry to get back home by ... midnight. 10. Towards ... evening he called at their house, but found no one at home. 11. On ... Sunday morning ... weather was showery. 12. ... last evening the sirens went again. 13. She hastened out of ... house and to ... barn. ... evening was coming



on. 14. All ... night ... snow fell. 15. Each day, coming to ... office, I looked forward to ... evening. 16. It was ... late afternoon and their shadows lay long across ... road. 17. It was ... summer afternoon, ... last day of the Bar final examination. 18. ... evening flowed on. I sat working in ... late summer twilight. 19. As he drove me home through ... June dusk, James suddenly told me that he had left his wife. 20. He pulled aside each curtain to make sure that ... window behind it was latched for ... night. 21. His secretary said that Kevin was free in ... evening. 22. ... day passed quietly. 23. Robert decided to kill a great many birds with one stone by spending ... night in London. 24. ... night was still, and almost tepid. 25. ... couple next door wouldn't leave until ... morning. 26. They played tennis and ping-pong in ... day, and in ... evening, in accordance with ... stiff routine of ... place, they sat down to poker. 27. Surely nothing could be going on there so late at ... night. 28. He let me sit up ... night with him and give him ... things to stop ... pain. 29. It was ... night, but ... street was brightly lit.

Exercise 135. Fill in the blanks with articles if necessary before names of times of the day and night.

1. Willie ordered brandy for both of them after the coffee, what with paying for lunch and all the eating and drinking of ... evening, Gretchen figured, that it must have cost Willie at least fifty dollars since ... noon. 2. We spent the time from ... midnight till four in ... morning at the Air Ministry. 3. Indeed ... night itself is only a faint dusting over of ... day, a wash of silver through the still warm fold of ... afternoon. 4. Major Andrew Fontine sat rigidly at his desk, listening to the sounds of ... morning. 5. But meanwhile there isn't either one of them and I'm in the car in the rain at ... night. 6. He heard Antoine say accusingly, 'Susan, you said you wouldn't be back until ... dusk.' 7. It was ... early morning and the air was grateful and cool. 8. It was ... Saturday morning. He had been too busy to telephone his sister all week and he felt guilty about it. 9. Oh, Eva has told me you play tennis. Perhaps we can have a game or two ... tomorrow evening. 10. Marion went out into ... still smooth night. There was no moon, but already the sky was silver dusted with stars. 11. ... All morning this went on and long into ... afternoon. 12. No, no, let us play, for it is yet ... day, and we cannot go to sleep. 13. Accordingly, he determined to have vengeance and remained till ... daylight in an attitude of deep thought. 14. Several times during ... morning the woman came into the bathroom. 15. Every day I was up at ... dawn, clearing, planting, working on my house, and at ... night when I threw myself on my bed I was to sleep like a log all through ... night. 16. Ever since ... night his mother had made that crazy speech about thirty thousand dollars, he had felt sorry for his father. 17. She didn't feel as ... evening progressed that she was getting to know Dr. D. any better. 18. She intends to spend ... night at the lake residence. 19. All ... morning, from the first rest period, they went up and down the veranda, walking with their slow tread, calling gaily to those on bed-rest. 20. It was ... cloudy afternoon with an Italian butcher selling a pound of meat to a very old woman. 21. She existed, aged 19, seated in front of the mirror on ... March night in the middle of the century because her mother had failed to live up to her destiny. 22. On ... day of her mother's

funeral it had been blowing a gale, with sleet. 23. Adrian smiled, remembering ... morning after that terrible night in San Francisco. 24. It was pleasant to drive back in ... late afternoon. 25. And confidence is a quality I prize, although it has come to me a little late in ... day. 26. Do you remember ... afternoon when I sprained my ankle and you carried me home in your arms in ... twilight? 27. If you are looking for Mr. de Winter we had a message from Cannes to say he would not be back before ... midnight. 28. At last ... evening came, and with it hunger and a debate with himself as to how he should spend ... night. 29. It was ... unpromising afternoon, already half dark, ... afternoon for early tea and entertainment on television. 30. ... days at the shack passed in a happy succession. 31. I'll be sitting here all ... night working an adding machine while you're raking in the loot year after year. 32. The cherries had been plucked at ... midnight and the coldness of the moon had entered into them. 33. Jan woke on ... Saturday morning to a world thrilling with expectancy. 34. Bart sat beside her through ... night, holding her hand in his, as though his strength could hold her back. 35. ... following evening, having refused Elliot's telephoned offer to fetch me, I arrived quite safely at Mrs. Bradley's house. 36. Mrs. Pearce says you're going to give me some to wear in bed at ... night different from what I wore in ... daytime. 37. There is a narrow trail on the other side of the woods; we'll be back before ... dawn. 38. The ministry has assured me the transition can be concluded by ... early afternoon. 39. He was a hired bodyguard, protecting the women while their men worked by ... day or were absent from home at ... night. 40. Vittorio had reached the RAP airfield at Lakenheath late on ... previous night, ... first day of the new decade. 41. In ... dull twilight of ... winter afternoon she came to the end of the long road which had begun ... night Atlanta fell. 42. They sped south-east on the main track through Varese into Castiglione. They didn't wait for ... nightfall, nothing mattered now. 43. The bed has already been made up for ... night.

Exercise 136. Translate into English paying special attention to the use of articles with names of times of the day and night.

А) 1. Утро было холодное и ветреное. 2. Был теплый летний вечер. 3. Настала ночь, и путешественники решили отдохнуть. 4. Он пишет с утра до ночи. 5. Он переночевал у приятеля. 6. Он провел бессонную ночь и был очень бледен. 7. Приятно поехать за город в ясный летний день. 8. И днем и ночью он думал об одном. 9. Было прекрасное утро – солнечное и тихое. 10. Было раннее утро, и все в доме еще спали. 11. Мы решили расположиться на ночь у реки. 12. День только что занялся, и воздух был чист и прохладен. 13. Было далеко за полдень, когда мы остановились на привал. 14. Это случилось одним пасмурным сентябрьским утром. 15. Ненастный день подходил к концу, закат обещал хорошую погоду. 16. Рано утром спортсмены ходили на речку купаться. 17. Вечер был влажный и прохладный. 18. Был холодный и ветреный день. 19. Мы приедем в Киев рано утром, проведем день в городе, поздно вечером сядем на поезд и на следующий день к ночи будем на месте. 20. Была уже ночь; но к счастью, это была летняя ночь, и погода стояла ясная.

В) 1. Пойдем. Нельзя терять время. Мы должны вернуться до рассвета. 2. «Никогда еще не было такого чудесного дня», – думала Джен, медленно идя по веранде навстречу Дорин. 3. «Днем спи, – шепнула Скарлетт Тому. – Двигайся ночью». 4. На другое утро после игры в бридж г-жа Ван Хоппер проснулась с больным горлом. 5. Ночью задняя веранда казалась даже более ужасающей. 6. К полудню они пришли на пляж. 7. В течение всей ночи он неоднократно звонил на квартиру Эндрю в Вирджинии. 8. Я подошел к окну, открыл шторы. Был теплый весенний день. 9. Он не торопился туда попасть, так как у него была целая ночь впереди. 10. К утру Джейн проснулась от давившего на нее кошмарного ужаса. 11. Было около десяти часов вечера. 12. Когда я был в вашем возрасте, меня не могли стащить с кровати в такое утро. 13. Ночь казалась очень тихой. 14. На рассвете Барт тихо выскользнул из комнаты. 15. Я думаю о тебе и днем и ночью. 16. Весь день и всю ночь шел снег, и город начал страдать от общего затора в уличном движении. 17. Был теплый полдень. 18. Я иду спать. У меня был трудный день. 19. На Еве было то же свободное длинное черное платье, в которое она была одета в день приезда Майкла. 20. Ты напоминаешь мне о вечере, когда я тебя впервые увидел. 21. Том ушел от них поздно ночью. Ночь была тихая и звездная. 22. На следующее утро Барт пошел навестить доктора Лойда. 23. Я никогда в жизни не смогу забыть того утра, когда Хелен постучалась ко мне в дверь, промокшая до костей и дрожащая, и сказала, что ты не впустил ее в дом. 24. День был исключительно жаркий. 25. Она не видела его больше месяца, с той ночи, когда они уехали в Нью-Йорк. 26. Днем и ночью я хочу знать, где ты. 27. Я хочу видеть вас завтра утром. 28. Она ходила в лес каждое утро вскоре после восхода солнца. 29. Он заканчивает дежурство в полночь. 30. Когда на следующее утро она проснулась в восемь, Хенсон уже ушел. 31. Она еще не оделась для предстоящего вечера, а сидела с ним в своей рабочей одежде, брюках и свитере.

## 6.6 ARTICLES WITH LONGER PERIODS

§ 51 Words like ‘day’, ‘week’, ‘month’, ‘year’, and so on, are typically count nouns and so can be used with both the definite and indefinite articles.

e.g. Could we meet earlier in *the month*?

*A week* later she woke up screaming.

She had loved him for over *a year*.

We’ve hardly seen each other over *the past month*.

The noun ‘week’ has two meanings. It can be used to refer to ‘any period of seven days’, as above, or to ‘the five days from Monday to Friday, when most people do work’. The expression ‘during the week’ can be used to mean ‘on the days between weekends’.

e.g. We’re seeing Jim *a week* on Tuesday (=seven days from next Tuesday).

She stays in the city during *the week*.

The adjectives ‘last’ and ‘next’ modifying the nouns ‘day’, ‘week’, ‘month’, ‘year’ mean ‘the day/week/month/year before or after the present day/week/month/year’.

- e.g. Profits are lower than *last year*.  
 He will meet his uncle in Geneva *next week*.  
 A man was arrested *last month* in connection with the robbery.

Exercise 137. Fill in the blanks with articles if necessary before the words ‘**day**’, ‘**week**’, ‘**month**’, ‘**year**’.

1. ‘I gave you enough drugs that you should be asleep until ... next week,’ Jake said, joining Han. 2. ‘I remember ... kidnapping from ... last week,’ Betsy said as she brushed past me. 3. ‘That’s been ... every day for ... past month,’ he said with some impatience. 4. ‘There’s ... man on ... corner with ... sign saying ... world is going to end, but ... sign’s dated ... last year,’ Jule said. 5. ‘Why is that man lying there at this time of ... day?’ asked ... prince. 6. ... full week passed before we had our answer. 7. ... mere week later she received ... call requesting ... interview. 8. As ... day of their flight neared, Carmen tried to stay busy with packing and taking care of Destiny. 9. Five days ... week Giddon left ... house before anyone was up. 10. ... Friday was usually ... hectic day, with people being released, so she was unable to leave early. 11. From that vantage point, if you had tried to look ... fifty years ahead to what ... world would be like in ... year 2500 BC, you would have expected very little change. 12. Handling this ... month after ... month seemed ... insurmountable task. 13. He came up to ... cabin ... week before he was leaving for ... seminary, four or five years later. 14. He drove these to ... pastures on ... hills and watched them ... day after ... day while they fed on ... short green grass. 15. He practically made me call my brother and now I’m going up to Weston Priory in Vermont and spend ... week with him. 16. He’d only spent one night there ... last month before Sasha flung him to ... side in favor of ... demoness. 17. However, if you had been born in 1992, turning twenty ... year I am writing this, and tried now to imagine ... life in 2062, you would suppose that everything is going to change. 17. I graduate ... next month, so I’ll let her know with ... invitation. 18. I looked through ... whole month of ... January but there was nothing about ... girl named Annie dying. 19. I realized there was ... electricity between us from ... day I met him. 20. I see here you’ve only been working in pediatrics for ... month, but you have ... impressive job history for ... girl your age. 21. I’d voiced this concern to Betsy throughout ... week and I knew she was of ... like mind. 22. In less than ... month in ... early spring our lives were totally changed and we loved it. 23. It was summer, ... wonderful time of ... year in New Hampshire and on ... Friday, ... three weeks after her first visit, Julie returned to Keene. 24. Katie pretended to listen as Hannah discussed ... Paris fashion show she’d attended and ... month in Monte Carlo she’d spend in ... January to escape ... coldest weather. 25. ... last week I visited ... beautiful art store. 26. Little was said of our clandestine activities of ... past year as we simply enjoyed each other’s company. 27. Not even ... year had passed since ... stabbing, but he had been doing well. 28. She had been lying around all ... day catching up on her sleep while Carmen worked on her bedroom. 29. So let’s say ... large corn farms all have ... great year and ... bountiful crop comes forth. 30. ... Sunday dawned ... sunny hot July day. 31. ... balmy weather of ... Thanksgiving Day had given way to ... frosty day after. 32. ...

day before they were scheduled to leave, Alex came ... home from ... work and asked to see ... tickets. 33. There's ... theory he may have spent time behind bars and been released ... year or so ago. 34. They married ... month later at ... small church in Bartlesville and Adrienne moved to ... farm. 35. ... year after ... year ... oak-tree bore so ... acorns fell ... year by ... year and sprouted.

## 6.7 ARTICLES WITH SPECIFIC PERIODS

§ 52 Names of decades, centuries and historic periods, which refer to only one particular (unique) period, have the definite article, for example: *'the nineties'*, *'the nineteenth century'*, *'the Iron Age'*.

e.g. In Greece and China *the Bronze Age* began before 3000 BC.

The nouns **'past'**, **'present'**, and **'future'** generally have the definite article.

e.g. Archaeology helps us to understand *the past*.

These young people are the leaders of *the future*.

When modified by descriptive attributes, the nouns **'past'**, **'present'**, and **'future'** are used with the indefinite article.

e.g. We discovered that the author had *a murky past*.

The people of the world face *an uncertain future*.

The indefinite article can be used with the nouns **'past'** and **'future'** when talking about the life of one particular person.

e.g. Joe has *a future* in athletics.

Tom is a man with *a past*.

The nouns **'present'** and **'future'** can be used after **'at'** and **'in'** respectively with no article.

e.g. *In future*, please ask before you borrow my car. (=from the present time continuing forwards in time)

*At present*, the outlook for any kind of negotiated solution appears bleak.  
(=now)

**Note 1** Mark the difference in meaning between the expressions **'in (the) future'**, i.e. *'from the present time continuing forwards in time'*, and **'in the future'**, i.e. *'in the time that follows the present time'*.

e.g. Check if the computer can be upgraded *in the future*.

*'In (the) future,'* he spoke crisply, 'I'd appreciate it if you consulted me before inviting guests into my home.'

Exercise 138. Fill in the blanks with articles if necessary before the nouns denoting special periods.

1. ... Renaissance is ... period from ... 14th to ... 17th century, considered ... bridge between ... Middle Ages and ... modern history. 2. ... wild-eyed, crazed techno-optimist of ... nineteenth century concluded that in fifty years there would be ... telephone in every town in America. 3. ... city occupying approximately ... same site had been ... capital of one of ... principalities into which China was divided some centuries before ... Christian era. 4. And as I look to ... past and ... present, I

see two phenomena that especially drive my optimism. 5. He was right, to ... degree. It isn't ... past that I'm pitching you, Alex. 6. Her life was on ... new course now, and ... future looked brighter than it ever had. 7. His size was inadequate for any hopes of ... serious basketball future but he was obviously ... fine athlete. 8. In ... late seventies and ... early eighties scaling these challenging surfaces really caught on. 9. It was time to put ... past where it belonged. 10. Its reawakening of ... arts derived chiefly from seeking to recapture something thought lost from ... past Golden Age. 11. As we move forward in ... information age, ... governments will likely encounter ... new riddles that need to be solved. 12. ... events of ... last few days coupled with ... dread of ... unknown future were taking their toll. 13. ... first error is to assert that ... history unfolds in ... basically linear fashion, that there is ... fundamental continuity between ... past, present, and future. 14. ... Golden Age was first created, which without any avenger spontaneously without ... law cherished fidelity and rectitude. 15. ... present is better than ... past. 16. ... problem is ... further I go into ... past, ... less accuracy I can attain. 17. This all began to change in ... twentieth century for ... variety of reasons. 18. What kind of ... future could she offer ... child? 19. Towards ... close of ... Palaeozoic era France had become ... part of ... great continent. 20. Allen was ... past and Yancey ... future. 21. Now you have ... Julie, ... nice home and ... future looking you in ... face. 22. 'Nothing is more dangerous than being without ... food,' declared ... horse, with ... sniff at ... rebuke of his young master; 'and just at ... present no one can tell whether there are any oats in this queer country or not.'

Exercise 139. Revision: supply the required articles:

1. No on both counts but he's been ... person of interest in ... past, because of his associates. 2. My brother takes ... affair with ... utmost seriousness. 3. It was ... blazing hot August morning and I tried to beg myself off. 4. I was surprised at ... readiness with which she agreed to my suggestion. 5. Then there are ... people who reason ... future will be better. 6. She looked at me with her keen eyes: 'You're not ... sort of ... boy to be satisfied, are you?' 7. ... evening was falling, and as I turned back towards ... house its upper windows shone like blazing shields in the last of ... sunlight. 8. His wife, ... pretty little thing, was ... actress for ... moment out of ... job. 6. It was ... wet, warm summer day and ... windows of ... drawing room stood open. 10. ... vegetation of ... Palaeozoic era, till towards its close, was apparently remarkably homogeneous all over ... world. 11. My father's hours became more irregular; sometimes he stayed in ... house in ... morning and sometimes both he and my mother were out all ... day. 12. ... last week I visited ... beautiful art store. 13. It is generally regarded to have ended in 1564, ... year in which Michelangelo died and Shakespeare was born, ushering in ... Modern Age. 14. In ... morning, grey and dark, we sat over our breakfast. 15. Robie examined his father with ... dispassionate attention he gave everything. 16. He then went to Hamburg where ... friend of his was ... manager of the theatre. 17. Alfonso looked to be ... year or so older than Jonathan. 18. It was a little after seven on ... summer morning. 19. I have ... great admiration for him. 20. I'll tell you all about it ... tomorrow night. 21. He got up and

soaked ... tea towel with ... cold water and put it on ... man's face. ... man brushed it off, but it had had ... reviving effect. 22. ... bungalow cost as much as to rent for ... weekend as ... month of her apartment, but she'd never been happier. 23. He was ... son of ... distinguished soldier. He was given ... first-class education. 24. ... only persons present were Mrs. Perger and ... old friend of ... family, ... Colonel Legrand, ... army doctor who had been ... brother officer of ... Robert's father. 25. 'I suppose,' he said, 'you are ... young man who wants to come here as ... pupil, aren't you?' 26. Few or no words were spoken; and ... silent ship, as if manned by ... painted sailors in ... wax, ... day after ... day tore on through all ... swift madness and gladness of ... demoniac waves. 27. They ran from ... room to ... room examining them with ... curiosity of ... children. 28. We spent ... next three hours talking and drinking ... coffee; then I had to hurry off to catch ... last bus. I missed it by ... few minutes, and had ... five-mile walk back home. I didn't mind this; it was ... cold, starry night, and ... air sometimes had ... sweet smell – as if, I thought, it blew from ... icecream factory. 29. Then there can be ... week, ... month, ... year, ... decade, and ... century without ... war. 30. Grant took up ... receiver with ... eagerness of which he was not conscious. 31. Less than ... week later she passed another milestone. 32. As ... students would do, we had ... interminable conversations about ... art and ... literature. 33. Jeffrey Byrne spent ... Tuesday and ... Wednesday in ... early March in Scranton.

Exercise 140. Revision: supply the required articles:

1. They watched him in ... nervous silence. 2. Why go through all that pain again, when she had almost succeeded in putting him in ... past – almost, but not quite. 3. It was ... dark night, with no moon. 4. It gave me ... intense satisfaction that they all enjoyed my article. 5. Sofia gripped it, ... touch enough to reveal ... future like Traci's, filled with ... love and ... joy. 6. In ... morning when he awoke, he found his breath frozen on ... blanket. 7. Because he had succeeded in bearing ... unbearable he was not ... man he had been ... year ago. 8. He soon learned that Grey was ... head of ... department. 9. ... state commissions, since their establishment in ... seventies and ... eighties, had increased their functions and influence. 10. I paid my first visit to his house on ... clear February night. 11. ... expedition started in ... autumn of 1967. 12. In ... garden there was ... patch of ... longish grass, bordered by ... flower-bed, and some raspberry canes; I was specially fond of ... trees – ... three pear trees by ... side wall and ... two apple trees in ... middle of ... grass. 13. There is ... consensus that ... Renaissance began in Florence, in ... 14th century. 14. ... magnificent spring afternoon was already deepening into ... dusk. 15. In ... winter this region is deep with ... snow. 16. He was ... bachelor with ... small income. 17. Isn't it nice that ... winter is behind us? 18. This has to be my favorite time of ... year, and ... one time Lon promises not to dissect our credit card bills. 19. They had better finish ... work before ... winter. 20. Her plan, while brilliant when plotted ... past month, didn't seem quite so wonderful right now. 21. ... house must be cold in ... winter. 22. Philip called at our house on ... Tuesday afternoon. 23. That's why I came here ... last month, to find ... group and deal with them. 24. We lay lazily,

looking through ... reeds at ... glassy water. I stretched to pluck ... blade of ... grass. ... turf was rough and warm beneath my knees. 25. ... winter set in early and unexpectedly with ... heavy fall of ... snow. 26. ... day Jonathan went to camp, she began working on her plan. 27. Then ... spring came, late, cold and rainy. 28. ... letter began so tritely as though ... surgeon Dr. Larry Skeen were still ... small boy writing home from ... vacation camp. 29. It was nearly ... sundown. 30. In ... moment he was quiet again and became oppressive. 31. We came to Boston ... last Thursday, and Mr. Anagnos was delighted to see me, and he hugged and kissed me. 32. Tom was trembling from ... head to ... foot with ... excitement. 33. He went out shooting every morning in ... autumn. 34. They are invaluable to make ... flags flutter on ... still day, when there is no wind. 35. 'I'll race ... miserable wooden donkey any day in ... week!' cried the cab-horse.

## 6.8 ARTICLES WITH NAMES OF MEALS

§ 53 Names of meals (*breakfast, brunch, lunch, luncheon, dinner, supper, tea, high/meat tea*) are generally used without any article when you are talking in general about the standard meals of the day.

e.g. They were having afternoon *tea* in the garden.  
What did you have for *breakfast* this morning?

If you are talking about individual meals, or when names of meals denote the food that is eaten, you can use the nouns '**breakfast**', '**lunch**', etc. as count nouns with an appropriate article.

We use the definite article when names of meals are modified by a limiting attribute or limitation is clear from the context or the situation.

e.g. "Do you remember *the breakfast in the park*?" Susan asked.

The indefinite article is used when names of meals are modified by descriptive attributes.

e.g. I'm never hungry enough for *a full breakfast*.  
We stopped for *a light lunch*.

Names of meals may be used in a specialized sense, denoting either portions of food served at restaurants, cafes, etc., or a special formal occasion (with the nouns '**lunch**' and '**dinner**'). In this case they are used as countable nouns and follow the rules of the use of articles for countable nouns.

e.g. In this hotel you pay for a room and *a breakfast*.  
They held *a benefit dinner* to raise money for the hospital.

Exercise 141. Explain the use of articles with nouns denoting meals.

1. ... lunch was ready and we went in. 2. I'm sorry I can't offer you ... dinner. 3. I'll try to give you ... decent lunch. 4. Mother told me to go out and buy some eggs for ... lunch. 5. After ... light lunch everyone relaxed for a time. 6. He ordered ... modest dinner. 7. On the evening of departure the whole village turned out to give us ... promised farewell dinner. 8. I arranged to give ... lunch for them. 9. I was having ... tea with her. 10. I want you to have ... nice breakfast. 11. We were talking about it



before ... dinner. 12. I was on my way to make final arrangements about ... dinner I was giving that evening. 13. It did not take one very long to have ... dinner in 1943. There wasn't enough of ... dinner. 14. Charles and I were alone at ... lunch. 15. After this splendid performance they sat down to ... supper. 16. They had ... filling but not-too-nourishing breakfast. 17. They decided upon ... light supper. 18. ... supper was fish and chips. 19. At last ... dinner came to an end, but the three went on sitting for a while over their coffee. 20. I made his acquaintance at ... official dinner. 21. The consul gave ... luncheon in honour of our delegation. 22. He invited me to a restaurant and treated me to ... expensive supper. 23. We usually have ... dinner at four.

Exercise 142. Insert articles where necessary.

1. He said he had letters to write and if I would allow him, would remain in his room till ... dinner was ready. 2. He came in one morning when I was having ... breakfast on ... terrace of ... hotel and introduced himself. 3. I saw to it that he had ... good dinner. 4. We had ... cold bacon for ... lunch that day. There was not much of it. I took it to be ... bacon we had not eaten for ... breakfast. But on ... clean dish with parsley it looked rather neat. 5. Mr. Clay settled back in his chair, savoring his drink, expecting ... good dinner. 6. ... dinner was very sound. 7. Come and have ... tea on ... deck. 8. They had ... supper in ... silence. 9. ... little expedition down ... river was delightful, and ... little room overlooking ... river into which they were shown for ... dinner was delightful. 10. In ... tiny dining-room, we were having ... excellent dinner, cooked by Mary Osbaldiston. 11. She began to dress for ... dinner to which she had been invited. 12. When he arrived ... famous Contract was at ... dinner. 13. When they arrived and mounted ... stairs, Stefan behaved as usual, and soon they were eating ... supper which Jan had prepared. 14. He assisted her in setting forth ... neat luncheon, consisting of ... cold chicken, ... ham and ... tarts. 15. ... dinner was ... grand one. 16. I shall be glad to see you at ... lunch at half past one. 17. He had given me ... dinner, and ... good one. 18. That evening Denny arrived, as he had promised, for ... supper. 19. Tonight they are giving him ... farewell dinner and everyone will be there. 20. I've got ... lecture at nine, so I should want ... breakfast at ... quarter past eight. 21. He had ... miserable lunch all alone. 22. She smiled at him. 'Wash your hands and clean up ... supper is ready.' 23. I do think you might have caught ... earlier train from Cambridge. I cooked ... special dinner for you to welcome you come. All your favourite things. 24. 'You sit down,' she said. 'I'll cook you ... big breakfast.' 25. At this point ... maid announced that ... supper was served and Gilbert took his departure. 26. I was anxious to have ... good comfortable breakfast ready before I called Joe. 27. Sometimes he took me out to ... dinner or ... theatre. 28. After ... supper she proposed ... stroll in ... park to enjoy ... pleasant evening. 29. Bart waved his hand in ... ironic farewell. 'Thanks for ... breakfast.' 30. I'm going to find ... place for ... lunch. 31. There's ... bus after ... lunch. That suits you? 32. ... dinner was as good as it looked and smelled. 33. That's ... best dinner I've had in years. 34. He followed her into ... front room, where ... supper had been cleared from ... table. 35. 'Now about ... supper,' said John, after ...

excitement had died down. 36. I thought I might give ... little dinner next week – just for you and Denny and Hope.

Exercise 143. Supply articles for names of meals if necessary.

1. Before ... breakfast Michael entered Julia's room: 'The boys have gone off to play golf. They asked if they need come back to ... lunch. I told them that was all right.' 2. Shewasnot out to give the mother ... perfect Sunday night supper. 3. She picked at ... delicious breakfast Doreen had prepared for her, but she had no appetite for it. 4. I don't care for ... late dinner. 5. 'I guess I'll not try to go out today,' he said to Carrie at ... breakfast. 6. ... dinner lasted a long while and was great fun. 7. We sat in the library after ... dinner, and presently the curtains were drawn, and more logs thrown on to the fire. 8. We ordered hospital room service and sat crosslegged one on each end of the bed and shared ... big turkey dinner from the big snack tray between us. 9. No Forsyte has given ... dinner without providing a saddle of mutton. 10. Eva had been especially silent during ... dinner. 11. You don't think you swallowed a fish bone at ... tea? Do you? 12. As soon as he was dressed, she went into the library and sat down to ... light French breakfast. 13. I'm afraid I have to cancel ... dinner tonight. 14. He and the captain sat a long time over ... lunch. 15. I'm going to find a place for ... lunch. 16. She worked, after dressing, to arrange ... little breakfast for herself, and then advised with Minnie as to which way to look. 17. It was during the first part of ... dinner that he was very quiet. 18. As I sat at ... breakfast I looked out at the autumn mist dissolving in the early sunrise. 19. We were having ... excellent dinner, cooked by Mary Osbaldiston. 20. She stood waiting for the trolleybus to take her down to the city, where she was meeting Bart for ... supper. 21. I sometimes go down to New York and I might find the time to buy the child ... good dinner. 22. 'I haven't noticed that ... dinner is any different from usual,' he said. 23. He sat up, and having sipped some tea, turned over his letters. They contained the usual collection of cards, invitations to ... dinner, tickets for private views, programmes of charity concerts, and the like.

Exercise 144. Supply the required articles, paying special attention to the nouns denoting meals:

1. ... substantial tea was laid on ... table. 2. ... invitations to ... dinner for sixteen people were sent out. 3. He said he would have ... very good dinner on ... train. 4. Hudson talked more during ... dinner than was usual with him. 5. So after I had finished ... supper I came back along ... passage to ... empty dark front room. 6. 'Nevil is coming to ... dinner,' she added. 7. She intended to have ... glorious supper for my sake. 8. He was afraid he would be late for ... lunch. 9. But now and then Maude prepared ... dinner for him in ... apartment. 10. ... lunch was finished and soon I left. 11. She had been smoking incessantly since they finished ... supper. 12. ... tea came in almost at once. 13. She made ... long telephone call from ... lobby and ate ... quick lunch. 14. If he were kept late at ... official dinner she would work herself into ... fever of ... apprehension. 15. ... tea tasted of ... straw. 16. He was giving ... big lunch on ... following day and at ... end of ... week ... grand dinner.

17. ... tea was over. 18. I found her in ... kitchen, peeling ... potatoes for ... lunch. 19. But ... hot bath and ... good dinner fixed him up. 20. She smelled strongly of ... scent, but not so strongly as to disguise ... fact that she had eaten at ... dinner ... dish highly flavoured with ... garlic. 21. 'For ... lunch,' she said, 'we could have ... cold meat, ... tea, ... bread and butter, and ... jam.' 22. I parked in front of ... restaurant near ... road and went in for ... cold lunch. 23. '... dinner will be ready in ... few minutes,' she said.

Exercise 145. Fill in the blanks with articles in the following extract if necessary.

It might be useful to you to know what sort of meals English people have and how they behave at ... table, for ... people of one country behave rather differently from those of ... other. ... old proverb says, 'When in Rome, do as ... Romans do' and this is ... good advice.

In many English homes four meals are served: they are ... breakfast, ... lunch, ... tea and ... dinner. These are ... meals that are served in ... homes of ... well-to-do people.

... breakfast may be served any time from seven to nine. It consists of ... porridge (made of ... oats or ... barley, ... milk, ... sugar or ... salt), (21) ... bacon and eggs, ... buttered toast or ... bread-and-butter with ... marmalade. Instead of ... bacon and eggs, ... fish may be served. Either ... tea or ... coffee is drunk at ... breakfast.

... lunch comes at about one o'clock. It generally consists of ... cold meat, ... potatoes and ... salad made of ... lettuce, ... cucumber, ... tomatoes, ... carrots, ... beetroot, etc. On ... table are ... pepper, ... salt, ... mustard and sometimes ... vinegar. After that there is ... bread or ... biscuits and ... cheese. Most people drink ... water at lunch time, some drink ... beer or ... wine.

... afternoon tea, taken between four and five is ... most informal meal of ... day. If you are ... friend of ... family you may drop in for ... tea without ... invitation. Very often it is not served at ... table; ... members of ... family and ... visitors take ... tea in ... sitting-room. By the way do not help yourself to ... cake first; ... bread-and-butter first, then ... cake if there is any. Another piece of ... advice: do not put more than one piece of ... bread or ... cake on your plate at ... same time.

... dinner is ... most substantial meal of ... day and is ... very formal meal. Many people even wear special clothes for ... dinner, so if you are asked out to ... dinner you must find out whether you are expected to wear ... dinner suit. ... dinner is generally served about half-past seven. ... head of ... family sits at one end of ... table, his wife sits at ... other. If there is ... guest he generally sits in ... place of ... honour, which is at ... right of the lady of ... house. The first course is ... soup. Then comes ... fish; there is often ... knife and fork of ... special shape by each person for this course. If you are in ... unfamiliar surroundings, keep ... eye open for what ... others are doing. Remember ... proverb about ... Romans.

... next course is the most important; it generally consists of a joint of ... meat (... beef or ... lamb) or else ... leg of ... lamb or ... pork, or it may be ... chicken or

... duck. With it are served various vegetables, peas, beans, ... cabbage or ... cauliflower. Some sort of ... pudding is generally ... fourth course. To show that he has finished with ... course, ... person lays his knife and fork on his plate with ... handles towards him. After ... pudding ... table is cleared and ... dessert is brought. This is ... fruit of various kinds and ... nuts. ... Port (... red wine from Portugal) is passed round. At this stage ... ladies may get up and retire to ... drawing-room. When ... ladies rise, ... men get up too, out of ... respect, and resume their seats when ... ladies have left ... room.

It must not be imagined that all ... English people eat like this. More than 90% of ... English people have their dinner in ... middle of ... day. In most of ... houses ... meals are ... breakfast, ... dinner, ... tea and ... supper, which is ... cold meal for which nothing is cooked. All these meals are much simpler than those served in ... homes of ... rich.

Exercise 146. Fill in the blanks with articles.

### **English Tea**

... trouble with ... tea is that originally it was quite ... good drink.

So ... group of ... most eminent British scientists put their heads together, and made ... complicated biological experiments to find ... way of spoiling it.

To ... eternal glory of ... British science their labour bore ... fruit. They suggested that if you don't drink it clear, or with ... lemon or ... rum and ... sugar, but pour ... few drops of ... cold milk into it, and no sugar at all, ... desired object is achieved. Once this refreshing, aromatic, oriental beverage was successfully transformed into ... colourless and tasteless gargling-water, it suddenly became ... national drink of ... Great Britain and ... Ireland – still retaining ... high-sounding title ... tea.

There are ... occasions when you must not refuse ... cup of ... tea, otherwise you are judged ... exotic and barbarous bird without ... hope of ever being able to take your place in ... civilised society.

If you are invited to ... English home at five o'clock in ... morning you get ... cup of ... tea. It is either brought by ... heartily smiling hostess or ... almost malevolently silent maid.

Then you have ... tea for ... breakfast; then you have ... tea at eleven o'clock in ... morning; then after ... lunch; then you have ... tea for ... tea; then after ... supper; and again at eleven o'clock at ... night.

You definitely must not follow my example. I sleep at five o'clock in ... morning; I have ... coffee for ... breakfast; I drink ... innumerable cups of ... black coffee during ... day; I have ... most unorthodox and exotic teas even at ... tea-time.

... other day, for instance – I just mention it as ... terrifying example to show you how low some people can sink – I wanted ... cup of ... coffee and ... piece of ... cheese for ... tea. It was ... exceptionally hot day and my wife made some cold coffee and put it in ... refrigerator, where it froze and became one solid block. On ... other hand, she left ... cheese on ... kitchen table, where it melted. So I had ... piece of ... coffee and ... glass of ... cheese.

Exercise 147. Translate into English paying attention to the use of articles with names of meals.

А) 1. Мы позавтракали в восемь часов. Завтрак состоял из хлеба с маслом, сыра и кофе. 2. Не опаздывайте к обеду. 3. Обед еще не готов. 4. Наши знакомые пригласили нас на обед. 5. По субботам у них обычно бывают гости к ужину. 6. Мы заказали обед из трех блюд. 7. В этой столовой вы всегда можете получить горячий завтрак. 8. Иди скорей к столу, обед стынет. 9. Что у нас будет к ужину? 10. Я зайду после обеда.

В) 1. В прежнее время это был банкетный зал. Он и сейчас еще используется в особых случаях, таких, как праздничный обед или бал. 2. Подумай о том, сколько ты съел за завтраком (об огромном завтраке, который ты съел). 3. В такое прекрасное утро он не мог устоять перед искушением (красота утра соблазняла его) уйти из отеля вскоре после завтрака. 4. Они с Уолтером были приглашены на обед. 5. Во время обеда Сара не сказала ни слова. Она просто стояла, наблюдая за мной. 6. Она начала одеваться к обеду, на который была приглашена. 7. Они вернулись домой только к девяти часам и съели легкий ужин. 8. «Пошли ко мне Шейлу Уэбб». – «Она еще не вернулась с обеда, госпожа Мартиндейл». 9. Я хотела есть. Пора было обедать. 10. Я угощу вас здешним обедом. Моя жена прекрасно готовит. 11. До свидания. Я опоздаю на второй завтрак, если задержусь. 12. «Вот они наконец-то, – воскликнула она. – Как раз вовремя к чаю!» 13. Когда все уселись пить чай, миссис Марч сказала: «У меня есть для вас приятный сюрприз после чая». 14. За завтраком Джен едва притронулась к еде. 15. За обедом они разговаривали о свадьбе. 16. Она слышала, как Керри сказала, что Герствуд не придет к обеду домой. 17. Я не прощу, что ты опоздал к обеду. 18. После обеда она села писать письмо. 19. Я не заметил, чтобы этот обед чем-то отличался от обычного. 20. Если у тебя будет свободный вечер, позвони мне и я приготовлю тебе обед. 21. За обедом я быстро поел и ушел в клинику. 22. Мы спустились на лифте, не разговаривая, и прошли на террасу, где были накрыты столы для завтрака. 23. «Вчера у нас был (званный) обед», – сказала Флер. 24. Наконец мальчик вернулся и спросил меня, буду ли я одеваться к обеду. 25. Я угощу вас наилучшим ужином, который вы можете получить в этом городе.

## 6.9 ARTICLES WITH NAMES OF DISEASES

§ 54 Normally nouns referring to illnesses are uncountable and do not have an indefinite or definite article. Here is a list of common words like this: *AIDS, anaemia, appendicitis, cancer, cholera, diabetes, diarrhoea, hepatitis, herpes, influenza, laryngitis, leukaemia, malaria, pneumonia, rabies, rheumatism, smallpox, tonsillitis, tuberculosis, typhoid, yellow fever, etc.*

e.g. *Anemia* goes undetected in many people and symptoms can be vague.

*Yellow fever* can be prevented by a vaccine.

With the names of some common infectious diseases the definite article can be

used, as well as no article, but it is not as common. This applies to **'flu'**, **'measles'**, **'mumps'**, and **'chickenpox'**.

e.g. I had a bad case of *(the) flu*.

John has come down with *(the) measles*

The names of less specific conditions, such as **'cold'**, **'chill'**, or **'cough'**, are treated as simple countable nouns.

e.g. I must have caught *a cold* on my camping holiday.

Words ending in **'-ache'** behave in different ways, in British English. **'Earache'**, **'toothache'**, **'bellyache'**, **'backache'**, **'stomach ache'** can be uncount or count, so you can say *'I've got earache'* and *'I've got an earache'*.

e.g. He's got *(a) really bad toothache*.

**'Headache'**, however, is a countable noun, and so you can have *'a headache'* or regular *'headaches'*, but you cannot say *'I've got headache'*. In American English, all **'-ache'** words are count nouns, so it is not possible to say *'I've got earache'*, and so on.

**Note 1** The noun **'heartache'** is used figuratively denoting *'great sadness or worry'*.

e.g. She has finally recovered after suffering *the heartache* of her divorce from her first husband.

Also mark the following expressions used in everyday life: *to have a high blood pressure/a heart attack/a sore throat/a pain in the back (in the knee, etc.)*.

e.g. I'm having *a terrible pain in the knee*.

The definite article is found with names of diseases when the speaker refers to some particular case.

e.g. On the hills behind the kasbah are Fort St Gregoire, a votive chapel commemorative of *the cholera of 1849*.

Exercise 148. Supply the required articles, paying special attention to the nouns denoting diseases:

1. My daughter's children went down with ... chicken-pox. 2. She suffered from ... bronchitis. 3. Sheila who had recovered from ... measles was also there. 4. She had been absent less than ... week when ... operation for ... appendicitis was performed on her. 5. 'Were you sick?' 'I had ... fever.' 6. I am suffering from ... malaria and I am sure you don't know what it feels like when ... fever comes on. 7. ... boy sat upright against ... two pink pillows; ... mumps had not noticeably increased ... fatness of his face. 8. 'You've lost so much weight and your colour has changed.' 'I had ... jaundice,' Dan said shortly. 9. Mr. March always expressed ... gloomy concern if any one of his children had ... sore throat. 10. He was laid up with ... flu and did not let us know about it. 11. My father had ... asthma and ... climate of London always left him a little forlorn in ... morning. 12. Finally I came down with ... pneumonia. My mother took me home to nurse me. While I was getting over ... pneumonia I decided what I was going to do. 13. 'Your hair is short and curly.' 'I had ... scarlet fever and it had to be cut.' 14. That day I happened to have ... grippe and didn't know it. 15. In January I had ... diphtheria, with ... complications.

Exercise 149. Fill in the blanks with articles wherever necessary paying particular attention to names of diseases.

I remember going to ... British Museum one day to read up ... treatment for some slight ailment of which I had ... touch: ... hay fever, I fancy it was. I got down ... book, and read all I came to read; and then, in ... unthinking moment, I idly turned ... leaves, and began to study ... diseases, generally. I forget which was ... first disease I read about, but before I had glanced half down ... list of ... 'premonitory symptoms', I was certain I had got it.

I sat for ... while frozen with ... horror; and then in ... despair I again turned over ... pages. I came to ... typhoid fever – read ... symptoms – discovered that I had ... typhoid fever, must have had it for ... months without knowing it – wondered what else I had got; turned up ... scarlet fever – found, as I expected, that I had that too – began to get interested in my case, and determined to sift it to ... bottom, and so started alphabetically – read up ... ague, and learnt that I was sickening for it, and that ... acute stage would commence in about ... fortnight. ... rheumatism, I was relieved to find, I had only in ... modified form, and so far as that was concerned I might live for ... years. ... cholera I had with ... severe complications; and ... diphtheria I seemed to have been born with. I read conscientiously through ... twenty-six letters, and ... only malady I could conclude I had not got was ... housemaid's knee.

I felt rather hurt about it at first; it seemed somehow to be ... sort of ... slight. Why hadn't I got ... housemaid's knee? After ... while, however, I reflected that I had every other known disease in ... pharmacology, and I grew less selfish and determined to do without ... housemaid's knee. ... gout, in ... most malignant stage, it would appear, had seized me without my being aware of it; and ... zymosis I had evidently been suffering with from ... boyhood. There were no more diseases after ... zymosis, so I concluded that there was nothing else ... matter with me.

I had walked into ... reading-room, ... happy, healthy man. I crawled out ... decrepit wreck.

Exercise 150. Insert articles before names of diseases if necessary.

1. Manson was in this horrible situation, really feeling the nightmare of every doctor. And all that he had done was to cure Mary of ... consumption. 2. The cold water sent ... spasm through the base of his spine, the stick fell from his hands. 3. She got kind of quiet, like she had ... headache. 4. 'What's happened to your friend?' he said. I told him about ... influenza. 5. He is only fifty but the liver has stopped restoring itself, the precipitating factor is ... alcoholism. 6. I got ... pneumonia making a picture last January and I've been recuperating. 7. 'I was called at my home,' Barlett said, 'and Dr. Cymbalist told me he suspected ... perforated ulcer.' 8. I had heard of a man who had a slight fungus growth on his thumb and had become obsessed with the idea that it was ... cancer. 9. I made sure it was ... chill, Doctor. 10. She clung to him, face distorted and crimson. ... cough rocked her. 11. Old and young, talkative and taciturn, rich and poor, they all had two things in common, lice

and ... dysentery. 12. After ... typhoid she was just skin and bone. 13. Yes, you had found ... diphtheria and ... typhoid, and, if I am right, there were some outstanding, like ... scarlet fever and ... smallpox, that you called ultramicroscopia, and which you were still hunting for, and others that you didn't even suspect. 14. She coughed less too, as ... pleurisy subsided but she grew tired in the divan bed though Bart had put a headrest to it to hold her pillows. 15. It probably accounts for some of ... flu you spoke of, but that is not too serious in itself. 16. Think of patients lying in that racket after a serious abdominal or running a temperature of a hundred and four with ... meningitis! 17. The morning after the bridge party Mrs. Van Hopper woke with ... sore throat and a temperature of a hundred and two. 18. Little Nancy has ... backache and they've cabled her to go home. 19. I developed ... blister on my thumb and had to quit. 20. Lucy knew, of course – and was aware that Vivian knew it too – that the possibility remained that ... osteogenic sarcome which Dr. Pearson had diagnosed might have metastasized ahead of the amputation. 21. The trainer took a fussy interest in him when he came up with ... small bruise on his knee. 22. It looked precisely the place to provoke rather than cure ... nervous breakdown. 23. The last woman who had undressed me had been my mother, when I was five, and I had ... measles. 24. She'd hurry to her room and plead ... toothache. But when the carriage came nearer, her flight was checked by her amazement. 25. Case was a forty-year old man admitted for ... appendicitis. 26. Would you agree with me, Dr. Seddons, that the diagnosis of death of ... coronary thrombosis seems fairly well established? 27. He had attended her when she had ... pleurisy, and it had always been the same. 28. At the beginning of the year Cooper went down with ... fever. 29. He had ... grippe and I figured that I probably won't see him again. 30. The medical history of this man shows that three years ago he suffered ... first coronary attack and then ... second attack earlier this year.

Exercise 151. Translate into English paying attention to the use of articles with names of diseases.

1. Врач сказал, что это аппендицит и что ее надо оперировать. 2. Билли, который выглядел бледным, пожаловался на головную боль, пошел наверх и лег. 3. Ваш сын обратился к нам по поводу kleptomании. 4. На самом деле Дик был болен гриппом. 5. Я просто устал, и у меня болит ухо. 6. Может быть, туберкулез, которым он болен, не от этой пыли. 7. «Вы готовы идти на прием?» «Извините, у меня болит печень». 8. Естественно, я понимаю, что плеврит, которым она болеет, помешает ей начать работу к концу октября. 9. Хирург делал операцию по поводу рака кишечника. Когда он достиг пораженного места, он решил, что рак был не операбельным. 10. Все рабочие погибли от голода, кроме одного, Чагинского, который лежал в больнице с цингой. 11. Было начало лета, когда Джулия решила поехать за город, но у Роджера болело горло, и им пришлось отложить поездку. 12. После ужина Джордж взял банджо и хотел сыграть на нем, но Харрис запротестовал. Он сказал, что у него болит голова. 13. Она сейчас очень больна. У нее плеврит. 14. Я позвонила ее врачу, который сразу же пришел и поставил диагноз: обычный грипп. 15. Однажды у



меня была простуда, а я не знала этого и купалась в канале. 16. К концу июля разразилась сильная эпидемия оспы среди туземцев. 17. Налицо следы того (свидетельство о том), что три года назад у него был сердечный приступ – старый инфаркт, который зарубцевался. 18. Он умер сегодня в больнице от воспаления легких. 19. Когда я проходил мимо него, я заметно хромал. Он посмотрел на меня сочувственно и спросил: «Ты тоже?» Я ответил: «Просто растяжение». 20. Я простудилась в самолете и, когда мы приземлились, чихала и чувствовала озноб.

## 6.10 ARTICLES WITH NAMES OF PARTS OF THE BODY

§ 55 Names of parts of the body, like ‘hand’, ‘face’, and ‘knee’, are usually count nouns used with the indefinite or definite article according to the standard rules of use. We have also seen a special use of the definite article to refer generically to body parts.

It is possible to use the definite article with a singular noun even when there are two possible parts; the part of the body is all that is important, not which side. You use the definite article like this when the noun referring to the body part is included in a prepositional phrase (*‘in the back’, ‘by the arm’*) after a verb of touching or injuring (*‘shake’, ‘bite’*), and the person whose body you are referring to has just been mentioned.

e.g. George took her *by the hand* and helped her out of the car.

A horse had kicked her *in the stomach*.

You can also use the definite article when referring to a touch, blow, or pain.

e.g. George gave me a friendly pat *on the shoulder*.

**Note 1** When the noun comes straight after a verb such as ‘grab’ or after a verb and a preposition, for example ‘step on’, you have to use a possessive determiner like ‘their’ or ‘his’.

e.g. She was *lying flat on her back* on the bed.

He sat *by the bed* and *held her hand*.

Exercise 152. Insert articles before names of parts of the body.

1. ‘Don’t break ... leg in here,’ his wife cautioned. 2. Aldo shot him in ... leg, not wishing to kill him, which I assure you he could have easily done. 3. Carmen put ... foot on ... first step and then heard voices. 4. Carmen turned and tipped her head back to look at ... face of ... man who towered over her. 5. Few know what ... joy it is to feel ... roses pressing softly into ... hand, or ... beautiful motion of ... lilies as they sway in ... morning breeze. 6. He rested ... hand on her shoulder and sighed, gazing down at her tenderly. 7. He stood full six feet in height, with noble shoulders, and ... chest like ... coffer-dam. 8. He threw ... leg over ... ATV and settled himself on ... seat with ... grin. 9. He took Carmen by ... hand and leaned close to her ear. 10. He was educated for ... army, and entered ... artillery of ... Guards as ... officer in 1860, but ... malady of ... knee forced him to quit ... service in 1865. 11. He was not ... very large man, but was well formed and had ...

beautiful face – calm and serene as ... face of ... fine portrait. 12. Helen suddenly put down ... cup and began to slap her on ... back and turn her over on her knees, trotting her gently and patting her softly all the time. 13. I recall my surprise on discovering that ... mysterious hand had stripped ... trees and bushes, leaving only here and there ... wrinkled leaf. 14. It wasn't ... grotesque sinewy chest of ... body builder, but ... well developed chest of ... swimmer. 15. Katie made ... face as she sat in ... chair opposite Carmen. 16. She pulled Ed to ... stop and curled ... knee around ... saddle horn, watching the scene. 17. So he ambled calmly through ... handsome arch of ... doorway, turned ... corner of ... palace, wherein all seemed asleep, and came ... face to ... face with the Sawhorse. 18. That arching of ... back was ... only warning Alex had before ... horse went into ... bucking frenzy. 19. They have ... kind of ... short kilt; under this they wear ... short linen trousers, which come ... little below ... knee, and ... black woollen leggings with ... boots. 20. When ... Christmas waltz began... a warm hand gripped her elbow. 21. You don't forget ... face of ... person who was your last hope.

## 6.11 ARTICLES WITH NOUNS DENOTING SPECIAL ROLES

**§ 56** Some nouns can refer to a special, unique role held by a person in a particular situation (for example, a government or business). When they are used like this, you can leave out the definite article. Some words commonly used in this way are: *author, best man, boss, captain, centre forward, chairman, chairperson, director, goalkeeper, head, king, leader, manager, president, prime minister, queen, secretary, treasurer, etc.*

e.g. Clinton was elected *president* in 1992.

It was nearly 40 years before she became *Queen*.

**Note 1** You can leave in the definite article when the noun is followed by 'of'.

e.g. For three years I was *the manager of a radio station*.

He was *secretary of the local golf club*.

**Note 2** When you are talking about a person rather than describing someone's role you need an article.

e.g. *The President* had issued a sympathetic reply.

*The Queen* then abandoned the project.

**Note 3** There is usually no article in 'of'-phrases after the words 'post', 'office', 'title', 'rank', 'degree'.

e.g. The Prime Minister appointed her to *the post of ambassador*.

Exercise 153. Insert articles before nouns denoting special roles.

1. 'And was ... Holy Mother promoted to ... rank of ... general?' said Prince Andrew, with ... smile. 2. 'How do you spell your last name, officer?' she asked ... leader of ... pack. 3. Benjamin Disraeli chose ... title of ... earl of Beaconsfield in 1876, his wife having in 1868 received ... title of ... Viscountess Beaconsfield. 4. Continued ill-health compelled him in 1877 again to seek rest in Europe, having first exchanged ... portfolio of ... justice for ... less exacting office of ... president of ...

council. 5. For each school district there is ... board of ... education consisting of ... president and two commissioners. 6. Green was ... chairman of ... Old Testament committee of ... Anglo-American Bible revision committee. 7. He received formal leave of absence in ... January 1908, when he received ... title of ... president of ... board of ... customs. 8. He unsuccessfully contested Blackburn in 1900 and Wakefield in 1902, and in 1903 he became ... chairman of ... Independent Labour party. 9. He was appointed ... manager of ... Rensselaer & Saratoga railway, which he bought up when it was in a very bad condition, and skilfully reorganized. 10. He was transferred to ... post of ... chief secretary for Ireland, which he subsequently retained when Mr Asquith became ... prime minister in 1908. 11. I'm evacuating with ... President and others to ... West Coast site. 12. In 1867 he was elected ... member for West Durham in ... Dominion parliament, and for South Bruce in ... provincial legislature, in which he became ... leader of ... Liberal opposition two years later. 13. In addition to his political activity, he was ... president of ... literary section of ... Hungarian Academy, and ... director of ... National. 14. It was ... intense, fierce look of ... leader and ... warrior, and she was surprised to note ... difference in ... way he regarded her not more than ... hour ago. 15. Lotze's first essay was his dissertation, with which he gained ... degree of ... doctor of ... medicine, after having only four months previously got ... degree of ... doctor of ... philosophy. 16. On his return to Utrecht he took ... degree of ... doctor of ... laws, and after travelling through Switzerland and ... part of Germany, settled down to ... practice of ... law. 17. Peter, ... merchant adventurer, who had migrated from Danzig to London about 1670, was also ... director of ... East India company. 18. ... President Harper was selected by him to organize ... university, and it was his will that ... president and two-thirds of ... trustees should be 'always' Baptists. 19. Second, find out when ... general manager of ... fast food joint where she worked was returning from ... maternity leave. 20. ... director lived in ... Georgetown mansion with his wife and two dogs. 21. Wade was appointed to ... post of ... collector in ... first instance, and after ... short tenure of ... office was succeeded by Mr W. 22. Were I in ... cavalry I should get not more than two hundred rubles every four months, even with ... rank of ... lieutenant.

Exercise 154. Revision: fill in the blank with articles if necessary.

1. ... dinner is served. 2. Denisov celebrated his promotion to ... rank of ... major, and Rostov, who had already drunk enough, at ... end of ... feast proposed ... Emperor's health. 3. He rubbed them with his hands, and when they were quite open he thought that he saw ... beautiful face looking down upon him. 4. ... dinner was to be at seven, ... concert from eight to ten, ... supper from ten to eleven. 5. He was also appointed ... governor of Weymouth, ... sheriff of Dorsetshire for ... king and ... president of ... king's council of ... war in ... county. 6. He would hardly be smiling if she had ... cancer or something like that. 7. ... lunch was excellent, but I noticed that Isabel ate very little. 8. He released her abruptly and she staggered on ... injured leg, nearly falling in ... snow again. 9. In chronic cases ... eventual effects are ... anaemia, ... melanosis, ... enlargement of ... spleen and ... liver. 10. After ... dinner

when ... coffee was brought in, ... talk became medical. 11. At ... table, he slung ... long leg over ... chair and dropped into it, kicking out ... chair next to him for Carmen. 12. Carrie had prepared ... good dinner at ... flat, but after his ride up, Hurstwood was in ... solemn and reflective mood. 13. Every dead soldier has ... face, ... story, and ... bereaved family. 14. Giving him ... title of ... senator, he sent him to Italy with ... legate, Cardinal Alborno. 15. He made ... face and stopped his horse. 16. Her sandals raised ... little puffs of dust every time she put ... foot down in ... soft dirt. 17. Here he became ... recognized Democratic leader and in 1879-1881 was ... chairman of ... judiciary committee. 18. His ability and force brought him to ... front, and he rose till in 1881 he was appointed ... general manager of ... Canadian Pacific railway. 19. If so, he might have ... key to crippling ... cancer afflicting his operations. 20. In 1733-1734 there was ... dreadful epidemic of ... smallpox, which destroyed ... great number of ... people. 21. In 1861 he became ... director-general of engineers at ... War Office, assisting General Milutin in ... reorganization of ... army. 22. In this battle Sigebert, ... king was wounded in ... knee and limped during the remainder of his life. 23. It was two o'clock in ... afternoon and Harold was still home at ... lunch. 24. Mr. Morley was not in ... best of tempers at ... breakfast. He complained of ... bacon and wondered why ... coffee had to have ... appearance of ... liquid mud. Mr. Morley was ... small man with ... decided jaw. His sister who kept house for him, was ... large woman. She eyed her brother thoughtfully and asked whether ... bath water had been cold again. When Mr. Morley expressed himself fully on ... point, he had ... second cup of ... despised coffee. 25. ... nature had made him mean, ... smallpox had made him hideous, and his degraded habits made him loathsome. 26. She marveled at his muscular body and ... perfectly sculptured chest, shoulders, ridged abdomen, and biceps too large to wrap her hands around. 27. ... 'man of great merit', despite his desire to obtain ... post of ... director, could not refrain from reminding Prince Vasili of his former opinion. 28. ... Bengal Asiatic Society was established under his auspices, though he yielded ... post of ... president to Sir W. 29. ... problem of ... manager is always to imagine ... best. 30. ... same year, ... technique for treating ... diabetes, ... insulin therapy, was developed. 31. ... technical high school, which since 1899 has possessed ... right to confer ... degree of ... doctor of engineering, practically enjoys academic status and so do ... veterinary high school and ... school of art. 32. They arrested him after ... breakfast. 33. They got ... hearty breakfast from ... crew. 34. They had ... breakfast of bread-and-butter and an omelette. 35. ... typhoid, pneumonia, ... tuberculosis, ... measles and ... scarlatina, and ... influenza are ... commonest illnesses. 36. We have ... cancer within, close to ... presidency, that's growing. 37. What makes ... good leader? One who's willing to follow his own instructions. 38. What shall we buy for ... supper? 39. You're ... cancer on everyone around you.

## 6.12 ARTICLES WITH THE NOUN 'SOCIETY'

§ 57 The noun 'society' is used without any article when it means 'an organized community people live in'.

e.g. Society has to be prepared to support its elderly people.

In other meanings it may be used with the definite and the indefinite article.

e.g. Never forget that we live in a multicultural society.

She joined the local history society and made some new friends.

Exercise 155. Supply the required articles, paying special attention to the noun 'society'.

1. I enjoyed listening to her talk of ... Viennese society in ... days of the Hapsburgs. 2. And although ... society of my friends remained relatively the same, ... new influences had entered, ... new winds had sprung up. 3. I had given up taking my wife into ... society. 4. That night Mark talked to us of ... freedom, of how, if we had ... will, we could make ... better society, in which our children would stand ... fair chance. 5. My aunt enjoyed ... society of young ladies and gentlemen. 6. And he introduced me into ... society, different from anything I had ever known. 7. He was overawed when he went into ... society. 8. Holden believed that his people could create ... society in which ... men could live in ... peace and in ... decent comfort. 9. ... two houses were only ... few miles apart, but in ... society ... distance was vast. 10. 'I am so enchanted by ... brilliancy of ... wit and culture of ... society, more especially of ... feminine society, in which I have had the honor of being received, that I have not yet had ... time to think of ... climate,' said he. 11. He had been originally nurtured among ... crazy society of Neskyeuna Shakers, where he had been ... great prophet. 12. He knew one way of life, and that way had no place in ... peaceful society she hoped to return to. 13. Her third novel, Lelia (1833), is in ... same vein, ... stronger and more outspoken diatribe against ... society and ... marriage law. 14. In ... primitive society punishment was left to ... individuals wronged or their families, and was vindictive or retributive. 15. It is true that there is much disagreement over how to achieve these ideals, but ... fact remains we want ... just society for all. 16. Nothing is so necessary for ... young man as ... society of ... clever women. 17. ... company should insure its workers because if ... uninsured workers end up in the ER, ... burden falls on ... society, not ... company. 18. There is also ... state humane society, which was organized in 1899 for ... protection of ... children and of ... helpless aged, and for ... prevention of ... cruelty to ... animals. 19. These will be ... waters to navigate carefully, in order to make sure that ... right to ... privacy, ... cornerstone of ... free society, is not destroyed. 20. Think of it as ... tribal warrior society that's kinda backwards or antiquated in its customs. 21. ... wealth and ... society encourage ... civilization, which is advantageous to everyone. 22. Yes, but it's ... secret society and therefore ... hostile and harmful one which can only cause ... harm. 23. 'I will drop you and your cat off at ... humane society!' she said, starting to believe he was serious. 24. While at home Hastings is said to have attached himself to ... literary society.

## 6.13 ARTICLES WITH NOUNS DENOTING INSTITUTIONS IN SOCIETY

§ 58 There are certain establishments of human society which are referred to without an article when we think of them as institutions in general rather than as specific buildings or individual places and want to suggest that they are being used for their intended purpose. Here is a list of words that can be used like this: *church, college, court, hospital, jail, prison, school, university*.

Normally, when you are using these words to talk about buildings they are count nouns and article usage with them is straightforward.

### *Institution*

He went into *hospital* last week for a heart operation.

Adam spent 3 years in *jail* for drug possession.

The kids will be at *school* until 3.00 today.

### *Building*

Just being in *the hospital* or doctor's office and breathing the air inside those places is not enough to get you sick.

I really ought to go down to *the jail* and visit the old guy.

So she has gone to *the school* to see her kid's teacher.

**Note 1** 'Bed' behaves in a similar way; without an article it means 'the place where we sleep or rest', not a particular object.

e.g. She got into *bed* and turned out the light. vs He made himself *a bed* of straw.

**Note 2** The noun 'work' is used without the article in the following word combinations: 'go to work', 'be at work', 'start work', 'finish work', 'set/get down to work', 'out of work', etc.

e.g. Tom didn't go to work yesterday.

**Note 3** The noun 'home' is used without the article in the following word combinations: 'go home', 'come home', 'arrive home', 'get home', 'be at home', 'be away from home', 'work from home/at home', etc.

e.g. He was spending more and more time *away from home*.

Exercise 156. Choose the correct form, with or without 'the'.

1. A crowd of reporters had gathered outside court/the court. 2. After leaving school/the school Nora worked as a cleaner in hospital/at the hospital. 3. After work/the work, Ann usually goes home/to home. 4. All over the world, people are in prison/the prison because of their political beliefs. 5. Both of them found work in hospital/the hospital. 6. Dean biked to jail/the jail in the failing light of the July evening. 7. Donna left school/the school and went to college/the college. 8. Drunks were thrown in jail/the jail for a few days. 9. Every term parents are invited to school/the school to meet the teachers. 10. Four people will appear in court/the court today, charged with fraud. 11. He teaches cookery at local college/the local college. 12. How are we going to get from church/the church to the reception? 13. How many people go to university/the university in your country? 14. I like to read in bed/the bed before going to sleep. 15. I wanted to go to university/the university but I wanted

to be an actor more. 16. I'd rather resolve our differences without going to court/the court. 17. John himself doesn't go to church/the church. 18. John's mother is a regular churchgoer. She goes to church/the church every Sunday. 19. Ken's brother is in prison/the prison for robbery. 20. My brother is very ill in hospital/the hospital. 21. On the 14th of March 1891 a mob broke into jail/the jail and lynched eleven of the accused. 22. On the way to London we passed through a small village with an old church. We stopped to visit church/the church. It was a beautiful building. 23. People get sent to prison/the prison for that sort of thing. 24. Robert moved closer to bed/the bed. 25. She could not imagine people going to church/the church looking so dull and unhappy. 26. Some children hate school/the school. 27. Court/the court ruled that no compensation was due. 28. The door was closed when I went to bed/the bed. 29. The government would put him in jail/the jail if he stayed in the country. 30. The other day the fire-brigade had to go to prison/the prison to put out a fire. 31. Tom left university/the university without doing his examinations. 32. We drove to university/the university, opposite which was a temple. 33. We were great friends when we were at college/the college. 34. What time do you have to start work/the work tomorrow morning? 35. What time do your children finish school/the school? 36. When Ann was ill, we all went to hospital/the hospital to visit her.

Exercise 157. Supply the required articles, paying special attention to the nouns **'bed'**, **'school'**, **'college'**, **'university'**, **'hospital'**, **'prison'**, **'jail'**, **'church'**, **'court'**, **'work'**, and **'home'**.

A) **'jail'**, **'prison'**, **'court'** 1. 'No one told me you were out of ... prison,' Kiki muttered as he worked. 2. ... municipal court, ... city jail and ... children's detention house were erected, the first in 1912, the others in succeeding years. 3. He remained in ... prison till ... month of October, when the Reign of Terror began. 4. He was killed by ... mob in ... jail at Carthage, Illinois, on the 27th of June 1844. 5. He was sent to ... jail, but only for ... rape they could prove. 6. You're just grumpy because you have to go to ... court instead of playing in ... woods with us. 7. No troops are now stationed here, and ... barracks have been utilized for ... jail, ... lunatic asylum and ... other civic buildings. 8. Of ... old fort erected by Islam Khan, no ... vestige remains; but ... jail is built on ... portion of its site. 9. ... beast within continued to throw itself at it, ceasing finally when it saw ... prison had been reinforced. 10. Our talking about it is court business, too – it's violating your pledge to ... court. 11. They must be ordered by ... visitors of ... prison and confirmed by ... home secretary. 12. If you put me in ... jail again, when I get out there won't be ... safe place for you. 13. You can ask ... court for ... order of restraint against your husband and stop him from coming anywhere near you if you're in fear of ... man. 14. ... blue skirt and sweater were ... little dressy for ... jail, but they'd no doubt give her some fashionable stripes to wear anyway. 15. Then why would ... heirs think ... mine was so valuable to go to ... court over it?

B) **'school'**, **'college'**, **'university'** 1. Mr. Peck came in. He taught us ... algebra and ... geometry; he was ... man about fifty-five who had spent his whole life at ... school. 2. Until then I had never taken ... course of study with ... idea of preparing

for ... college; but I had been well drilled in English, and it soon became evident to my teachers that I needed no special instruction in this subject beyond ... critical study of ... books prescribed by ... college.<sup>3</sup> Paula taught Greek and Latin at ... local school. 4. ... principal public buildings are ... cathedral, ... convent of San Domingo, ... university founded in 150, ... college of science and arts, ... public library, ... hospital, ... mint and ... museum of Incarial antiquities. 5. ... fees at ... secondary school were ... three guineas ... term. 6. In ... morning I went as usual to ... school. 7. He went to ... school to speak to ... headmaster about his son. 8. At ... age of thirteen he entered ... university where he studied under Graevius and Gronovius 9. This talk went on throughout ... drive back to ... school. 10. In fact, though clever, he was idle at ... school and far from bookish. 11. In ... high school and ... college, she played co-ed soccer and basketball. 12. ... university, founded in 1869, built mainly of ... basalt, has ... schools of arts, medicine, chemistry and mineralogy. 13. At ... odd moments he glanced back on those wonderful two weeks before ... school began. 14. ... biggest benefit of going to ... university is not what you learn, but ... people you meet there. 15. Our small city should have ... college and ... hospital. 16. At least I can admit I cheated in ... university; most of you won't.

C) **'hospital'** 1. He's in ... hospital with ... couple of ... ribs and ... shoulder cracked. 2. He lives in one wing of ... house, and has turned the rest into ... hospital. 3. After ... lunch Dr. Raily went off to ... hospital. 4. She had met his father when he was captured and brought to ... Austrian hospital where she was ... nurse in ... first World War. 5. He told us that ... man had been gored by ... bull and was in ... hospital. 6. She told me that for ... while she had worked in ... hospital. 7. On ... day he was due to attend ... hospital she secretly phoned his doctor. 8. They had ... hospital in ... town during ... war. 9. ... Dan's scratched face became inflamed and poisoned and he went down with ... high fever and was carried off to ... hospital where he lies at present. 10. Doctor Huger is ... best man for you but he's at ... hospital doing ... emergency operation. 11. He is in ... hospital and his condition is reported as being serious. 12. My mother admitted that ... hospital to which Uncle Nick had been taken was ... lunatic asylum. 13. He was in ... hospital for ... few weeks, and came back more moody than ever.

D) **'church'** 1. St. Peter's is ... church often chosen by ... fashionable people for ... funerals and ... weddings. 2. They stood for ... moment, then all together slowly moved towards ... church. 3. 'Do you go to ... church?' 'Occasionally.' 4. I could see from ... car ... church on ... sharply rising slope. 5. About half past ten ... cracked bell of ... small church began to ring. 6. They rode in ... silence for ... moment, ... church disappearing behind them. 7. 'Bertie,' she said to my father, 'I shall go to ... church this morning.' 8. She was dressed for ... church.

E) **'bed'** 1. Then he carefully placed ... money on ... bed. 2. They were discussing it after ... supper, when ... children were in ... bed. 3. ... room was in ... darkness. I dimly perceived ... bed in ... corner. 4. ... doctor shrugged his shoulders and sat down beside ... bed. 5. He would pile ... journals and ... newspapers, ... books and ... pamphlets on ... bed, ... table and ... spare chairs. 6. When he finished



at ... midnight, too exhausted to read any further, he went to ... bed. 7. ... bed itself was wide and high. 8. His aunt urged that he should be sent to ... bed on the spot. 9. I turned toward my own room where I assumed ... bed would have been made up for me. 10. He worked hard and often got out of ... bed at ... night to make sure that he had written ... point down. 11. I swung my feet off ... bed. 12. He was playing with ... dog's ears who had established himself by ... bed. 13. In ... few minutes she went to ... bed. 14. I pushed off ... bedclothes and sat on ... side of ... bed.

F) **'home'**, **'work'** 1. ... glance at her watch confirmed it wasn't lunch time yet, so why was Alex coming ... home already? 2. ... woman could do all ... work but somehow ... man got ... credit and benefit. 3. Alex had provided ... money to remodel ... home, but insisted that it stay in her name only. 4. Alex wouldn't discourage her from going to ... work, but he had expressed more than once that he preferred her to be at ... home taking care of ... children. 5. If this was what defined ... vacation away from home, she'd just as soon stay at ... home. 6. It was ... lovely setting for ... home, secluded in ... wildly beautiful forested hills. 7. Maybe he has ... work from home job. 8. Never would she have guessed such ... lavish home existed in these rustic mountains. 9. Several weeks afterward, there came ... visitor to ... home of ... Wests. 10. She practiced while he was at ... work and removed it before he came ... home. 11. So, as you are now too old to wander abroad and work in a circus, I offer you ... home here as long as you live. 12. So, let us go on with ... work that is before us. 13. Then Selkirk set to ... work to make ... best of things. 14. When ... young man I ran away from ... home and joined ... circus. 15. When ... work was finished, ... old fishing boat looked rather odd, with a paddle wheel on each side which dipped just ... few inches into ... water. 16. With his return to ... work, things at ... house shifted to ... faster pace.

Exercise 158. Supply the required articles, paying special attention to the nouns **'bed'**, **'school'**, **'college'**, **'university'**, **'hospital'**, **'prison'**, **'jail'**, **'church'**, **'court'**, **'work'**, and **'home'**.

1. Alex was going to ... college when his parents died in ... plane crash. 2. As Tamerlane looked, he saw that there was ... hole in ... tree only ... little way above, and that this was ... home of ... ant. 3. Bart made his way carefully up ... red concrete path from ... hospital. 4. Between ... college and ... work, there wasn't much time left for anything else. 5. Chip Burgess was killed in ... prison knifing before standing trial. 6. He and his daughters walked up ... steps of ... school and entered ... narrow high- ceilinged hall. 7. He hasn't been to ... bed all night. 8. He reached ... hospital, parked his car and went up to ... ward. 9. He sprang out of ... bed, had ... cold bath and then had another look at ... watch. 10. I am only in ... hospital for four weeks. When I am out of here, I won't think of it. 11. I can arrange for her to go along to ... public hospital. 12. I found ... edge of ... bed in ... dark and sat down on it and started putting on my shoes. 13. I mean young Nicholas Rostov, who with his enthusiasm could not bear to remain inactive and has left ... university to join ... army. 14. I must get used to getting-up early. When I get home there will be my little girl to get ready for ... school. 15. I saw ... bed made up for me, and

placed ... candle on ... old-fashioned chest of drawers. 16. If she goes to ... hospital now for some treatment and then on to ... sanatorium it ought to be quite all right. 17. It met all our criteria; ... stable employment, ... reasonably priced homes, ... state college and ... regional hospital. 18. It was ridiculous to feel that he had to send his children to ... private school. 19. Jan lay in ... narrow hospital bed and tried to adjust herself to her new surroundings. 20. Look at ... meeting-house, or ... court-house, or ... jail, or ... shop, or ... dwelling-house, and say what that thing really is before ... true gaze, and they would all go to ... pieces in your account of them. 21. Miss Blakeley needs ... great deal of ... extra attention. But this is ... sanatorium, not ... hospital. We don't expect to have to nurse ... patients. 22. Richard's grandfather insisted that he attend ... law school, following ... family tradition. 23. She had ... comfortable room at ... hospital. 24. She wanted to assure him that everything was perfect here in ... hospital to which he had sent her, and for which he was paying. 25. She went into ... little dark room — her room was like ... cupboard — and sat down on ... bed. 26. She went up to ... bed and took her sleeping child. 27. So long as I live no one will ever make me go into ... hospital like this again. 28. Some people who want to go to college still can't get there. 29. ... day before they were scheduled to leave, Alex came home from ... work and asked to see ... tickets. 30. ... FBI can fill you in better when they get here but this guy's been off ... grid since he was released from ... prison ... last summer. 31. ... whole college was talking about it. 32. Then ... day came when I had to go back to ... school. 33. They had two children, one of them still at ... school, ... other in her first year at ... university. 34. This may be to judge my neighbors harshly; for I believe that many of them are not aware that they have such ... institution as ... jail in their village. 35. Under normal circumstances you would have become ... head boy of ... school. 36. When he was thirteen, he was sent to ... High School in the County Town. 37. When he went to ... bed he kept his thoughts on her.

Exercise 159. Translate into English.

1. Школа находилась в жилой части города к северу и к востоку от делового центра. 2. Вы случайно не заметили, где находится католическая церковь. В Англии все ходят в церковь. 3. Была ночь. Море было гладкое, как стекло. 4. Они оба в школе. 5. Джен оглядела девушек в палате. Почти все они были прикованы к постели, и им не разрешали ходить. Некоторые из них пролежали в постели несколько лет. 6. Я направился на юг из этого города, где, как я понял сейчас, я был счастлив более пяти лет. 7. Она прилетела в Нью-Йорк, а он был слишком ленив, чтобы встретить ее. 8. Она никогда не была внутри церкви. 9. Джен сказала сама себе: «Никто никогда не заставит меня опять лечь в больницу, подобную этой». 10. Его отец ходил вокруг дома медленно и осторожно (спокойно), как человек, который только что вышел из больницы после серьезной операции. 11. Когда он оделся, он сел на кровать и стал ждать жену. 12. Мне было всего восемнадцать лет, когда я приехала сюда. Я приехала прямо после школы. 13. Я тебе когда-нибудь говорил, что мальчиком я посещал школу танцев. 14. Но если бы Бренатскис не пришел,

Хьюго пришлось бы провести ночь в тюрьме. 15. Она приехала в город за покупками. 16. Боюсь, что вы можете опоздать на последний поезд. Лучше оставайтесь в городе. 17. Примерно через две улицы отсюда есть больница. 18. Наступил день, когда мне надо было снова идти в школу. 19. В доме никогда не было достаточно денег. Поэтому он не учился в колледже. 20. «Что ты собираешься делать?» «Прежде всего, – сказал я, – уехать из города». 21. «Отсюда море не видно», – сказала я, поворачиваясь к миссис Дэнверс. 22. Школа была построена на холме, и он мог видеть реку Гудзон внизу. 23. Он учится в вечерней школе. 24. На уикенд они решили поехать на море.

#### 6.14 ARTICLES WITH NAMES OF SHOPS AND OTHER BUSINESSES

§ 59 Shops and other businesses that are regular features in towns or cities can be used with the definite article when you do not want to pick out a particular one. In these cases the activity is as important as the place. Some words like this are: *baker's, bank, barber's, dentist's, doctor's, greengrocer's, hairdresser's, post office, pub*, etc.

- e.g. I hate going to *the dentist's*.  
I need to go to *the bank* this morning.

#### 6.15 ARTICLES WITH NAMES OF MUSICAL INSTRUMENTS

§ 60 When you are talking about someone's ability to play a musical instrument you use the definite article.

- e.g. She already played *the guitar*.  
I became interested in *the piano* again.

If you want to talk about roles in a musical group or in a piece of music you use no article.

- e.g. I don't think I know of any duets for *piano* and *trump*.  
Her son plays *guitar* in a rock band.

There is also no article after 'on', meaning 'playing'.

- e.g. She was accompanied by Helen *on piano*.  
Hanks is *on bass guitar*, with Nelson *on drums*.

Exercise 160. Insert articles before nouns denoting names of musical instruments.

1. A year or two later he learnt to play ... violin and to speak French. 2. Brandon stood, his tall form unfolding like ... accordion until he towered over her again. 3. But, secondly, the pneumatic utterances technically known as speaking with tongues failed to reach this level of intelligibility; for Paul compares 'a tongue' to a material object which should merely make a noise, to ... pipe or ... harp twanged or blown at random without tune or time, ... a trumpet blaring idly and not according to a code of signal notes. 4. ... drums, ... gourd and ... bamboo flutes, and a kind of ... guitar, were known before Cook's day. 5. Each instrument is provided with a keyboard, resembling that of ... small piano. 6. He had not attended to the train of his thoughts

long when he heard some one playing on ... flute, and that sound harmonized with his mood. 7. He represents the art of playing ... flute as opposed to ... lyre – the one the accompaniment of the worship of Cybele, the other that of the worship of Apollo. 8. I also liked to keep my hand on ... piano when it was being played. 9. In military usage ‘retreat’ is also the term for a signal, given by ... bugle and ... drum at or about sunset. 10. In this way, although the ancient ballads are not forgotten, new words are also fitted to the plaintive folk-tunes which every farm-hand knows and sings, accompanied sometimes by ... rude clarinet or ... bagpipes, but more frequently by ... so-called Portuguese guitar – an instrument which resembles ... mandolin rather than ... guitars of Italy and Spain. 11. In war they trembled at the sound of ... trumpet, in peace they quaked before the shouting of their own demagogues. 12. Jackson leaned his elbow on ... piano and watched her, fully amused. 13. Magnificent examples are Mozart’s trio for ... pianoforte, ... clarinet and ... viola, his quintet for ... pianoforte, ... oboe, ... clarinet, ... horn and ... bassoon, his quintet for ... clarinet and ... strings, Brahms’s clarinet-quintet for the same combination, and his trio for ... pianoforte, ... violin and ... horn. 14. Nor did he say anything when she exchanged ... guitar for ... violin and paid for lessons. 15. ... cymbals and ... horns in the orchestra struck up more loudly, and this man with bare legs jumped very high and waved his feet about very rapidly. 16. Unlike ... buccina, ... cornu and ... tuba, the other military service instruments of the Romans, ... lituus has not been traced during the middle ages, the medieval instrument most nearly resembling it being ... cromorne or ... tournebout, which, however, had lateral holes and was played by means of a reed mouthpiece.

## 6.16 ARTICLES WITH NOUNS DENOTING GRAMMATICAL TERMS

§ 61 The words that linguists use to describe certain words or constructions in English often have the definite article.

e.g. In clauses like these you use a verb which is in *the present tense*.  
*The indefinite article* has two forms, both in speech and writing.

With these terms you can use the indefinite article if you want to describe one particular instance.

e.g. Singing is *a present participle*.

Exercise 161. Insert articles before nouns denoting grammatical terms.

1. ‘Rusting’, or more usually in ... plural ‘hustings’, was ... name of ... court of ... city of London. 2. ... pronoun in ... dative case is called ... indirect object. 3. All ... tenses of ... reflexive verbs except ... imperative and present participle are formed by prefixing ... pronoun which indicates ... object to ... verb, in ... dative or genitive case (abbreviated) as ... verb may require; but in ... reflexive imperative and present participle ... verb precedes ... pronoun. 4. Be careful to use ... singular pronoun with ... singular noun in your writing. 5. Case is known by ... position of ... noun in ... sentence or by prepositions. 6. Catalan, then, makes no distinctions save in ... gender and ... number of its nouns. 7. Consciousness is never experienced in ... plural, only

in ... singular. 8. Generally ... noun is qualified by ... adjective. 9. Hajdu is also ... common prefix in ... Hungarian place-names. 10. I can talk about Jeff in ... past tense now. 11. It is difficult to lay down ... rules for ... determination of ... gender of ... names of ... inanimate objects. 12. ... main grammatical distinction between Syriac and all ... west Aramaic dialects is that in Syriac ... 3rd person of ... imperfect (singular and plural) of ... verb begins with *n*, but in west Aramaic, as in ... other Semitic languages, it begins with *y*. 13. ... possessive pronoun follows ... object. 14. The Septuagint shows that ... singular form 'terebinth' stood in ... original text. 15. ... verb, which is properly ... kind of ... noun or ... participle, has no element of ... person. 16. There are only two genders and two numbers: ... neuter gender is entirely wanting, and ... dual number is not recognized in ... Syriac grammar, though there are plain traces of it in ... language. 17. There is ... dual, as well as ... plural form in ... declension of ... verbs, ... nouns, ... pronouns and ... adjectives.

## 6.17 ARTICLES WITH NOUNS DENOTING DIRECTIONS

§ 62 Nouns indicating directions, such as 'north', 'south', 'east', and 'west', and 'left' and 'right', have the definite article.

e.g. How do you like living in *the north*?

'North', 'south', 'east', and 'west' can also be used with the definite article to refer to one part of a country; if they refer to an accepted region they sometimes begin with a capital letter.

e.g. She grew up in *the south of France* but lived in *the North of England*.

You can use 'the left' and 'the right' to describe the political movements which support socialism and capitalism respectively; 'left' and 'right' may start with a capital letter in this case.

e.g. Younger voters tended to be on *the left*.

The Minister has been attacked by *the Right* for her reforms.

**Note 1** These words are also used as adverbs without an article.

e.g. Turn *left* at the end of the street.

Exercise 162. Insert articles before nouns denoting directions.

1. All such concerns flew away likes ... ducks going ... south when he returned to ... room. 2. Betsy and I reluctantly agreed, also agreeing to travel ... north ... following weekend. 3. If this chapter angers ... Right and ... Left, ... Greens and ... Browns, ... capitalists and ... socialists, ... nutritionists and ... farmers, I apologize to all in advance. 4. It was with much anticipation we drove ... north on another Friday afternoon. 5. It is warm here in ... south and I fear I can't keep my tiny trophy in my auto another day. 6. Lightening flashed in ... east and ... thunder rumbled ... posthumous threat. 7. Nothing was visible in ... valley to ... left into which our troops had descended and from whence came ... sounds of ... firing. 8. One stronghold was in ... north, in which they stood, and one in ... south near ... entrance to ... desert. 9. Quinn is coming back ... east from Santa Barbara so they can leave

together as a family. 10. She continued up Seventh Street and turned ... south on Main and drove toward ... mountains. 11. Some of them ran towards ... east, some towards ... west, and some towards ... south. 12. ... cannonade was dying down, but ... rattle of ... musketry behind and on ... right sounded oftener and nearer. 13. The Ouray skating rink was located on ... north side of ... town. 14. ... sun peered over ... ocean to ... north while ... blooming apple trees sprinkled their flowers into ... piles in ... cool sea breeze. 15. ... village of Ouray lay snuggled at ... terminus of ... long valley, wrapped in ... box canyon by ... towering San Juans to ... east, ... west and ... south. 16. This time they started out heading ... west, into ... maze of ... arroyos and ... low brush. 17. You won't know if ... source is male or female, old or young, from ... east or ... west or how long ... tips will keep coming.

## 6.18 ARTICLES WITH NOUNS DENOTING GEOGRAPHICAL OPPOSITIONS

§ 63 You use the definite article before a number of nouns which indicate geographical alternatives, for example '*the town*' – '*the country*' and '*the sea*' – '*the land*'. We are not referring to a particular place, for example a particular town or forest. We are talking about the types of landscape or geographical environments where people live, work, or go for holidays. Here are some words you can use like this: *the city, the country, the countryside, the desert, the forest, the jungle, the land, the mountains, the plains, the sea, the seaside, the town*.

e.g. There is growing concern over the future of *the countryside*.  
This was their first holiday together at *the seaside*.

**Note 1** The noun '**town**' takes no article when it is used in contrast with '**country**' or when it means the business centre of a town, e.g. *to be in town, to go to town, to live in town, to come back (to return) to town, to stay in town, to leave town, to be out of town*, etc.

e.g. I was surprised that they were going to stay *in town* all summer.

**Note 2** The noun '**sea**' may be used with the indefinite article in descriptions if it has a descriptive attribute.

e.g. The dam will create *an enormous inland sea*.

**Note 3** The noun '**sea**' is used in certain prepositional expressions without the definite article: '*at sea*' (=in a boat or ship on the sea), '*by sea*' (=in a ship across the sea), '*out to sea*' (=out onto the sea), '*lost at sea*' (=died in the sea), '*put to sea*' (=start a journey in a ship), '*go to sea*' (=to become a sailor).

e.g. Some older tankers need maintenance while *at sea*.

Most of his belongings will be transported *by sea*.

She rowed the boat *out to sea*.

A service was held to commemorate those *lost at sea*.

The cruiser *put to sea* yesterday from the port of Mumbai.

He *went to sea* when he was a boy of fourteen.

Exercise 163. Insert articles before nouns denoting geographical oppositions.

1. 'Do you ever miss ... countryside?' she asked. 2. ... movie or ... trip to ... town was suggested and met with ... distinct lack of ... enthusiasm. 3. ... ship in port is safe, but that is not what ... ships are built for. Sail out to ... sea and do ... new things. 4. After leaving ... town, we drove around ... surrounding countryside in ... hopes Howie may spot one of ... scenes of his other visions. 5. Anyway, I saw your boss in ... town, so I figured you were alone. 6. At last, far in ... East, he came to ... land of which he had never heard. 7. But ... combing sea dashed me off, and at ... same instant, ... fish, taking one good dart forwards, went down like ... flash. 8. Far across ... sea, he saw ... black walls of Hell stretching from ... water to ... sky. 9. He simply went into ... town one day and never returned. 10. He'd only been here once, years before, but he told me he owned ... land and one day he'd settle in ... town. 11. If you are in ... desert dying of ... thirst, you value ... first glass of ... water very highly, ... second glass ... bit less, and ... 802nd not at all. 12. In many districts ... land has been cleared and cultivated and then abandoned, and has relapsed into ... scrub and ... jungle which is gradually returning to ... condition of ... forest. 13. It could have been ... tropical rain forest, so densely covered with ... trees and without ... trace of ... human inhabitants. 14. It has so completely obliterated ... original flora, that ... Queensland coast jungle is almost ... exact replication of what may be seen on ... opposite shores of ... straits, in New Guinea. 15. It is impossible not to think of all this when I return to ... country after ... year of ... work in ... town. 16. It was balanced perilously between ... small town that lacked only ... sheriff, and ... booming frontier town. 17. It was ... coal country, or had been, as much of ... depressed countryside screamed of ... poverty. 18. Our location should be within ... couple of hours at ... most from ... city; not in ... country, per se, perhaps ... small town. 19. ... drive up ... mountain took more time than he'd estimated, and as he began his descent ... sun was beginning to lower behind ... mountains. 20. ... flight out on ... Friday night had been ... comfortable few hours spent at thirty-odd thousand feet, sandwiched between ... cloud-covered countryside and ... starlit sky. 21. ... heavy scent of ... fragrant sea swept over him, ... chill of ... ocean kept out of ... city by its thick walls. 22. ... jungle around her fell suddenly still, and ... possessed branches stopped in place, as if watching her. 23. ... scent of ... sea was in ... air, ... rough circle of ... lighter darkness before her. 24. ... town was fairly large with ... dozen or so business buildings on each side of ... street but, as I said, most were closed. 25. They ran through ... forest toward ... cliff, then ducked deeper into ... forest before ... trees gave way at ... cliff. 26. They reached ... small encampment at ... bottom of ... mountain and passed around it, one calling out a greeting as someone trotted out to meet them. 27. This is not ... land of my birth, but it is ... land for which I hold ... greatest affection. 28. We drove along ... beach and into ... town of Nahant. 29. When assured she'd follow, he released her and marched on into ... desert, away from ... mountain. 30. ... world class vistas, ... trickling silver rivers of high snow melt-off, ... sky as blue as ... queen's velvet robe, and ... green and grey of ... forest and ... rock towering in every direction – all went unseen.

Exercise 164. Revision: fill in the blanks with articles if necessary.

1. 'He must have driven ... south, away from Ouray,' Cynthia mused. 2. 'This,' said Princess Ozma, 'is my friend Mr. H. M. Woggle-Bug, T. E., who assisted me one time when I was in ... great distress, and is now ... Dean of ... Royal College of ... Athletic Science.' 3. Can we not do without ... **society** of our gossips ... little while under these circumstances – have our own thoughts to cheer us? 4. 'Maybe ... land is valuable for some other reason,' Cynthia offered. 5. After ... breakfast, she closed her account at ... bank and turned in her resignation. 6. After ... French occupation in 1842, ... building was used successively as ... soap factory, ... prison, ... canteen, ... parish church, and, lastly, as ... museum. 7. Ahead of her lay ... college and ... possible career in ... journalism. 8. All ... girls have ... opportunity of going to ... college while ... money is still there. 9. If I had been astonished at first catching ... glimpse of so outlandish ... individual as Queequeg circulating among ... polite society of ... civilized town, that astonishment soon departed upon taking my first daylight stroll through ... streets of New Bedford. 10. At ... university he made ... rapid progress, especially in ... jurisprudence, though preferring ... study of ... history, ... literature, ... juridical science and ... philosophy. 11. Dean usually devoted ... solitary time behind ... wheel to sorting out ... details of ... case, putting ... little facts in their slots like ... letters in ... country post office. 12. Fran just finished her freshman year in ... college. 13. He goes to ... dentist's for ... check-up every six months. 14. He pointed to ... small table across ... pub, and she wondered how she'd missed ... men at ... table. 15. He sat like he owned ... pub, leaning back in ... chair in ... display of ... relaxed power. 16. He sold out his family for ... money and ... land in Italy. 17. His gaze turned to ... east, where yellow lined ... horizon. 18. In ... society where most knowledge was transmitted orally, where ... books were uncommon, ... only way you learned ... things was by hearing them. 19. How could ... man with four million in ... bank be in ... financial danger? 20. I carried ... little story to ... post-office myself, feeling as if I were walking on ... air. 21. I was put into ... jail as I was going to ... shoemaker's to get ... shoe which was mended. 22. I'm working my way through ... college, but what have I ever done to give you ... idea I was destitute? 23. If you would know ... history of these homesteads, inquire at ... bank where they are mortgaged. 24. In 1697 he gained ... professorship of ... rhetoric at ... university. 25. In addition to ... storage buildings, he owns ... insurance agency, ... bank and ... bunch of ... commercial real estate. 26. In many places, especially in ... villages, ... pub can be ... focal point of ... community. 27. In such ... small town, there couldn't be many positions, and ... pay wouldn't come close to what she was making in Tulsa. 28. In ... offices and ... shops and at ... post office everyone was talking about ... army and about ... enemy who was already attacking ... town. 29. It didn't take long for him to get ... home, and when he came in from ... garage, he went directly to his gun cabinet and took out ... rifle. 30. It was ... week or two after ... last whaling scene recounted, and when we were slowly sailing over ... sleepy, vapoury, mid-day sea, that ... many noses on ... Pequod's deck proved more vigilant discoverers than ... three pairs of ... eyes aloft. 31. Marian Anderson, with more money than ... small city bank, was always



inheriting something. 32. ... society with only 2 percent of ... people working in ... agriculture has become so efficient and productive that it takes very little effort to feed everyone. 33. Maybe he wasn't ... saddle bum, but only ... greenhorn would think he could live off ... barren land that surrounded them. 34. ... mortgages for all of us were quickly processed through ... private bank owned by one of Merrill Cooms' entities. 35. My bank account has ... 'sweep' feature where every night ... money is taken out of my account and loaned out for ... few hours to ... banks halfway around ... world where it is daytime. 36. Now this Radney, I suppose, was as little of ... coward, and as little inclined to any sort of ... nervous apprehensiveness touching his own person as any fearless, unthinking creature on ... land or on ... sea that you can conveniently imagine, gentlemen. 37. ... cost to ... system has not changed; costs have just been transferred from ... business to ... society at large. 38. ... President Harper was selected by him to organize ... university, and it was his will that ... president and two-thirds of ... trustees should be 'always' Baptists. 39. Rockefeller follows ... title of ... university on all its letterheads and official documents. 40. Sean got you some clothes before he went to ... pub for his shift. 41. She left ... post office feeling better about Russell Cade than she did about herself. 42. She searched ... busy pub with her gaze. 43. Suddenly, near by on ... right, ... shouting and ... firing were again heard. 44. ... owner, tenant or manager of ... pub is properly known as ... 'pub landlord'. 45. And say ... net cost to ... society of having ... gallon of ... polluted water dumped into ... river is \$10. 46. In 1898 ... old Paris prisons of Grande-Roquette, Saint-Plagie and Mazas were demolished, and to replace them ... large prison with 1500 cells was erected at Fresnes-ls-Rungis. 47. They aren't supposed to be hunting on ... private land without ... permission, and ours is posted anyway. 48. They would have some time to enjoy ... late Christmas at ... home when they returned. 49. What's more, ... Internet can be ... fact checker, ... post office, ... Rolodex, ... Yellow Pages, ... White Pages, ... game board, ... garage sale, ... university, ... movie theater, ... jukebox, ... matchmaking service, ... travel agent, ... photo album, ... bank, ... support group ... 50. When picking up her mail at ... post office, she often talked to Adrena. 51. When they paused at ... bank, she could stand the pain no longer. 52. 'Katie is going to take you ... home,' Alex said. 53. There were, however, but few ... prisons in France adapted for ... cellular system, and ... process of ... reconstruction has been slow. 54. Pierre pointed to ... knoll on ... left, near which some troops could be seen. 55. Marion Anderson, his lieutenant's wife, had offered use of her recently acquired place in Ouray, Colorado, ... small town just two hours to ... north, but Dean had declined. 56. ... home was any place they were together. 57. All ... wealthier men, both in ... countryside and in ... towns, were required to take up ... duties as well as ... privileges of ... membership of ... military household of ... king.

## 6.19 ARTICLES WITH NAMES OF MEDIA AND MEANS OF COMMUNICATION

§ 64 You can refer to systems of mass communication and the media by using a noun with the definite article (or sometimes by using a noun without an article). In this way you can distinguish them from actual objects; ‘a radio’ will always be a particular object, but ‘the radio’ could refer to a system, as in this example.

e.g. We gather facts and attitudes from the press, the television and *the radio*.

Words in this category are: (*the*) *radio*, (*the*) *television*, (*the*) *telly*, (*the*) *TV*, *the box*, *the mail* (Am), *the news*, *the newspapers*, *the paper*, *the papers*, *the phone*, *the post* (Br), *the press*, *the telephone*.

§ 65 When referring to television as a form of entertainment or communication, you can use the definite article or no article.

e.g. They go on *the television* and smoke drugs in front of the viewers.

He isn't as serious as he is *on television*.

The abbreviations, ‘**TV**’ and ‘**telly**’ can be used in the same way, although ‘**TV**’ tends to occur without an article in this sense. ‘**Telly**’ is an informal alternative; another informal expression is ‘**the box**’ (always with the definite article).

e.g. I don't want to be seen on *the telly*.

I don't know anyone whose face appears regularly in newspapers and on *TV*.

Gossip is a constant background on *telly* or radio.

You can refer to ‘**radio**’ as a means of communication with either the definite article or no article.

e.g. I just heard her speaking on *the radio*.

He had already become a climbing spokesman *on radio*.

When using ‘**telephone**’ or ‘**phone**’ to refer to a means of communication, you use the definite article.

e.g. A large part of Linda's day is spent on *the telephone*.

Haig and Nixon are regularly on *the phone* with each other.

There are also the expressions ‘**by telephone**’ and ‘**by phone**’ in which ‘*telephone*’ and ‘*phone*’ refer to the system of communication, although there is no article.

e.g. He attempted to reach her at the camp *by telephone*.

You speak of ‘**the newspapers**’ or ‘**the papers**’ when referring to newspapers as a form of media. The meaning is similar to ‘**the press**’.

e.g. *The papers* are saying how unusual it is.

Sometimes ‘**the paper**’ is also used to mean newspapers generally, not one particular newspaper.

e.g. This is what we read in *the paper*.

When you use ‘**post**’ (AmE ‘mail’) to refer to a system of communication, you use the definite article.

e.g. One morning there arrived through *the post* an amazing letter.

However, there is also the expression ‘**by post**’ which refers to the service.

e.g. He acquired the necessary reference books *by post*.

Exercise 165. Insert articles before nouns denoting names of media and means of communication.

1. ... television played somewhere, and ... light outlined ... frame of one door. 2. After ... breakfast they went upstairs to watch ... children's movie on ... television with Destiny and Jonathan. 3. Because ... television was ... radio with pictures, ... first television shows were simply ... men in ... suits standing in front of ... microphones reading ... news. 4. Before ... days of ... television, ... people used to listen to ... radio. 5. ... children spend too much time watching ... television. 6. Did ... press make ... connection with her death and her position at ... call center? 7. Don't believe everything you read in ... papers. 8. He also defended ... privileges of ... Irish Protestants in ... press. 9. He lacked ... satellite phone, ... smart phone, ... cell phone, or even ... phone. 10. Howie forbids our even discussing any interim results by ... phone, thereby leaving us in ... dark. 11. I know she tried unsuccessfully to raise him on ... radio when she first got ... call about ... wreck. 12. I'll send you ... letter; it's best not to talk about such things on ... phone. 13. If ... network doesn't work, there's ... radio in your greencar. 14. If you go sailing you should listen to ... weather reports on ... radio. 15. Logan and Jared were in front of ... television, talking about ... basketball game. 16. Mom was pretty upset about something – something that came in ... mail yesterday. 17. Nowadays it's possible to buy ... phone which you can speak into without lifting ... receiver. 18. Of course, she could call Connie, but Yancey's conversation on ... phone was fresh in her memory. 19. That lady who's in ... news, ... one from Idaho who claims she's ... tipster, she wrote an entry. 20. ... phone rang before Betsy could respond. 21. ... radio had shifted into Christmas mode with one song after another. 22. ... reports which you have read in ... paper about me are not true at all. 23. ... third room was for Howie who was busy on ... telephone when four of us arrived. 24. The Times is ... newspaper with ... long tradition. 25. ... worst of it was when I got that adoption form in ... mail today. 26. This letter is for you; it came in ... post this morning. 27. We bought ... television with ... 21-inch screen.

## 6.20 ARTICLES WITH NOUNS DENOTING FORMS OF ENTERTAINMENT

§ 66 When you are talking about someone going to enjoy a form of entertainment you use the definite article with the word for the form of entertainment. Words like this are: **'cinema'** (AmE **'movies'**), **'theatre'**, **'opera'**, **'ballet'**.

e.g. Let's go to *the movies*.

You have seen things. You have been to *the opera*, *the ballet*, *the theatre*.

**'Cinema'**, **'theatre'**, **'opera'**, and **'ballet'**, as well as **'dance'**, **'film'**, and **'television'**, can be used as uncountable nouns without an article to refer to the art form.

- e.g. She teaches *drama* and *dance*.  
She retired after 40 years in *cinema*.

The definite article is usually used with the expressions *to go to (to be at) the cinema/the theatre/the pictures/the movies*; *to be on at the cinema, the pictures, the movies* (AmE):

- e.g. We went to *the theatre* last night.  
Is there anything good *on at the cinema* this weekend?

**Note 1** When ‘**cinema**’ and ‘**theatre**’ denote buildings in which films or plays are shown they follow the general rules of the use of articles for countable nouns.

- e.g. There are *three theatres* in the town.  
*A new cinema* is being built in our street.

**Note 2** Names of games are used with an article in combination with the verb ‘**play**’.

- e.g. The children were playing *football* in the park.  
Shall we play *cards* or *chess*?

Exercise 166. Insert articles before nouns denoting forms of entertainment.

1. ‘Back when you were in ... high school, they hadn’t invented ... movies,’ Harold offered. 2. ... landmark cultural building, either ... theatre or ... opera house, according to Coyne, will act as ... focal point for ... area. 3. And apart from ... things like ... entertainment, you wouldn’t pay for someone to go to ... cinema for you and have ... fun on your behalf, or, at least, not yet. Maybe sometime in ... future, we will. 4. Any town with ... theater should be large enough to have ... selection of ... stores. 5. At Vienna in 1824 he spent every moment at ... Italian opera, ... ballet and ... picture-galleries. 6. Because ... people I speak to in ... northern hemisphere that used to go in ... cinema get this. 7. Both teams like to get ... ball on ... deck and play through ... midfield and that makes it ... entertaining football to watch. 8. ... dance is ... only art in which we ourselves are ... stuff of which it is made. 9. Every decade has brought something new for ... cinema. 10. Hang on, it’s not ... kind of ... climax you would see in ... cinema, where ... hero beats up ... platoon of ... toughies to rescue ... love of his life. 11. He avoided all ... distraction and ... recreation, and even at ... home did nothing but play ... cards with his mother. 12. He entered his wife’s drawing room as one enters ... theater, was acquainted with everybody, equally pleased to see everyone, and equally indifferent to them all. 13. He wasn’t dressed like opening night at ... opera by accident! 14. I don’t think ... Irish cinema has produced anything better than *The Butcher Boy*. 15. I take ... ballet, ... jazz, and ... Pointe, which is ... ballet on ... toe shoes. 16. In ... ballet ... complicated story is impossible to tell... we can’t dance ... synonyms. 17. In ... last few years London has seen ... variety of ... operatic styles in ... contemporary opera. 18. It declares ... cinema to be its own independent art form that should not borrow from ... literature or ... stage. 19. On ... other hand, there’s nothing like going to ... opera or ... Shakespearean theatre on ... mild dose of ... magic mushrooms. 20. ... people play ... chess, so that object playing ... Grand Master must be ... person. 21. She would be getting ready for ... dance or ... movies – with Denton? 22. You don’t need to be

... film buff to enjoy ... movies or ... football fanatic to watch ... game. 23. Since then he has attended ... London Academy for ... Music and ... Dramatic Arts, and has been involved in all ... aspects of ... theatre including writing, acting and producing. 24. ... clearest examples of ... pure cinema are said by ... essayist and filmmaker Hubert Revol to be ... documentaries. 25. ... club reached its peak in ... 1970s, when it gained ... reputation for playing ... entertaining football. 26. ... film also boasts one of ... most unexpected plot devices in ... history of ... cinema, which truly has to be seen to be believed. 27. ... next performance at ... theatre is Alan Ayckbourn's 'Relatively Speaking'. 28. ... poem I wrote this morning – Barong Dance is about ... link between ... music and ... dance in Balinese Dance dramas. 29. ... young people, after returning from ... theater, had had ... supper and were grouped round ... clavichord. 30. There is ... increasingly fine line nowadays between ... modern dance and ... classical ballet. 31. This gives it ... unique character, more akin to ... board game such as ... chess than to ... normal card game. 32. Today, ... traditional art forms are practised alongside ... painting, ... photography, ... theatre and ... film. 33. When your day's work is done, I can bring ... theatre or ... opera to your home. 34. You buy ... movie ticket online, go to ... theater at ... appointed time – and ... hour into ... movie, you get up and leave. 35. You decide to splash out on ... night at ... opera, but ... theatre is full.

## 6.21 ARTICLES WITH NOUNS DENOTING MEANS OF TRANSPORT

§ 67 You can use the definite article with words like **'train'** or **'bus'** when you are referring to a whole transport system, rather than to an individual train or bus. Here is a list of words in this category: *boat, bus, ferry, hovercraft, plane, subway* (Am), *train, tram, tube* (Br), *underground* (Br).

e.g. She sent a cable to her husband and caught *the plane* back to New York.  
How long does it take on *the train*?

**'Taxi', 'car', 'ship', and 'bicycle'** are not used in this way, because they do not offer a systematic means of transport; if you say to someone *'Take the car'*, you must be referring to a particular car.

With **'underground', 'tube', and 'subway'**, you can use the definite article to refer not only to the form of transport, but also to the location.

e.g. I am alone in **the underground** waiting for a train.  
I am travelling from Lincoln to Kings Cross and then catching *the underground* to Heathrow.

All these words can be used after **'by'** without an article to describe the form of transport used. You can also use the following words after **'by'** without an article: *air, bicycle, bike, cab, car, rail, road, sea, ship, taxi*.

e.g. I don't often travel by bus.

Exercise 167. Insert articles before nouns denoting means of transport.

1. 'He didn't pedal ... bicycle to Kansas either, Dorothy,' Fred said, peering at ... map. 2. ... boat and crew sat motionless on ... sea. 3. Carmen sat with her hands

clutched together tightly as ... plane taxied out to ... runway. 4. ... corn from middle Russia for Astrakhan is transferred from ... railway to ... boats at Tsaritsyn; ... timber and wooden wares from ... upper Volga are unloaded here and sent by ... rail to Kalach; and ... fish, ... salt and ... fruits sent from Astrakhan by ... boat up ... Volga are here unloaded and despatched by ... rail to ... interior of the country. 5. Even though some of ... destinations might have been more efficiently visited by ... plane, Byrne always took ... company car, often resulting in very long workdays. 6. First of all in London we have ... Tube which is still owned by ... Government, so ... comparisons can be made there. 7. He still relied on ... taxi to get him from his apartment to Peabody. 8. He was dressed in ... worn clothing and ... shoes and flattened his palms against ... window, as if he'd never been on ... train before. 9. I didn't know if I'd catch ... cab or ... bus would hit me. 10. I lied to Bobby – told him dad lent ... car to ... friend while he took ... train into Philly, like he usually does. 11. I then got ... Underground and ... train to Westcliff. 12. I was no longer ... restless, excitable little creature, requiring ... attention of everybody on ... train to keep me amused. 13. Not even ... ferry, ... scow or other boat could move in ... harbour. 14. Pausing at her normal bus stop, Deidre debated walking instead of taking ... bus. 15. She was uneasy because she had never been on ... plane before. 16. She'd been ... zombie and took ... bus to ... store this morning. 17. ... officer commanding ... British frigate 'Dartmouth', Captain Fellowes, seeing ... Turkish fireship close to windward of him, sent ... boat with ... demand that she should be removed. 18. ... rivers on ... east coast are practically ... only highways, ... Malays always travelling by ... boat in preference to walking. 19. ... subway was built by ... city, but leased and operated by ... private company on such terms as to repay its cost in forty years. 20. ... train lurched forward, ... gentle hum of ... electricity soon pushing her into ... near-doze, until ... train lurched to ... halt. 21. ... train would be best; it leaves every hour. 22. ... next year you'll be able to go by ... hovercraft; they're starting ... new service. It'll be much quicker than ... boat. 23. You'll have no trouble getting ... home; ... bus doesn't stop running till ... midnight. 24. There are many ways for ... tourists to get around London. If you don't mind travelling in ... tunnels, take ... underground; if you like to see where you're going, sit on ... top deck of ... bus and if you're in ... hurry, take ... taxi. 25. Then you'd get on ... bus or ... subway and go to ... polling place and vote. 26. These suburbs are connected with ... city, some by ... railway, some by ... steam, cable and electric tramways, and others by ... ferry across Port Jackson. 27. They crossed ... ferry where he had talked with Pierre ... year before.

## 6.22 ARTICLES IN SOME COMMON EXPRESSIONS

§ 68 Notice the use of articles in some common expressions.

1) *a great many of, a great deal of, as a result, etc.*

e.g. York Road will be closed and delays are likely *as a result*.

2) *at a glance, at first sight, at hand, at peace, at present, at random, at work,*

*etc.*

e.g. I could see *at a glance* that it wasn't his own work.

3) *by accident, by birth, by chance, by hand, by letter, by mistake, by name, by nature, by profession, by sight, etc.*

e.g. I don't know him personally, but I know him *by sight*.

4) *for ages, for hours, for a while, etc*

e.g. She's lived here *for ages*.

5) *in a hurry, in a low/loud voice, in addition to, in answer to, in comparison with, in connection with, in contrast with, in debt, in detail, in honour of, in person, in place of, in question, in relation to, in the original, etc.*

e.g. She talked *in detail* about future plans for the school.

6) *on board the ship, on consideration, on deck, on examination, on foot, on hand, on holiday, on leave, on principle, on the account of, on the invitation of, on the one hand/on the other hand, on the spot, on the whole, on tiptoe, on top of all that, on vacation, etc.*

e.g. *On the one hand*, expansion would be good, but *on the other hand* it would be sad to lose the family atmosphere.

7) *out of doors, out of the question, etc.*

e.g. Taking a holiday then is *out of the question*.

8) *under the influence of, etc.*

e.g. John was driving *under the influence of* alcohol and met with an accident.

9) *to be at a loss, to be on the safe side, to fly into a passion, to get in a fury/ rage, to give/get/ask permission, to have a mind to do sth, to keep house, to keep the bed, to lose heart, to take a fancy to, to take offence, to take the trouble to do sth, to take to heart, to tell the truth/bare truth, etc.*

e.g. I was *at a loss* to understand what had happened.

Exercise 168. Supply the required articles, paying special attention to phraseological combinations.

1. We sent ... results of ... vote by ... letter. 2. He went to ... rotten log near at ... hand and began to dig under one end of it with his knife. 3. It was ... holiday, and no games on ... account of ... rain. 4. I know ... woodchopper, of ... middle age, who takes ... French paper, not for ... news as he says, for he is above that, but to 'keep himself in ... practice, he being ... Canadian by ... birth. 5. His father had crept several times on ... tiptoe into ... room to see if he was stirring. 6. And on ... top of all that he had ... quarrel with his wife. 7. Evelyn knew she didn't deserve to feel at ... peace after ... mess she dragged Kiera into. 8. On ... consideration I am not so sure you're right. 9. He took one of ... books at ... random. 10. He opposed my plan on ... principle. 11. I came across ... book by ... chance. 12. I'll make ... inventory of what we have on ... hand. 13. After she had ... leisurely dinner downstairs Julia played ... piano for ... while. 14. There was nothing to be said in ... answer to such ... bitter accusations. 15. His name was mentioned in ... connection with ... ping-pong championship. 16. But this awkwardness only lasted ... minute, because ... strange captain, observing at ... glance how ... affairs stood, cried out, I see, I see! – avast heaving there! 17. ... little car in ... question now stood outside ... front door.

18. He knew Marion Sharpe by ... sight as he knew everyone in Milford. 19. He asked ... man what was his idea with ... regard to ... best means for accomplishing his plan. 20. On ... examination ... object turned out to be ... page torn from ... book. 21. I have ... great deal of ... company in my house; especially in ... morning, when nobody calls. 22. I broke my spectacles by ... accident and then found I didn't really need them. 23. He was so uneasy that his presence was out of ... question. 24. ... people specialized, ... technology advanced, and as ... result, ... men walked on ... moon. 25. ... pictures were painted by ... hand, and some of them were very beautiful. 26. By ... nature, he didn't smile, but would he turn away from her or tolerate her? 27. He pictured ... vanity of his diplomatic career in ... comparison with Pierre's happiness. 28. Before long I reached several conclusions in ... relation to my unknown friend. 29. At ... loss as to what to do next, he was about to summon Darkyn when ... room shook. 30. He then went down to ... dinner, and ordered ... whole bottle of ... claret in ... honour of ... event. 31. Alpatych turned to ... peasants and ordered two of them by ... name to come and bind Karp. 32. 'I wonder why they didn't kill us on ... spot,' remarked Zeb, who had lost his king in ... struggle. 33. I was familiar with ... story of Troy before I read it in ... original. 34. If you have ... mind to make ... haste, we may surprise them. 35. ... cabin lamp was burning fitfully, and casting ... fitful shadows upon ... old man's bolted door, – ... thin one, with ... fixed blinds inserted, in ... place of ... upper panels. 36. Dean didn't doubt for ... minute ... booty would be examined in ... detail as soon as he was asleep. 37. I know that most men think differently from myself; but those whose lives are by ... profession devoted to ... study of these or kindred subjects, content me as little as any. 38. He asked if he might record ... interview in ... addition to taking ... notes. 39. She could have kissed Gerald by ... mistake as Alex walked out on ... porch.

Exercise 169. Insert articles where necessary.

1. I trust you to tell me ... bare truth, whatever it is. 2. The maid, looking to right and left, spoke in ... low and hurried voice. 3. On his trip round ... world with Fleur he had often put his nose out and watched the dancing on ... deck. 4. He decided that he would not at ... present explain to her who he was. 5. I saw ... good deal of him during ... war. 6. He has taken his death very much to ... heart indeed. 7. What did her education and her accomplishments amount to? She could keep ... house. 8. All seemed perfectly at their ease, by no means in ... hurry. 9. Or suppose he comes from reading ... Greek or Latin classic in ... original, whose praises are familiar even to ... so-called illiterate; he will find nobody at all to speak to, but must keep silence about it. 10. Am I dealing, young people, with ... case of ... love at ... first sight? 11. We've had some tea already on ... board ... yacht. 12. Rosa was well aware that she had never taken ... trouble to get to know Annette. 13. In ... contrast with ... dread felt by ... infantrymen placed in ... support, here in ... battery everyone experienced ... common and as it were family feeling of ... animation. 14. If your banker breaks, you snap; if your apothecary by ... mistake sends you poison in your pills, you die. 15. It is ... pleasure to see you. 16. He held ... very guarded conversation with her on his way home for fear that she would take ... additional offence. Argument was out



of ... question. 17. On ... other hand, if he was beaten he took it with complete good humour. 18. He is beginning to lose ... heart, they say. 19. His father, who was descended from ... old untitled noble family and possessed ... small estate, was by ... profession ... advocate. 20. I got into conversation with him by ... chance at ... concert. 21. She's taken quite ... fancy to you, Ridgeon. 22. In ... addition to its small size, it shared ... common wall to ... Dean's quarters, infringing on their privacy. 23. I returned at once, and found Ada sitting at ... work by ... fireside. 24. He was, by ... nature, ... fighter, not someone to toss in ... towel in ... despair, regardless how trying ... life had become. 25. Somewhere ... great many men were singing. 26. He was chronically in ... debt. 27. ... woman I fixed my eye on was ... woman who kept ... house for me at my cottage. 28. It is ... pity to worry her if she has ... talent for ... uneasiness. 29. He has given ... permission to go up and see her there. 30. Behind ... house was ... large garden, and in summer, ... pupils almost lived out of ... doors. 31. ... rain had stopped: and we went on ... foot to ... Ebury Street. 32. Tired but more at ... peace with ... strange world, she stretched out on ... couch to watch ... TV. 33. On being informed that her departure would be delayed she had flown into ... violent passion. 34. All of ... sudden, his face had become stony. 35. Indeed, it has only one drawback, and that probably is regarded as ... advantage by ... professors; it is that one's mistakes may be detected at ... glance; for there is no chance to hide them in ... illegible writing. 36. Nor will it at all detract from him, dramatically regarded, if either by ... birth or other circumstances, he has what seems ... half willful overruling morbidness at ... bottom of his nature.

Exercise 170. Revision: fill in the blanks with articles if necessary.

1. 'I could call ... taxi,' she said. 2. 'Oh, I have a plan for making ... boat move without poling it or rowing it,' he answered. 3. All orders as to where and when to move the guns were given by the officers on ... spot. 4. All right, I'll charter ... plane for ... morning. 5. Almost every one on ... train was a physician, and Dr. Keller seemed to know them all. 6. As soon as she turned on ... radio, it crackled to life. 7. As soon as ... plane left the runways they were enveloped in clouds. 8. Believe me it's far more difficult to know what to say to an unconscious loved one than ... movies make out. 9. Caine then tells Parkinson about his love for ... movies, and the main reasons he became an actor. 10. Confidence was now running high for Molleran's and at last they began to show some of ... stylish football that had taken them to the final. 11. Cynthia gave them both a cautious look but after explaining in ... detail what needed to be done, she agreed to let the surrogate cooking team give it a try. 12. He could simply turn the subject off, like ... radio, leaving her in shamed silence. 13. He has ... mind to spend the rest of his life in that country. 14. He is known for his non-conformist attitude in every field in which he has proven himself, be it politics, ... theatre or the legal profession. 15. I'll drive you to ... town this morning. 16. He takes ... bus down every Wednesday – with the rest of the old folks. 17. Her dexterity is not notable either in ... comparison with the normal person, whose movements are guided by the eye, or, I am told, with other blind people. 18. Her gaze dropped to the driver's seat, where ... small black military radio sat where

none had been when she left the car. 19. However, with ... modern ballet comes greater foot support through modern pointe ballet shoes and trained technique. 20. I heard the faint sound of ... phone ringing downstairs. 21. I like to knit and crochet; I read in the happy-go-lucky way I love, here and there a line; or perhaps I play a game or two of ... checkers or ... chess with a friend. 22. I look upon England today as an old gentleman who is travelling with ... great deal of baggage. 23. I questioned the newspaper woman in Boston, by ... telephone, in hopes of enticing her to meet with me under the guise of my writing a magazine article. 24. I read in ... paper today they recovered another child and arrested the stupid abductor. 25. I thought I might be able to fix the time setting by trial and error but I was at ... loss establishing a location. 26. We decided to spend ... summer in ... seaside town. 27. I worked with every single legend in the history of ... Indian cinema that was alive at that time. 28. If you were a scientist in Salk's time, you did calculations by ... hand and wrote observations in notebooks. 29. In Camden Town, I'll meet you by ... Underground. 30. In ... cinema directors can add the use of music, editing, and images to help create mood. 31. Is ... bus bringing him, or do you have to go get him? 32. We've been asked a number of times, by ... press and everyone else if we're an adjunct to the tipster person. 33. It is served by many steamship lines and by ... ferry to Portsmouth. 34. I've been all over and most of it looks the same from ... bus or a bar. 35. Maybe we could have a picnic, or play ... ball together. 36. Mechanics and tradesmen who come in ... person to the forest on no other errand, are sure to attend the wood auction, and even pay a high price for the privilege of gleaning after the woodchopper. 37. My pa used to play ... cards with Blackie Rowland. 38. One person, better dressed than the rest, seemed to know everyone and mentioned by ... name the greatest dignitaries of the day. 39. Saying this, he ordered that ten gold pieces be given to the merchant in ... place of those that were lacking. 40. Surely he didn't expect her to hop on ... plane and fly down there with him. 41. The boy no doubt inherits a capacity for riding ... bicycle, otherwise he could never do so. 42. They lived in ... same part of ... town. 43. The countess was accustomed to this tone as a precursor of news of something detrimental to the children's interests, such as the building of a new gallery or conservatory, the inauguration of ... private theater or an orchestra. 44. ... dance forgotten, they stood transfixed, lost in emotion. 45. The day after ... opera the Rostovs went nowhere and nobody came to see them. 46. The figures ran through our operation like ... train past a no-stop station. 47. The general had a fit of coughing as ... result of shouting and of the powder smoke and stopped in despair. 48. ... newspaper is particularly useful for those players who want to make progress in ... chess. 49. ... opera has been around China for more than 400 years, impacting many other genres of ... folk opera. 50. The voice on ... phone was almost hysterical. 51. They began ... surreal dance of body and mind that left them both dizzy with passion. 52. They practically play ... baseball all year! 53. They sang together and everyone in ... theater began clapping and shouting. 54. Thus, when television first came out, people said it was ... 'radio with pictures.' 55. The Caledonian railway enters ... town from ... south-west by a bridge across the river, and also owns ... ferry to South Alloa, on the opposite shore, in Stirlingshire. 56. He

made ... boat for himself. 57. I was kind of embarrassed about the money not coming in ... mail like I said. 58. ... town was not large enough for one to stay anonymous.

Exercise 171. Revision: fill in the blanks with articles wherever necessary. Comment on your choice.

1. Six months in ... bed no longer seemed a long time when Mrs. Carlton beside her had been in ... bed for eighteen months. 2. You see, Chris, even in quite ... small provincial town you could have ... clinic. 3. It's worse than ... prison, because in ... prison at least you are all criminals, but here only we three have the stigma on us, and in ... prison you can at least have a cell to yourself. 4. If you don't mind getting out of ... bed, my Lord. 5. Paulette, when this is over, I'm going to treat you to ... best lunch in ... town. 6. Lorna was glad that she had gone to ... secondary school because it had been only constructed a year before. She was 17 years of age and had left ... school 2 years before. 7. On the morning of ... third day of rain we decided to go down into ... town. 8. Well, amigo, don't you think it's time you were in ... comfortable bed? We have one for you at the San Miguel. 9. I've been weak and I have permitted your father to drive me from ... church. 10. ... ship was floating idly on ... motionless sea. 11. Mel Bakersfeld was in ... hospital after he had spent a few terrible hours in the truck snowbound on one of the runways. 12. Floyd was surprised to hear Pul's daughter was doing well at ... school while his son was only somewhere down at the chart. 13. Jan lay back in ... narrow hospital bed and tried to adjust herself to her new surroundings. 14. They were chasing round ... town while she waited for them. 15. He had felt that ... sea had finally relieved him of his burden of violence; ... future he and Swyer hoped for themselves was harmless and unobjectionable on ... mild sea among mild men. 16. He held himself very erect, as though he were still in ... Air Cadets' school. 17. If she could somehow manage to marry him while he was in ... jail all those millions would be hers and hers alone should he be executed. 18. So they were all seated at ... table, Rudolph self-consciously the focus of the occasion wearing a collar and tie, and sitting very erect, like a cadet at ... table at West Point. 19. He was explaining the work that was going forward – how one was discharging another taking in cargo, and a third making ready for ... sea. 20. 'Jack, what are you going to do with your life?' – 'Who knows? Go to ... sea, maybe, build electronic equipment, teach, marry a rich wife.' 21. After I checked into the office and confirmed that there was nothing for me that weekend I drove into ... town in my Volkswagen. 22. I had known Jan slightly in ... high school. 23. He was usually caustic in his comments on those who used ... church only for marrying, or burying. 24. I had seen them walking together, arms linked, to ... sea, coming back rather late and tired and happy to ... cold lunch. 25. We could hear voices of men from ... town, talking loudly together. 26. I wanted to look in at ... hospital before it was too late for visitors. 27. ... bed was empty and there was no one in the room. 28. Men who had had high positions in the White House were being sent to ... jail. 29. He was a youngish man in a button-down collar to show that he had gone to ... law school in the East, and a bright bow tie, to show that he now lived in California. 30. This was no time to be laid up immobilized and helpless in ...

hospital for weeks or may be months on end. 31. I read with satisfaction that Venice was sinking into ... sea. 32. He probed his mind for anything he might have done in ... college. 33. Still it was better than teaching chemistry in ... high school. 34. Picked her up cheap at ... market last spring and thought I'd got a bargain, but I soon found out. 35. I'm in my second year in ... medical school. 36. ... Post Office clock was just striking seven, when we drove out of ... town and took ... seacoast road. 37. They followed him through the slight drizzle to the garage. ... few men were sitting at ... table, playing ... cards, and a girl was curled up on the couch reading a paperback book. 38. The furniture was all sent round by ... water. 39. It is connected by ... ferry with South Portland. 40. The transport must come by ... sea to Plymouth. 41. They are at ... sea now. They write that they are having ... marvellous time. 42. He was about to start on ... long journey, ... difficult one, by ... sea, and no soul would know where he was gone. 43. He played ... flute.

Exercise 172. Revision: fill in the blanks with articles before nouns in some common expressions if necessary.

1. For a while I went often to ... theatre, to ... movies, losing myself for a few hours at ... time in the fantasies. 2. There simply isn't enough airspace above New York – I'm thinking of traveling there by ... train in ... future. 3. Every piece is insured and described in ... detail. 4. He looked clean and brushed; he was going to ... town for ... day. 5. Doreen didn't like to be turfed out of her own flat every time Bart came home on ... leave. 6. One night he went to ... theatre, on the blind chance that he might see her, and from the second balcony he did see her. 7. There was even a mention of the fact that Rudolph had run the two-twenty for the Fort Philip track team and that he had played ... trumpet in a jazz combination called the River Five in the middle of 1940s. 8. I had left word with Anna to tell Mrs. Grimes that I had been called to the city on ... business and that I would be gone a day or two. 9. I found myself in a difficulty when I asked her to play ... piano, he didn't know that she couldn't play. 10. They have no light after eight o'clock, but from sardine-tins, a little oil and a rag they make lamps by the light of which they can see enough to play ... cards. 11. You know the saying – you have a minister on ... board watch out for lousy weather. 12. When I rang for letters and the papers ... next morning a message was delivered to me, in ... answer to my note to Miss Fellows. 13. I wrote you in ... care of an address your mother gave me, about a very important private matter. 14. We played ... whist. I had learned the game when I was a child. 15. I have no mother, nor, in ... fact, any relations. 16. Castleman and his friends, smart, showy youths, all played ... tennis and ... bridge and knew all the latest shows and dances and drinks. 17. 'If I met you on ... beach at ... midnight in that green get-up, I'd swear you were a mermaid come to ... town.' – 'Mermaids don't come to ... town,' she said laughing. 18. Step up activity in ... support of proportional representation. 19. He published his first novel at the period when men of letters, to show their virility, drank beer and played ... cricket. 20. Luckily we had plenty of time on ... hand. 21. And yet his son had neither replied to Rome nor alerted him in Campo di Fieri. The end of the day was at ... hand. 22. 'Of course I'll let you know,' Michael said gently. 'I couldn't bear not hearing you play ... piano from ... time to ... time.' 23. The

switchboard was at ... work early, he noted approvingly. 24. He stumbled over a big rock and fell and shot the gun by ... accident and got a lot of dirt in his eyes. 25. You will go to ... sea and forget all about me in ... month. 26. I got it easy – the way Pa lost it – by ... blackmail. 27. ‘All right,’ he said, ‘he is waiting for us in ... office. Have you got a car, or do we go by ... taxi?’ 28. Julie was crazy about music and liked to sing and thought he played ... marvellous trumpet. 29. When we get back to ... town we’ll get ... doctor to see your throat. 30. Catching sight of the clock at ... Army and Navy stores, he remembered an engagement to play ... volleyball at his club. 31. They must have sent out a call by ... radio from ... car ahead of us. 32. Michael wanted to speak to Julia so he decided to go to ... theatre and catch her there. 33. Europe is not for me. I like to come on ... holidays and all that, but not permanently. 34. I wasn’t at Jack and Gill’s that night by ... accident. 35. ‘I’m not married.’ – ‘Bravo,’ she said, ‘I am in ... possession of a fact.’ 36. He was chronically in ... debt. 37. She put the glasses on and felt very dashing, like an actress in ... movies. 38. She sent a letter by ... post. 39. My Aunt Milly was well known all over ... town. 40. Both of them seemed to know Pushkin by ... heart. 41. Finished with my calculations of times, weights, distances, sunshine, and rain, I read, making sure always to have a supply of books on ... hand to suit my tastes. 42. He stood on ... deck. 43. Somebody important must have been arriving from Europe by ... air.

Exercise 173. Revision: insert articles where necessary.

1. It was eleven o’clock. Annette was still in ... bed. 2. Stefan, who had been sitting on the edge of ... bed, came near to her and smiled for ... first time. 3. Maycomb was ... old town. 4. Dolores said nothing all the way to ... town. 5. Yes, he and my brother had been to ... school together. 6. Before that she had taught history in ... girls’ school. 7. ... school was not ... particularly good one. 8. I never knew ... lawyer yet who didn’t threaten to put me in ... prison sooner or later. 9. Steger next visited ... county jail, close on to five o’clock, when it was already dark. 10. In all probability he was already in ... town. 11. Blairhill was ... ancient town with ... winding alleys and ... old marketplace. 12. After leaving ... school, I became clerk to her father. 13. She graduated from ... Pedagogical Institute ... year ago and now she is working at ... school in ... village near Leningrad. 14. ... prison where Little Dorrit was born was called ‘The Marshalsea’. 15. I haven’t done anything that warrants my running away or going to ... prison, either. I’m merely going there to save time at ... present. 16. It was in my walk that night, and in the sleepless hours which followed when I lay in ... bed, that the thought first occurred to me which afterwards shaped itself into a settled resolution. 17. I’m afraid you can’t see Father today; he’s out of ... town. 18. When you think of me at all, John, let it only be as ... little child you have seen grow up in ... prison. 19. I walked with him through ... town. 20. I’m going to be out of ... town for a few days. So I may not even see you again. 21. Unless we can give ... rector ... bed he has nowhere to lay his head this night. 22. Who could be in ... prison a quarter of ... century, and be prosperous! 23. When will you drive back to ... town? 24. He told with ... perfect truth how he had in time been released from ... prison. 25. Among other public buildings in ... certain

town there is one anciently common to most towns, great or small ... workhouse. 26. You take your man ... home, Mrs. Dubedut, and get him to ... bed before eleven. 27. So I thought we would have ... good dinner and go to ... ballet. 28. Let's go by ... underground. 29. He spent part of ... afternoon telling them the news he could not tell them by ... telephone. 30. 'Are you a bad sailor?' she asked quickly. 'About as bad as is possible, in ... spite of having been at ... sea so much.' 31. Anna and her husband went out after ... tea to play ... cards, and took their baby, though Eugene said it would get ... pneumonia. 32. She burned like fire from ... head to ... foot. 33. They started at ... dawn, and the boy I sent with them didn't come back till ... next day. 34. Dear, dear! It seems only ... other day since I took you down to ... school at Slough! 35. Mr. Byron Waller could play ... violin. 36. He tore open the parcel that came for him by ... post. 37. She went by ... coach, because it was cheaper.

Exercise 174. Revision: translate into English.

1. Будьте внимательнее. Вы сделали ошибку. 2. Простите, я вошел в эту аудиторию по ошибке. 3. – Где мать? – Она ушла на рынок купить овощей. 4. Я не знал, что недалеко от нашего дома находится рынок. 5. Рынок был уже закрыт, и мы пошли в магазин. 6. Упражнение №5 мы сделаем в классе, а это вы сделаете дома. 7. Класс был большой светлой комнатой с тремя окнами. 8. Я переешлю вам эти книги по почте. 9. Почта – важное государственное учреждение. 10. Его уведомили об этом письмом. 11. Мой друг написал мне обо всем этом в письме. 12. Раненого отправили в госпиталь. 13. Моя сестра окончила мединститут и теперь работает в больнице. 14. Эта книга попалась мне совершенно случайно. 14. Я решил воспользоваться случаем. 15. – Мы встретимся после школы? – Где? – У входа в школу. 16. Пассажиры собрались на палубе. 17. На крупных пароходах имеется несколько палуб. 18. Экскурсанты приезжают сюда днем и ночью, сушей и морем. 19. Значительная часть территории Голландии – это земля, отвоеванная людьми у моря.

Exercise 175. Revision: translate into English paying attention to the use of articles with nouns in some common expressions.

A) 1. Она легла спать в три часа и встала с головной болью. 2. Почему вы так поздно вернулись из города? 3. Женщина подошла к кровати и накрыла ребенка одеялом. 4. Она плохо себя чувствовала и провела весь день в постели. 5. Сегодня мне надо пойти в школу на родительское собрание. 6. Я провел все лето в городе. 7. Когда сестра окончила школу, она поступила в консерваторию. 8. Мы провели несколько дней в маленьком городке на Кавказе. 9. Мы живем на даче, но часто приезжаем в город. 10. О. Генри был обвинен в краже, и, хотя он был невиновен, его посадили в тюрьму. Он сидел в тюрьме три года.

B) 1. Я хожу в кино очень редко. 2. В тот вечер он позвонил своему портному и заказал еще один костюм. 3. При данных обстоятельствах я думаю, они должны точно знать, что произошло. Возьми лист бумаги и напиши все подробно. 4. Китти, которая стояла на палубе и смотрела на реку, ушла к себе в каюту. 5. «Я в Париже по делу, – сказал я. – Я ужасно занят». 6. Я решил, что

завтра поеду в Вашингтон на автобусе. 7. «Мы будем играть в покер в субботу вечером». «Вы все еще играете в покер?» 8. Джон усердно работал. 9. Эта кофта связана вручную? 10. Когда он вошел в комнату, дочь хозяина играла на скрипке. 11. Она была близорука, но из тщеславия не носила очки, за исключением случаев, когда работала, или читала, или ходила в кино. 12. Я приехал в аэропорт рано, на такси. 13. Она стояла у такси, разговаривая с кем-то. 14. А все-таки вы не угадали, что я американец по происхождению. 15. Она была убеждена, что Хьюго играл в футбол, чтобы заработать на жизнь. 16. Пойдемте сегодня вечером в кино. 17. Рой перестал играть в крикет много лет назад. 18. Я уже не дежурил, когда она пришла, поэтому я понятия не имею, какую комнату она посещала. 19. Она взяла меня за руку и повела к дому. 20. Я думала, что вы ушли играть в гольф. 21. Казалось, доктор Вассар делала заметки на чем угодно, что попадалось под руку. 22. Я подумал, что тоже буду в отпуске. 23. Она посмотрела, как бы случайно, на стол, за которым сидели футболисты. 24. «Мне следовало помнить, что она умеет держать себя в руках», – подумала миссис Слейд. 25. Она что-то держала в руках. 26. Сколько театров у вас в городе? 27. Что идет в кино около твоего дома?

Exercise 176. Revision: translate into English.

1. Она всегда говорит очень тихо. 2. На днях я случайно встретила Нину. 3. Имеем ли мы дело, молодые люди, с любовью с первого взгляда? 4. Если вы ей так ответите, она придет в ярость. 5. По правде говоря, я так и не понял, почему она обиделась. 6. Она читает с утра до ночи. 7. Я люблю путешествовать морем. 8. Я прошу вас сказать мне чистую правду, какой бы она не была. 9. Мы пообедаем на борту яхты. 10. Вы по ошибке принесли не тот журнал. 11. Мы всегда заставляли его за работой. 12. Ты станешь моряком и через месяц все забудешь. 13. – Приходи ко мне завтра. – Об этом и речи быть не может, я занята. 14. С другой стороны, если и случится самое худшее, он воспримет это с должным чувством юмора. 15. К чему ей образование и успехи? Она может сидеть дома. 16. Мне кажется, что только на днях я отвел тебя в школу. И вот ты уже закончила школу! 17. Он собирался отправиться в трудное путешествие морем. 18. Он даже не потрудился встретить нас на вокзале. 19. Он решил пока не говорить ей, кто он. 20. Жаль, что вы не можете пойти с нами в театр. 21. Он принял его смерть слишком близко к сердцу. 22. Мы уже можем читать Диккенса и Теккерея в оригинале. 23. И на рассвете, и на закате, с утра и до вечера его видели за работой. 24. Джеймс хорошо понимал, что он, собственно, никогда и не пробовал узнать Мари. 25. Кто-то очень важный прибыл из Европы самолетом. 26. Мой брат очень хорошо играет на скрипке. 27. Он говорил очень осторожно, так как боялся, что она обидится. 28. Горничная, оглядываясь направо и налево, торопливо говорила что-то тихим голосом. 29. Нет, об этом не может быть и речи. Я очень занят. 30. Я познакомился с ним случайно на концерте. 31. Я много слышал о нем во время войны. 32. К сожалению, я плохо знаю французский и не смог прочесть Бальзака в оригинале. 33. Он пристально осмотрел меня с ног до головы. 34. Казалось все

чувствовали себя совершенно непринужденно, никто никуда не торопился. 35. Вы простужены. Придется вам соблюдать постельный режим. 36. Он хронически был в долгах. 37. К дверям подошла женщина, которая вела хозяйство в моем доме. 38. Он чувствует к вам расположение, Роджер. 39. Ему разрешили посетить заключенного, так как поговаривали, что он совсем потерял мужество. 40. Где-то далеко пело очень много людей. 41. В целом фильм мне понравился. 42. Во время путешествия он часто поднимался на палубу и смотрел на безграничное сине-зеленое пространство. 43. Он стал моряком случайно, точнее, по ошибке. 44. Когда ей сказали, что отъезд задерживается, она пришла в страшную ярость. 45. Он простоял здесь уже часы, а ему казалось – целую вечность. 46. Я склоняюсь к тому, чтобы уехать завтра же. 47. Он проспал весь третий акт, с начала до конца. 48. Я в недоумении, просто не знаю, что сказать. 49. Об этом не может быть и речи. Вы должны играть на рояле не меньше трех часов в день.

Exercise 177. Revision: supply the required articles.

1. There was ... empty bottle by ... side of ... bed, which had contained milk, and in ... piece of ... newspaper ... few crumbs. 2. He went to ... tiny kitchen, where he knew his way around, and put ... kettle of ... water on ... stove. He poured ... milk into ... jug from ... carton in ... refrigerator, then drank some milk himself before putting ... carton back. 3. ... school was ... pride of ... town. It was made of ... brick. 4. ... driver was ... broad red-faced man who looked like ... captain of ... liner. 5. When he was in ... hospital she could not get ... permission to visit him. 6. We had ... thin soup, ... lamb cutlets coated in ... breadcrumbs, and ... French-fried potatoes. 7. It was with ... greatest difficulty that Brian had persuaded him to join ... Fabians. 8. ... boy Roger sprawled on ... mat nearest to ... door. 9. He rattled on, telling ... anecdote after ... anecdote. 10. All through ... afternoon he had been torn by ... sorrow his brother did not know. 11. Her face had ... hardness of ... face on ... coin. 12. Don't be ... liar enough to say that you like it. 13. She spoke of ... cars with ... lyrical intensity that ... other people gave to ... spring, or ... first snowdrop. 14. I understand ... irony in your voice. 15. I have to go up to ... town on ... Tuesday to see ... man. 16. I did not mean to say it. It came out by ... accident. 17. Then he came to Winton to do ... research for ... year. 18. Outside ... church we met several neighbours. 19. He found himself ... face to ... face with ... Lieutenant Evans. 20. When ... news came that France had mobilized, and that ... Germans had crossed ... Belgian frontier, George abandoned all ... hope immediately. 21. Fortunately we have ... time to decide since there are ... two months of ... wet winter left us and nobody will bother us until ... spring. 22. It was impossible to say how ... things were going on ... beach. 23. Francis Chadwick was ... tallish good-looking woman, ... natural blonde with ... clothes and ... figure of ... girl who had 'modelled' ... clothes. 24. He became ... secretary of ... society he founded. 25. ... iron is ... bread of ... industry; ... nickel is ... meat. 26. It was ... cheerful place in which to pass ... wet March afternoon. 27. He was in his late seventies, confined to ... wheel-chair, but radiating ... tremendous self-confidence. 28. I was ... qualified radio technician



in ... civilian life. 29. They went out and saw that ... dawn was breaking. 30. He took him for ... ride at ... twilight. 31. ... odd feeling of ... curiosity stirred him, and he crossed over. 32. She was ... daughter of ... clergyman. 33. Buy me ... ice, please. 34. Marcel, ... fat man who runs ... place we were at ... last night, introduced me to ... two men there. 35. If she could feel ... hunger and ... thirst, ... heat and ... cold, then she could feel ... love and ... love for ... man. Well, he was ... man. And why could he not be ... man? 36. When he left ... school he built ... houses in ... small town in ... West. 37. For ... long time I had longed for ... machine that could move at ... speed of seventy miles ... hour. 38. Finally she sat down again and listened in ... tense alertness to ... conversation. 39. For ... years I could not free myself from ... influence of ... book. 40. It was ... sunny day full of ... sound of ... bees. 41. I believe we could get ... work on ... farm that would see us through ... summer. 42. He stepped out into ... twilight and breathed ... pure air. 43. ... talk flowed easily between ... two women who liked each other. 44. I did not go straight home from ... school that evening. Instead, I walked by myself ... long way round by ... canal; ... mist was rising; but as it swirled round ... bridges and ... warehouses and ... trees by ... waterside, it no longer exalted me. 45. I have received ... information on ... subject. 46. Gerda doesn't know ... art from ... coloured photograph. 47. In ... street in front of ... houses there was nothing but ... dust and ... hard brick and ... cars and ... dirty children. 48. It was ... grey, warm summer evening, and ... trees were swaying wave-like in ... wind. 49. Marion said that she must let some oxygen in before ... next lesson. She moved rapidly to ... window, opened it, returned to ... blackboard, shook ... duster so that ... cloud of ... chalk hung in ... air. 50. Brad listened in ... silence.

Exercise 178. Revision: supply the required articles in the following texts.

A) Although it was ... early afternoon all ... lights in ... restaurant were on. ... plane from New York had been delayed. ... usual gloom of ... airport was intensified by ... weather. In ... corner of ... restaurant, ... man and ... woman waited, drinking ... coffee, watching ... two small children, ... boy and ... girl who were plastered against ... big window that overlooked ... field. ... woman was in her early thirties, with ... pretty figure pleasantly displayed by ... modest grey suit. She had ... short black hair swept back in ... latest fashion, and her large grey eyes were cleverly accented by ... make-up.

B) I did not feel too good. I had ... headache and ... sore throat, and I went to ... bed at eight o'clock with some lemon and honey. When I woke up in ... morning I was so full of ... cold that I could hardly breathe. I got up and took my temperature, and upon finding it was ... hundred point four I went straight to ... bed again. ... Father wanted to send for ... doctor, and I said I did not want ... doctor. I slept most of ... day. At ... teatime ... Father came up to see me. He was carrying ... huge parcel. He put it down on ... bed. I started to undo ... brown wrappings. It was ... enormous doll. It had ... real hair and several complete changes of ... clothes, with hats and ... gloves and ... shoes and ... socks and ... parasol. I was overcome. I

stared at ... bright cheeks and ... black curls and ... blue china rolling eyes and long lashes. 'I think it's lovely,' I said.

C) ... moment I flung open ... door, I smelt ... strong smell of ... gas. I flew up ... stairs and into ... kitchen. ... air was thick with it, and I could tell from ... noise that ... oven was on, unlit. I switched it off, pulled open ... window and retreated. ... whole house stank. ... sitting-room light was on. So I went in and found David sitting on ... sofa reading ... magazine. 'What do you think you are doing?' I yelled. '... whole place is full of ... gas. Can't you smell it?' 'Gas?' he asked. 'Is it really? I thought there was ... funny smell when I came in. And I have got ... headache, come to think of it.' 'You're lucky you're not dead,' I said and went out into ... corridor.

D) Mr. Sutton was ... engineer who lived in ... next street, and he was probably ... only good mathematician in our district. I was at ... school with his son Gerald, ... gentle, bespectacled lad who was not particularly brilliant. Like myself, Mr. Sutton was interested in ... theory of ... numbers. I had ... tea with Gerald one day and talked to his father; I produced my copy of ... Diophantus's arithmetic, and we sat over it for ... rest of ... evening. I began making ... habit of seeing him two or three evenings ... week and talking over ... problems that interested me. Apart from his engineering, Mr. Sutton had been self-taught. He had left ... school at fourteen and studied at ... night-school; consequently he had ... enormous respect for ... education. He had taught himself ... German and ... French, and even to play ... piano. He was not much liked by my father, who thought he was ... know-all. Mr. Sutton enjoyed standing in ... garden on ... starry nights and explaining ... names of all ... constellations to me; if we walked in his garden on ... sunny day, he would break off ... talk about ... mathematics to tell me ... botanical names of ... flowers. He spoke ... few words of ... dozen languages, and liked to be considered ... good linguist.

E) ... fire was low, and James asked me if I would mind getting in more coal, since my shoes were thicker than Ms and therefore more waterproof. ... coal was kept in ... shed at ... bottom of ... back garden, on ... other side of ... lawn. I took ... scuttle and ... shovel, and walked across ... wet lawn; it was ... dusk, and ... rain had stopped. Behind ... coal shed flowed ... stream, and I pushed my way through some stinging nettles to peep down at it. I always loved ... sound of ... running water. It was so pleasant that I stood there for ... few minutes, enjoying ... clean air and ... smell that came from ... orchard on ... other side of ... stream. Then I turned back to ... shed, and began to fill ... scuttle with ... coal. As I did so, I had ... feeling of someone standing behind me. I cannot explain why I felt sure of this. When I turned round, holding ... full scuttle, I was aware that someone was looking at me from ... upstairs window of ... cottage, and I thought I could see ... face through ... dusk.

F) ... winter set in early and unexpectedly with ... heavy fall of ... snow. ... snow came silently through ... night, and Christine and Andrew woke to ... great glittering whiteness. ... herd of ... mountain ponies had come through ... gap in ... broken wooden pailings at ... side of ... house and were gathered round ... back door. These dark wild little creatures started away at ... approach of ... man. But in

... snowy weather ... hunger drove them down to ... outskirts of ... town. All ... winter Christine fed ... ponies. At first they backed from her, but in ... end they came to eat from her hand. One especially became her friend, ... smallest of them all, ... black tangle-maned creature whom they named Darkie. ... ponies would eat any kind of ... food, ... scraps of ... loaf, ... potato and apple rinds, even ... orange peel. Once, in ... fun, Andrew offered Darkie ... empty matchbox. Darkie munched it down and licked his lips. Though they were so poor, Christine and Andrew knew ... happiness. Christine, for all her look of ... inexperience, had ... attribute of (36) ... Yorkshire woman: she was ... housewife. With ... help of ... young girl named Jenny, ... miner's daughter who came daily, she kept ... house shining. When Andrew came in tired, she would have ... hot meal on ... table which quickly restored him.

## CHAPTER 7 USE OF ARTICLES WITH PROPER NOUNS

### 7.1 ARTICLES WITH PERSONAL NAMES

§ 69 Personal names are used without any article:

e.g. "Do you know *Turner*?" said *Burton* as I nodded a greeting.

**Note 1** Some common names (*mother, father, aunt, uncle, nurse, cook, sister, brother, cousin, baby*) are treated as proper nouns and, therefore, take no article when they are used by members of the family or by close friends (i.e. when they mean 'our father', 'our nurse', etc.)

e.g. '*Father* wants us to move into a smaller place,' Mike said.

Note that these nouns are spelled with a capital letter, which shows that they are regarded as proper nouns.

However, there is no article before personal names modified by the adjectives 'old', 'young', 'dear', 'poor', 'little', 'tiny', 'honest'.

e.g. *Little Lynette* wanted to play with the cat and I left her in the garden.

However, under certain conditions personal names are used with the definite or the indefinite article.

§ 70 The definite article with personal names is found in the following cases:

1) The definite article is used when a personal name has the plural form to indicate a whole family.

e.g. One June evening I went to dine with *the Macdonalds*.

2) The definite article is found with personal nouns modified by limiting attributes (mostly postpositional phrases).

e.g. Is he *the Jones* who is a writer?

3) With a name modified by a descriptive attribute when the limitation is clear from the context or situation (a) or when the attribute indicates a permanent quality of the person in question (b).

e.g. a) 'I am *the celebrated Mortimer Ellis*,' he said.

b) Suddenly, to everybody's surprise, *the silent Mr. Fanthorp* swung round and addressed Barbara.

4) You can stress the definite article with names of people to mean

someone famous.

e.g. 'I met Paul McCartney the other day.' 'You mean *the Paul McCartney?*'

5) The definite article is used in certain titles and in the descriptive names of some monarchs.

e.g. *the Reverend John Collins, the Prince of Wales (b u t Prince Charles), the Duke of Westminster, the Countess of Harewood, William the Conqueror, Ivan the Terrible, Alfred the Great*

§ 71. The indefinite article occurs in the following cases:

1) A personal name is used with the indefinite article to indicate a member of a family.

e.g. 'The boy is *a Benbow!*' he replied hotly.

2) When you want to suggest that someone is similar to or resembles someone famous.

e.g. His face always reminded Michael of *a Lincoln grown old*.  
*He is the nearest we have to an English Leonardo da Vinci.*

3) Occasionally a noun modified by an adjective is the rheme of the sentence and conveys the most important part of the communication; then it is used with the indefinite article. The adjective usually denotes the mood of the person described.

e.g. I saw *an infuriated Jennifer*, who started shouting at me the moment I opened the door.

4) A personal name has the indefinite article if it is modified by the adjective '**certain**' or where the article means something like '*a certain*', or '*someone called...*'.

e.g. Last night I found a gentleman waiting to see me when I returned home – *a certain George Reed* (i.e. someone who called himself George Reed).

He was engaged to be married to a *Miss Smith*.

'Did a woman see you some time today? *A Nelly Conway?*' he asked anxiously.

5) Personal names turn into common nouns when they denote things associated with the names of certain persons. Such nouns follow the general rules of the use of articles for common nouns.

e.g. Every morning he drove out in *a rickety old Ford*.

The trip had taken two days in *the shiny new Ford*.

Exercise 179. Supply the required articles.

1. On the way home Isabel said: 'You must speak to ... Father tomorrow.' 2. He told an anecdote about ... Stern. As soon as ... Dave realized that the reference was to ... Stern of the famous Stern-Gerlach experiment, his ears pricked up. 3. At that moment they were interrupted by ... gentle Mrs. Shobbe. 4. At a table in a corner the Colonel was introduced to ... Mrs. Bilst and ... Mrs. Peck. 5. In the kitchen ... tearful Doris was wilting under the stern reproof of her mother. 6. The children were not allowed by their mothers to play with ... Connollys. 7. He was talking pleasantly to ... glowering and unresponsive David. 8. To have an early breakfast was unbecoming

... Blair. 9. But I'm going to have supper with ... Robertses. 10. '... Charlie,' ... irresponsible Emily broke in, 'I tried to reach you this morning.' 11. 'What I call ... Forsyte,' said young Jolyon, 'is a man who is a slave of property.' 12. There was little sentimentality about ... Forsytes. In ... great London, which they had conquered, what time had they to be sentimental? 13. ... Clyde whom Samuel Griffiths met at the Union League Club in Chicago was different from ... Clyde who had fled from Kansas City three years before. 14. He has the humour of ... Chekhov. 15. To feel more comfortable you should have taken ... Pullman. 16. But it was ... very subdued Rose who replied. And it was quite ... frightened Rose who rang the bell. 17. The boss counted the group and selected his companions for the trip – ... Mr. Wren and a youth named ... Morton. 18. I know as much about him as you do – he is ... Mr. Willoughby. 19. One of the correspondents handed MacGregor the paper and asked. 'Are you ... MacGregor who wrote this?' 20. He went downward along the same road along which he had driven when a high-school boy in ... stripped-down Ford. 21. ... *Queen Mary* was launched by ... Queen Mary in 1938. 22. There were two ... Marys in the family, the mother and the daughter. 23. When ... Forsyte was engaged, married or born, ... Forsytes were present. 24. In the boy ... Dartie and ... Forsyte were struggling. 25. She was ... Pritchard that married ... Brookins and so became my seventh or eighth cousin by marriage. 26. In the principal morning paper there were four pictures of ... Mac-Gregor on the front page. One picture showed ... unshaven MacGregor entering the room. 27. The captain had fallen into possession of ... complete Shakespeare. 28 He drank ... Martini after dinner and, paying the bill, left the restaurant. 29. Entering the room he asked with some anxiety whether ... Father was in. 30. ... Martin Eden was a self-made man as ... Jack London himself.

Exercise 180. Supply the required articles, paying special attention to names of persons.

1. As we were returning up ... street, ... cat darted out from one of ... houses in front of us. ... Montmorency gave ... cry of ... joy and flew after his prey. His victim was ... large black Tom. I never saw ... larger cat, nor ... more disreputable-looking cat. It was ... long, sinewy-looking animal. It had ... calm contented air about it. 2. One day he was taken by ... friend to ... party given by ... certain Mrs. Lambeth, ... rich banker's widow. 3. Being himself ... fine musician, and ... superlative performer on ... violoncello, my father dreamed of turning me into ... young Mozart, and my training on ... piano began when I was three years old. 4. ... Bradley who settled here was what I suppose you might call ... farmer. 5. When ... dear old Mrs. Hay went back to ... town after staying with ... Burnelles she sent ... children ... doll's house. 6. At that time I had ... greatest admiration for ... Impressionists. I longed to possess ... Sisley and ... Degas. 7. ... Jason who came back from the Easter holidays with ... black band around his arm was ... very different person from ... Jason of ... term before. 8. ... Mr. March had been compelled to speak loudly, even for ... March, to make ... deaf lady understand. 9. 'It sounds most tempting,' remarked ... polite Lanny. 10. There was no porter to carry his large valise, but he managed to get into ... carriage just as ... train started. It was ... Pullman, so crowded with ... officers

that he hadn't room to sit down. 11. After we lost my brother in ... war and then ... Mother died, he didn't bother about living ... respectable life any longer and just did what he liked. 12. From ... hill Ed tried to wave to ... lonely Nancy who, deserted by her brother, had begun to dig herself ... castle in ... sand. 13. When my uncle tried me with ... few simple problems in ... algebra, he looked pleased and said to my mother: 'Your son could be ... other Einstein.' 'Who is ... Einstein?' asked my mother. I was glad she had asked. I wanted to know too. 14. 'Very well, Papa,' said ... obedient Milly. 15. She climbed ... stairs and walked with ... completely silent Katherine down ... corridor. 16. ... poor Tom saw no harm in repeating those absurd stories. 17. 'Doctor Baker?' she repeated, 'I don't know ... Doctor Baker. There used to be ... house called Rose Cottage near ... church, but ... Mrs. Wilson lived there.' 18. ... Major Wilby and ... lovely Mabel departed. 19. She walked to ... part of ... room where ... puzzled Henry was standing. 20. ... Bert Smith had ... Citroen, and he drove swiftly and well. 21. Next day I saw ... Smiths off at ... airport. 22. His parents could deny nothing to ... suffering Stephen. 23. 'How is ... grandmother's rheumatism?' ... doctor asked. 'She's been better lately, but ... Mother's bad now.' 24. 'I'm sorry to hear that, ... little girl; tell ... mother to come down here some day and see whether ... Dr. Braine can do anything for her.' 25. Charley was distressed. This was not ... Simon he had known so long. 26. ... Bradleys are one of ... oldest families in Illinois.

Exercise 181. Fill in the blanks with articles before personal names if necessary.

1. Even his closest friends – ... little John and ... Scarlett never questioned him about his intentions. 2. This was ... Magda with whom you could be on friendly terms, who made no demands on you, who met you completely on your own level. 3. And when he allowed ... ex Mrs. Burk to divorce him, he permitted her lawyer to write the divorce settlement. 4. She was not quite certain that ... Edward who wrote to her now was not ... same Edward that she had known. 5. A little way off he saw his wife in a long chair talking with ... Davidsons. 6. The clerk had put me in the room next to ... Sloanes. 7. The removal of ... late Mr. Curry was rapid and professional. 8. I thought it was fine – especially ... Chopin. 9. ... Old Osborne on the contrary was nervous and drank much. 10. Swithin smiled and nodding at Bosinney said: 'Why, you're quite ... Monte Cristo.' 11. It seemed Walter didn't pay any attention to ... tearful Kitty. 12. Standing outside in the moonlight, speaking to ... Henrietta who was no longer startlingly ... familiar Henrietta he had loved for so long – he had known sudden panic. 13. I was not surprised, therefore, on Monday night when ... Mr. Latimer, a very fashionably dressed young man, came up to my rooms and asked me to accompany him in a cab, which was waiting at the door. 14. The tenant listed the car on the registration slip as ... Cadillac. 15. He looked more like ... West Country Farmer Giles than ever. 16. I don't want to turn into ... Teddy Bolan. 17. Down in a third-rate hotel, ... brooding Hurstwood read the dramatic item covering Carrie's success, without at first realizing who was meant. 18. There was ... unimportant Renoir and ... lovely little Manet on the far wall and one noticed at once that there was a sofa but not a desk. 19. ... two Renoirs and ... Matisse hung on the

walls. 20. Who knows – I may be ... Orson Welles of the fifties. 21. ... Hurstwood found that he could not talk, repressed as he was and grudging ... Drouet every moment of his presence, he bowed himself out with the elegance of ... Faust. 22. 'I used to know ... Bill Biloxi from Memphis,' I remarked. 23. He says there is ... Meestaire Freeman in prison that is a friend of all the world.

Exercise 182. Insert articles where necessary.

1. Margaret was talking to ... Osbaldistons. 2. In ... dim light streaming down ... stairs from behind her, he scarcely recognised ... Lily he had known. 3. ... barbaric Bertie got no hint whatever that he was barbaric. 4. ... father and ... daughter appeared at last. 5. Gradman is here, darling, and ... mother, and ... Aunt Winifred, and Kit and Michael. Is there anyone you would like to see? 6. Louis seemed rather ... grave, still, retiring man, but ... Caroline of this evening, which was not ... Caroline of every day, thawed his reserve. 7. She watched ... advent of ... Tasburghs almost maliciously. Hubert and ... young Tasburgh at once discovered mutual service in Mesopotamia. 8. My visit was specially made to ... good Mrs. Arhes. 9. ... professor Beans is ... man to whom you'll be responsible for your undergraduate teaching. 10. This Pat wasn't at all like ... Pat of his memories. When she smiled he saw ... Pat he had known, ... Pat smiling at him from ... worn photo that still lay in ... pocketbook against his heart. But watching her ... he grew aware that ... family was divided in its attitude. Alice and Mrs. Baxter were partisans of ... new Pat. He still felt that he couldn't bring ... two Pats together; but he didn't hold that against ... Pat of ... present. 11. ... flustered Clarice stood beside me. ... 12. If you are ... Napoleon, you will play ... game of ... power; if you're ... Leonardo, you'll play for ... knowledge; ... stakes hardly matter. 13. At that time I had ... greatest admiration for ... Impressionists. I longed to possess ... Sisley and ... Degas, and I worshipped Manet. 14. I overtook ... pretty little Hetty Sorrel as I was coming to my den. 15. He cared to say no more; he had thrown quite dust enough into ... honest Adam's eyes. 16. This was ... famous Frank A. Cowperwood whom he had read about. 17. ... certain Joseph Zimmerman suggested that he undertake operating in street railway shares for him. 18. Elsie said she would ring up ... Doctor Worple. 19. ... poor Edward muttered something, but what it was nobody knew. 20. He was gayer than I had thought; youthful and ardent in ... hundred happy ways, not ... Maxim I had first met. 21. I have ... address of ... man in London to whom ... Professor writes. 22. It is needless to multiply ... instances of ... high and lofty station, and ... vast importance of ... Chuzzlewits at different periods. 23. It has been said that there is no instance, in modern times, of ... Chuzzlewit having been found on terms of ... intimacy with ... great. 24. ... gentle, tender-hearted Amelia Sedley was ... only person to whom she could attach herself in ... least. 25. Yet ... room itself was bright and elegant; on one wall was ... fine Sisley, of poplars and sunny water, on another ... still life by Nicholas de Stael, pastel fruit in ... white dish. 26. ... captain Cuttle lived on ... brink of ... little canal. 27. Mr. Tupman, by ... nod, intimated that his question applied to ... disappointed Rachel. 28. I am ... Mr. Martin for whom you were to inquire. 29. I'm to meet ... Professor Hallorsen on Monday.

30. If you're going West may I come with you? I want to see ... Aunt Emily and ... Uncle Lawrence. 31. During ... reading of ... paragraph, and for ... minute or two afterwards, he sat with his gaze fixed on ... modest Mr. Toots, like ... man entranced. 32. I had no doubt that you were ... Miss Wilfer I have often heard named. 33. 'Oh, good evening,' he exclaimed, removing his cap and bowing. 'How are you?' while his mind was registering that this truly was ... beautiful, ... exquisite Sondra whom months before he had met at his uncle's. 34. 'I don't care about ... Captain Dobbin's complexion,' she said. 'I shall always like him, I know.' 'There is not ... finer fellow in ... service,' Osborne said, 'nor ... better officer, though he is not ... Adonis, certainly.' 35. ... difference between ... pair was that while ... father was violent and ... bully, ... son had thrice ... nerve and courage of ... parent, and could not merely make ... attack, but resist it; and finding that ... moment was not come when ... contest between him and his father was to be decided, he took his dinner with ... perfect coolness and appetite before ... engagement began. ... old Osborne, on ... contrary, was nervous and drank much. 36. ... medical practitioner quite refused to accept ... unhappy Selina's theory.

Exercise 183. Comment on the use of articles with personal names.

1. There was ... Manson at Queens with me in eighteen eighty. 2. This was not ... Beatrice he knew. 3. ... Old Jolyon had ... little Holly on the knees, she had taken possession of his watch. 4. This Pat wasn't at all like ... Pat of his memories. When she smiled, he saw ... Pat he had known, ... Pat smiling at him from the worn photo that still lay in the pocket against his heart. 5. Between ... Macphails and ... Davidsons there had arisen the intimacy of shipboard. 6. ... late Mrs. Spenlow began life as a maid in a large house. 7. ... Forsyte is not an uncommon animal. There are hundreds among the members of this Club. 8. He was not ... Maxim I had first met, not the stranger who sat alone at the table in the restaurant. 9. Pardon, but could you tell me if ... Mr. and Mrs. Robinson reside here? 10. She was easy to talk to, unaffected. This was ... Magda with whom you could be on friendly terms, who made no demands on you, who met you completely on your own level. 11. '... Mrs. Duncaster who's dead,' said ... Walter, 'is she the one I know?' 12. A strange company assembled, in ... Burnells' washhouse after tea. 13. Many years ago I made the acquaintance of ... certain Mr. William Legrand. 14. Do you know who ... Rosemary is? – ... Rosemary? ... only Rosemary I know is ... Rosemary Paine. 15. ... Mr. Minh? How interesting! I've never read anything of yours. 16. Introductions followed, with much talk and laughter amongst ... Ivorys, ... Freed-mans and ... Hamptons.



Exercise 184. Translate into English paying special attention to the use of articles with personal names.

1. Он решил сходить к Туркиным. 2. Мой муж ревнив, это Отелло. 3. Подождите немножко, отец сейчас придет. 4. Мы сегодня пойдем в театр. Идет «Дядя Ваня». 5. Вы – Коля, тот самый Коля, неуклюжий, застенчивый Коля? 6. Вас ждет какой-то Михайлов. 7. Она вышла замуж за Белова, с которым нас познакомили в прошлом году у Никитиных. 8. Константиновы поселились здесь два года назад. 9. Она была Добсон, и как все Добсоны очень умна. 10. Туземец, спасенный Робинзоном Крузо, был назван Пятницей, так как именно в пятницу Крузо нашел его. 11. Перепуганная Марина ответила на телефонный звонок. 12. Иван Владимирович Мичурин родился в 1855 году в деревне Долгое, недалеко от Козлова. Мичурины всегда были садовниками. 13. Вам нравится эта картина? Это Айвазовский. 14. – Про какого Алексея Толстого вы говорите? – Про Алексея Толстого, который написал «Петр Первый». 15. Простите, но Брауны здесь больше не живут. 16. В семье Бруков было две Марии, мать и дочь. 17. В утренней газете было напечатано четыре фотографии Джона. На одной из них небритый Джон выходил из казино. 18. После обеда он выпил martini, и, оплатив счет, ушел из ресторана. 19. Макс, надоедливый Макс, даже не представлял себе, насколько надоедливым он был. 20. Возле него стояла раскрасневшаяся Катя. 21. В то время я увлекся сюрреализмом. Я восхищался Дали и страстно хотел приобрести какую-нибудь из работ Эрнста или Кирико. 22. Перед ним был знаменитый Джон Граун, о котором так много писали в последнее время. 23. Не говоря ни слова, он прошел мимо разочарованной Рэйчел и направился к выходу. 24. На днях мне посчастливилось увидеть изумительную работу кисти Моне. 25. «Покойный мистер Джоунс был очень хорошим человеком», – сказала женщина шепотом. 26. Вдруг, ко всеобщему удивлению, постоянно молчаливый мистер Франклин отважился вступить в нашу дискуссию. 27. Маленькая Анна хотела поиграть с котенком, и я оставила ее в саду. 28. Это была все та же Джейн, которую я когда-то знал, веселая и разговорчивая. 29. «Сегодня утром заходил какой-то мистер Дрейк, но он ничего не оставлял для вас», – сказала Линда. 30. Каждое утро он ездил на работу в старом Форде. 31. – Какое замечательное Пасхальное яйцо! – Да, это Фаберже. 32. К нашему удивлению, в этом маленьком провинциальном музее была картина кисти Левитана. 33. Я настоятельно рекомендую тебе посмотреть этот фильм. В прошлом году он получил Оскара в номинации «Лучший зарубежный фильм года». 34. Ваш сын обязательно должен продолжать образование. Возможно, он новый Ньютон. 35. Я сменил двести разных работ. Мастер на все руки и ни одной специальности. 36. – Какой милый костюм! – Да, это Шанель. 37. – Мне нравится твой спортивный костюм. Это Адидас? – Нет, Найк. 38. Рузвельты дали Америке двух президентов. 39. Моим новым хозяином был некий мистер Рочестер, который дома бывал крайне редко. 40. Испуганный Майкл не мог произнести ни слова. 41. – Не мог бы ты отдолжить мне своего Вебстера? – А Хорнби тебе не подойдет? 42. – Ты настоящий Ловелас! – А ты Дон-Жуан! 43. Я профан в

живописи. Я не отличу Сезанна от Пикассо. 44. Это Лилиан? Как она изменилась! Это совсем не та Лилиан, которую я знала девочкой. 45. – Я купил вчера новый телевизор. – Сони? – Нет, Филипс. 46. Мы получили факс от некого Романова. 47. Ваш сын может стать еще одним Давидом Копперфильдом со всеми этими его трюками. 48. – Я вижу, что у тебя Хонда? – Нет, это машина моей жены. У меня Форд. 49. Очень уж увлекательные ты выдумываешь приключения и притом уверяешь всех, что ты самый правдивый человек на свете; да ты просто барон Мюнхгаузен. 50. – Я видел Пола Маккартни, когда был в Англии. – Того самого Пола Маккартни? 51. К своей радости я увидела в магазине Даля и купила его не раздумывая. 52. Перестань вести себя так! Ты не Скарлетт, а я не Ретт. 53. Да ты просто Джеймс Бонд! 54. Полиция говорит, что у тебя дома есть Калашников. 55. Девочка хочет, чтобы Дед Мороз принес ей Барби на Новый Год. 56. Лорд Сэндвич изобрел бутерброд. 57. – Я выпью Мартини. – А мне содовую, пожалуйста.

## 7.2 ARTICLES WITH GEOGRAPHIC NAMES

§ 72 The following geographic names are used without any article:

1) Names of continents.

e.g. *Africa, Antarctica, America, Asia, Australia, Europe*

**Note 1** ‘**The Arctic**’ and ‘**the Antarctic**’ are used with the definite article as they denote the regions (the land and the sea) round the north and south poles.

**Note 2** We can say ‘**the African Continent**’.

**Note 3** No article is used either when names of continents are modified by such attributes as *northern, southern, western, eastern, central, minor, south-west, south-east, Latin, etc.*

e.g. *North America, Northern America, Central Africa*

2) Names of countries, counties, provinces, states.

e.g. *France, Italy, Texas, Wisconsin, Scotland*

**Note 4** Some names of countries can be used with or without the definite article: *the Argentine (b u t: Argentina), (the) Congo, (the) Lebanon, (the) Senegal, (the) Sudan, (the) Yemen, (the) Cameroon, (the) Ivory Coast.*

**Note 5** Names of states which include words like ‘*republic*’, ‘*union*’, ‘*united*’, ‘*kingdom*’, ‘*state*’, ‘*empire*’ are used with the definite article.

e.g. *the Republic of Ireland, the United States of America, the Kingdom of Sweden, the Roman Empire*

**Note 6** Abbreviated alternatives of country names.

e.g. *the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics – the USSR, the United States of America – the USA, the United Kingdom – the UK*

**Note 7** No article is used either when these nouns have such attributes as *north(ern), south(ern), east(ern), west(ern), ancient, old, new, central, industrial, medieval, modern.*

e.g. *Ancient Greece, Old England*

**Note 8** Names of places with *of* have the definite article.

e.g. *the South of France*

3) Names of cities, towns, suburbs, or villages.

e.g. *London, New York, Harehills (a suburb of Leeds)*

**Note 9** The only exceptions are *The Hague, The Bronx, the West End (of London)*.

**Note 10** Some nicknames of cities take the definite article: *'the Big Apple'* (New York), *'the City of Brotherly Love'* (Philadelphia)

4) Names of mountains, hills, and islands.

e.g. *Snowdon, Elbrus, Mount Everest, North Hill, Cyprus, Man, Jersey, Java*

**Note 11** Some names of foreign mountains keep the definite article: *the Matterhorn*.

5) Names of lakes.

e.g. *Lake Michigan, Silver Lake, Ontario*

**Note 12** There are some exceptions: *the Great Salt Lake, the Lake of Geneva* (also *Lake Geneva*).

6) Names of waterfalls.

e.g. *Niagara Falls, Victoria Falls*

7) Names of bays.

e.g. *Hudson Bay, Mogens Bay*

8) Names of peninsulas and capes.

e.g. *Labrador, Cape Prince of Wales, Cape Horn*

**Note 13** If the noun **'peninsula'** is added, the definite article is used.

e.g. *the Labrador Peninsula, the Hindustan peninsula, the Balkan peninsula*

**§ 73** Other geographic names take the definite article. These are:

1) Names of seas, oceans, rivers, streams, straits, canals, beaches.

e.g. *the Atlantic (Ocean), the Mediterranean (Sea), the North Sea, the Thames, the Mississippi, the Dardanelles, the Bering Strait, the Suez Canal, the English Channel, Paradise (Beach) (one of the most popular beaches in Thassos, Greece)*

2) Names of mountain chains, hill ranges, and groups of islands.

e.g. *the Pennine Range (the Pennines), the Alps, the Rocky Mountains (the Rockies), the Canary Islands (the Canaries), the Hawaii, the Bermudas*

3) Names of deserts.

e.g. *the Sahara, the Gobi*

4) Names of gulfs.

e.g. *Spencer Gulf, Gulf St. Vincent, Kara-Bogaz-Gol Gulf*

5) Names of mountain passes.

e.g. *the Saint Gotthard Pass*

6) Geographic names having the plural form.

e.g. *the Midlands, the Netherlands, the Yorkshire Forests*

7) Geographical regions.

e.g. *the Middle East, the Punjab, the Crimea, the Ruhr, the Saar, the Riviera, the Transvaal, the South of England.*

§ 74 Geographic names that are used with any article may take the definite or the indefinite article under the following conditions:

1) If there is any kind of limitation a geographic name takes the definite article.

e.g. It was not *the Germany* of my youth.

2) If a descriptive attribute is used a geographic name has the indefinite article.

e.g. It was *a different London*, unknown to her.

3) The definite article is used in the following patterns: *N+of+N* and *adjective+N*.

e.g. *the Bay of Biskay, the City of New York, the Arabian Gulf*

Exercise 185. Fill in the blanks with articles with names of continents, countries, states, provinces, counties, cities if necessary.

1. In his youth Mr. Curry had been abroad a great deal, had lived in ... Ceylon, ... Singapore and ... India. 2. It was not ... Monte Carlo I had known, or perhaps the truth was that it pleased one better. 3. The Chimney Corner was the name of the bar. Michael had liked hanging around there. The photographs of famous skiers of the past hanging above the great fireplace now looked like mementos of ... much earlier America. 4. He made ... England too hot to hold him; fled to ... Central America, and died there of yellow fever. 5. The wealth of Mary's husband flowed from his being ruler-owner of manganese deposits in ... southwestern Asia. 6. I hear he's off to ... Central Africa. 7. He decided to take his profit and buy a house on ... Riviera. 8. Next morning, back from shopping in ... Cannes, Nicole found a note saying that Dick had taken the small car and gone up into ... Provence for a few days by himself. 9. Your advice, then, as I understand it, is that the young man will be as safe in ... Devonshire as in ... London. 10. That evening he glanced at the tape for any news about ... Transvaal. 11. My great-grand-father was Governor of ... North Carolina. 12. This was not ... Paris that good Americans went to when they died. 13. We drove up from ... Valencia. 14. Here are some of his belongings such as the sword given to him in ... Caucasus and many historical documents. 15. One of the most striking of the many unique exhibits is a marble sarcophagus – a relic of ancient art found in excavations on ... Taman Peninsula in ... Crimea. 16. He read of the early departure for the season of a party composed of the Vanderbildts and their friends for ... Florida. 17. ... Yorkshire is famous for some delicious foods, including Yorkshire pudding and roastbeef. 18. In ... Netherlands and ... Belgium St. Nicholas' Day, December 6 is the children's festival, on the eve of which the saint is supposed to come riding from ... Spain with presents for all good children. 19. When the war broke out he served first in ... Kameroun and then in ... Senegal. 20. The first three department stores in ... United States were in ... Chicago. 21. Anyhow they lived in ... South China. 22. He's moved to ... Lebanon. 23. 'I wonder,' he said suddenly, 'where that ballet goes after ... Argentine.' 24. Michael looked quizzically at his parent. Did he quite understand ... England of today? 25. The next day in searching the woods, I found a tree of that wood, or like it, which in ... Brazil they call the iron tree, for its exceeding hardness. 26. You told me you were wondering who had been chosen to play for ... Sussex against ... Middlesex.

27. Over his wine Dick looked at them again, in their happy faces, the dignity that surrounded and pervaded the party, he perceived all the maturity of ... older America. 28. Having stayed near four months in ... Hamburg, I came from thence by land to ... Hague. 29. ... Columbia city was not so far away, even once she was in ... Chicago.

Exercise 186. Fill In the blanks with articles before names of oceans, seas, straits, channels, rivers, lakes, bays if necessary.

1. How ill she was when there was a storm in ... Indian Ocean. 2. I was promoted to be a major and every Allied government gave me a decoration – even Montenegro, little Montenegro down on ... Adriatic Sea. 3. Every ferryboat that crosses ... East River brings or takes away girls from Long Island. 4. New York, the largest city in the USA, is situated at the mouth of ... Hudson river, sometimes called ... North river. 5. He had grown up at the shores of ... Lake Superior and had sailed small boats ever since he was a kid. 6. They sent us a postcard of ... Lake of Geneva. 7. His large grey eyes were sun-veined from rowing on ... Lake Geneva. 8. We travelled a lot that year – from ... Woolloomooloo Bay to Biskra. 9. They were in ... Mediterranean passing ... Gibraltar, but the weather, if anything, was worse. 10. ... Potomac flows from West Virginia into ... Chesapeake Bay. 11. Warm air began to move from ... Gulf of Mexico across Texas into New Mexico. 12. Isabel had caused the house, a replica of a palace on ... Grand Canal at Venice, to be furnished by an English expert in the style of Louis XV. 13. He said he was a Dane, but in ... Torres Straits he was known as German Harry. 14. Had it not been my custom to run up to see him every Saturday afternoon and to stop over till Monday morning, this particular January Monday morning would not have found me afloat on ... San Francisco Bay. 15. Wisconsin was on ... Wisconsin River, on the north bank, a matter of seven miles above the junction with ... Mississippi. 16. I collected my baggage and stepped out of the train, and there was ... Grand Canal at my feet. 17. June read: '... Lake Okanagan, British Columbia. I'm not coming back in England. Bless you always. Jon,' 18. ... Pacific Ocean is rich in mineral raw materials. 19. A new coal deposit with an estimated 2 billion tons of coal capacity has been discovered near ... Lake Shubarkol. 20. He saw the lights of Harbour Springs off across ... Little Traverse Bay. 21. In the guise of a seasonal worker he was hiding near ... Geneva Lake. 22. Production centres of Saudi Arabia are along ... Persian Gulf.

Exercise 187. Fill in the blanks with articles before names of peninsulas, deserts, mountains, islands, falls, passes if necessary.

1. She's lived on ... Long Island twenty years and never saw New York City before. 2. He told stories to beautiful girls about his fighting in ... Solomon Islands, in Casablanca. 3. ... Rocky Mountains extend from Mexico to Canada. 4. We were going to climb ... Monte Solaro, dine at a tavern we favoured, and walk down in the moonlight. 5. He took her for a ride on the river under ... Niagara Falls and held her hand lovingly when they walked in the sunlight of the Northern summer. 6. We

could very well have done ... Mount Everest the rate we were doing. 7. On the edge of ... Sahara we ran into a plague of locusts and the chauffeur explained kindly that they were bumblebees. 8. In December Nicole seemed well-knit again; when a month had passed without tension, without the tight mouth, the unmotivated smile, the unfathomable remark, they went to ... Swiss Alps for the Christmas holidays. 9. Symbolically she lay across his saddle-bow as surely as if he had wolfed her away from Damascus and they had come out upon ... Mongolian plain. 10. Here was another item detailing the wrecking of a vessel in ice and snow off Prince's Bay on ... Staten Island. 11. He had a small house in ... Bermudas. 12. The shell was found overturned, the next day, near ... Bear Mountain. 13. The photographer gave us the picture of me, my hair limp over the rail on the boat to ... Capri. 14. No one should leave the park without visiting the outlook station on the rim of ... Great Canyon for a view of ... Lower Falls of the Yellowstone River. 15. ... Kilimanjaro is a snow-covered mountain 19,700 feet high and is said to be the highest mountain in Africa. 16. Of course she had read novels about ... Malay Archipelago and she had formed an impression of a sombre land with great ominous rivers and a single silent impenetrable jungle. 17. We shall try to break through direct for ... North Cape. 18. ... Strait of Georgia had gale-force winds, in the high elevations of ... Sierra Nevada and ... Cascades there was snow. 19. The main part of the United States presents four physical divisions: two elevated and two lowland regions. The elevated are ... Appalachian Mountains in the east and ... Rocky Mountains or Cordilleran system in the west. 20. The Kalamba River, part of the border between Zambia and Tanganyika, passes over ... Kalambo Falls in a spectacular 704 feet drop. 21. The People's Democratic Republic of Yemen lies on the southern tip of ... Arabian Peninsula. 22. Spain is a country of about 194,883 square miles (including ... Balearic Islands and ... Canary Islands) occupying the larger part of ... Iberian Peninsula in southwestern Europe. 23. Mongolia spans a huge steppe plateau and ... Gobi Desert.

Exercise 188. Here are some geography questions. Choose the right answer. Sometimes you need the definite article, sometimes not.

e.g. *Of which country is ... Manila the capital? (... Indonesia / ... Philippines / ... Japan)*

*Of which country is Manila the capital? – It's the Philippines.*

- 1) Of which country is ... Stockholm the capital? (... Norway / ... Denmark / ... Sweden)
- 2) What is the longest river in the world? (... Amazon / ... Rhine / ... Nile)
- 3) What is the name of the mountain range in the west of ... North America? (... Rocky Mountains / ... Andes / ... Alps)
- 4) What is the name of the ocean between ... Africa and ... Australia? (... Atlantic / ... Pacific / ... Indian Ocean)
- 5) What is the name of the ocean between ... America and ... Asia? (... Atlantic / ... Pacific / ... Indian Ocean)

- 6) What is the name of the sea between ... Africa and ... Europe? (... Black Sea / ... Red Sea / ... Mediterranean Sea)
- 7) What is the name of the sea between ... Britain and ... Norway? (... Norwegian Sea / ... English Channel / ... North Sea)
- 8) What is the name of the sea between ... England and ... France? (... Mediterranean Sea / ... English Channel / ... French Sea)
- 9) What joins ... Atlantic and ... Pacific oceans? (... Suez Canal / ... Panama Canal)
- 10) Where is ... Bolivia? (... Africa / ... South America / ... North America)
- 11) Where is ... Ethiopia? (... Asia / ... South America / ... Africa)
- 12) Where's ... Amazon? (... North America / ... South America)
- 13) Where's ... Hague? (... Poland / ... Switzerland / ... Netherlands)
- 14) Where's ... Lake District? (... England / ... Scotland / ... Whales)
- 15) Where's ... Mount Everest? (... Alps / ... Himalayas / ... Rocky Mountains)
- 16) Where's ... North Pole? (... Arctic / ... Antarctic)
- 17) Where's ... Vatican? (... Hague / ... Rome / ... New York)
- 18) Which country lies between ... Mexico and ... Canada? (... Venezuela / ... El Salvador / ... United States)
- 19) Which is the largest continent? (... Africa / ... South America / ... Asia)
- 20) Which river flows through ... Vienna, ... Budapest and ... Belgrade? (... Rhine / ... Danube / ... Volga)

Exercise 189. Fill in the blanks with articles before geographic names if necessary.

1. ... Manhattan is the name of an island which forms the heart of New York. The island is 13 miles long, 2 miles wide and lies at the mouth of ... Hudson River. East of it runs ... East River, which divides the island from ... Long Island. 2. ... Switzerland was an island washed on one side by the waves of thunder around ... Gorizia and another by the cataracts along ... Somme and ... Aisne. 3. Do you know what it's like when there's sixty degrees of frost in ... Arctic – and it still doesn't freeze? 4. In 1919 I happened to be in ... Chicago on my way to ... Far East. 5. 'She came from ... Bavaria,' she said. 6. On the pleasant shore of ... French Riviera, about half way between ... Marseilles and the Italian Border, stands a large, proud, rose-colored hotel. 7. I thought if the test turned out to be good I could take it to ... California with me. 8. I had, indeed, a mind to see ... city of Peking, which I had heard so much of. 9. After all it was the completest thing, and perhaps the deadest in ... London of today. 10. He had agencies in many of the islands of ... Pacific. 11. Descending to another ledge she reached a low curved wall and looked down seven hundred feet to ... Mediterranean sea. 12. He came to ... Seine, crossed it, and entered one of the less reputable quarters of ... Paris. 13. The Bancrofts are at present living at their summer home on ... Lake Metecito. 14. The region around ... Great Lakes has not an excessive humidity. 15. It may be in ... Coney Island or ... Pelham Bay, hut I'll find a room. 16. I haven't had a thing since breakfast. Just got in from ... Rock Island. 17. They knew that Davidson had worked in ... Canaries for five years

before he met his wife. 18. Behind ... Pyrenees too, the way to peace is through military detente in ... Europe. 19. It was a matter of chance that I should have rented a house in one of the strangest communities in ... North America. 20. They settled down in a handsome villa in ... Tyrol and in a short time became conspicuous in the social life of the province. 21. The church stood in ... ancient village in ... Devonshire. 22. Go to ... Hague, or to ... Amsterdam. 23. He has his National Trust and preservation councils for just about every hill and valley south of ... Caledonian Canal. 24. ... Victoria Falls on the northwest border of ... Rhodesia is a mile wide and 420 feet high. 25. They reached the place of destination that evening and next morning they saw the sunrise in ... Saint Gotthard Pass. 26. ... Moscow is a city of museums. It was in ... Moscow that the first museum collection was formed in ... medieval Russia. 27. Most of the Slavic peoples now in ... Balkan Peninsula arrived in the 6th and 7th centuries. 28. ... White Nile River originates in ... Lake Victoria. 29. ... Jordan River and ... Dead Sea are on the Israel border. Steep cliffs rise on both sides of ... Jordan Valley.

Exercise 190. Supply the required articles, paying special attention to geographic names.

1. He had ... pronounced views on what ... United States was doing for ... world. 2. ... weather over ... Baltic was said to be worsening every hour. 3. This captain, he said, had made marine history by passing through ... Bosphorus and ... Dardanelles without ... aid of ... pilot. 4. Mr. Roberts sipped ... cup of ... coffee and looked out over ... Lake of Geneva. 5. His ship nearly sank in ... Pacific. 6. He told me how he had discovered ... statue, five hundred feet tall, buried in ... sand of ... Sahara. 7. ... book was about ... author's wanderings in ... interior of ... Ceylon. 8. ... man from ... Sudan carried his bags to ... car. 9. She showed me ... pictures taken in ... Swiss Alps. 10. 'I know there are ... British bases in ... Cyprus,' he said. 11. He said it is ... story of ... writer who goes on ... voyage to ... South Seas. 12. You oughtn't to spend ... winter in ... London with that cough and your chest. I'll give up my work if you'll come for ... month with me to some small place on ... Riviera. 13. His fortieth birthday was at ... hand, and he had never been farther ... west than Chicago. 14. The article says that ... events in ... Asia and now in ... Africa are not without their repercussion in ... Latin America. 15. They stood for some time, talking in quiet tones, comparing ... Thames with ... Seine. 16. This was not ... Paris that he had accepted thirty years ago as his spiritual home. 17. ... rains were moving ... north from ... Rhodesia. 18. So George, after forming ... various vague plans for ... winter in ... Sicily or ... Island of Majorca had to admit that he had not ... money for it. 19. He was ... well-known mountaineer scaling ... Andes. 20. He went down ... road to ... library and came home with ... new book about ... headwaters of ... Amazon. 21. 'Where is he?' asked Ann. 'He's in ... Buenos Aires.' 22. There aren't many sharks in ... Mediterranean. It is down ... Red Sea that you get them in numbers. 23. He retired to his hotel and sat in his shirt sleeves looking at ... Grand Canal. 24. ... Asia Minor is ... part of ... Asia between ... Black Sea and ... Mediterranean Sea. 25. They stayed in ... Venice for ... fortnight. 26. She was going



on ... cruise down ... Adriatic. 27. You haven't come back to ... very cheery England. 28. He was staring out across ... Nile at ... distant hills. 29. And several hours later he stepped out upon ... soil of ... Newfoundland. 30. The firm made ... loans to ... Argentine and ... Brazil. 31. ... Volga is the longest river in ... Europe; it flows from ... Valdai Hills to ... Caspian Sea 32. ... Riviera in ... Caucasus is the most popular place in summer. 33. ... Lake Baikal is the deepest lake in the world. 34. ... Elbrus is the highest peak in ... Europe. 35. ... Hague, a city in ... Western Netherlands near ... North Sea is the seat of the Dutch government. 36. ... Ruhr is an important mining and industrial district in ... Ruhr river valley. 37. ... Sahara is a great desert in ... North Africa, extending from ... Atlantic Ocean to ... Nile. 38. ... Philippines is an archipelago which consists of thousands of islands. 39. ... West Indies is a chain of islands between ... North and ... South America. 40. The turquoise surface of ... Mediterranean is never so blue as that of ... Adriatic. 41. The travellers stared hard at the distant and blue masses of ... Pyrenees. 42. ... London of only fifteen years ago! What a commonplace to point out its difference from ... London of today. There is ... new London which is just as interesting to its new citizens as ... old London was to myself. 43. I hear he's off to ... Central Africa. 44. In *Ivanhoe* Walter Scott describes ... England of ... Middle Ages. 45. ... Capetown is in ... South Africa. 46. In ... heart of ... Central Asia lies ... Khorasm, ... small fertile area in ... sea of ... sand. 47. ... prospect ends in little hills that come nearly to ... sea; rudiments, these, of ... Atlas Mountains. 48. 'We've been touring ... world. We tried ... South America. We lasted three days in ... Australia.' 'Have you ever been to ... States?' 49. Michael looked quizzically at his parent. Did he quite understand ... England of today? 50. After ... tour in ... Austrian Alps they had gone to ... Hotel Splendide at ... Montreux, in order to enjoy for ... day or two ... charms of ... Lake of ... Geneva. 51. Dusk was already falling on ... noble curve of ... Thames.

Exercise 191. Translate into English paying special attention to the use of articles with geographic names.

1. Кордильеры находятся в Северной Америке. 2. Берега Рейна очень живописны. 3. Эльбрус – очень красивая гора. 4. «Пиковая дама» была написана Чайковским во Флоренции в 1890 г. 5. Средиземное море находится между Европой, Азией и Африкой. 6. Венеция расположена на берегу Адриатического моря. 7. Ливингстон погиб в Центральной Африке. 8. Киев наших дней – это не Киев XIX века. 9. Во время поездки по Сахаре нам все время виделись оазисы, но это были лишь миражи. 10. Экспедицией Беринга были открыты новые острова – Алеутская гряда и Шумагинские острова. 11. Мы провели лето на Днепре. 12. Аргентина и Бразилия – наиболее крупные государства Южной Америки. 13. Мифы древней Греции полны поэзии и народной мудрости. 14. Мы не ездим летом на Кавказ, там слишком жарко. Мы предпочитаем отдыхать на Балтийском море. 15. Да, это не Париж моей молодости. Все изменилось до неузнаваемости. 16. – Нельзя ли мне заказать Бирмингем? – Да, но у нас два Бирмингема в компьютере. Вам нужен

Бирмингем, который в Америке или же Бирмингем, который в Англии? – Бирмингем, который в Англии. 17. Раньше люди привозили фрукты из Крыма и Кавказа. Сейчас их привозят в основном из Латинской Америки, Африки, Италии. 18. Суши – популярная еда не только в Японии, но и во всем мире. 19. На Британских островах более 80 разновидностей бабочек. 20. Получены первые сведения о необычных явлениях на поверхности Марса. 21. – Самый старый университет Англии – Кембридж, не так ли? – Нет, Оксфорд. 22. Наши друзья, работавшие в Южной Америке, вернулись домой. 23. Мы каждый год ездим на Средиземное море. Давай в этом году для разнообразия поедим куда-нибудь в другое место. Мы еще никогда не были на Канарских островах. А хочешь, поедим на Яву. 24. Гора Арарат на востоке Турции упоминается в Библии как место нахождения Ноева Ковчега. 25. Панамериканское шоссе проходит вдоль Анд в Южной Америке. 26. Уолт Дисней, знаменитый американский аниматор и продюсер, основал Диснейлэнд, парк отдыха, открывшийся в Калифорнии в 1955 году. 27. В состав Вест-Индии входят Багамские острова, Барбадос, Куба, Доминиканская республика, Гаити и Ямайка. 28. Корабль был очень маленьким. На нем Колумб пересек Атлантику. 29. Я слышал, вы ездили в Лидс на прошлой неделе. 30. Много теперь снега в Квебеке? 31. Азия – это часть света, входящая в состав материка Евразия. Сухопутная граница между Европой и Азией проходит по Уральским горам, по рекам Эмбе и Манычу. 32. Большая часть территории Алжира – раскаленная пустыня Сахара. 33. Около двухсот лет назад двое швейцарцев впервые достигли вершины Монблан в Альпах. С тех пор восхождение на труднодоступные горы стали называть альпинизмом. 34. На реке Ниагаре между двумя озерами расположен знаменитый Ниагарский водопад. 35. Амундсен первым достиг Южного полюса; затем он первым перелетел через Северный полюс на дирижабле «Норвегия», исследуя воздушные пути над Арктикой.

### 7.3 ARTICLES WITH OTHER SEMANTIC GROUPS OF NOUNS

§ 75 Proper names of the following semantic groups take no article:

1) Names of roads, streets, avenues, squares, and parks.

e.g. *Modern Road, Broadway, Fifth Avenue, Piccadilly, Central Park*

**Note 1** The exceptions are *the Strand, the Mall* (in London), *the High Street, the Main Street* (in the USA).

e.g. *Strand*, often called *the Strand*, is a major thoroughfare in the City of Westminster in central London that forms part of the A4 road.

**Note 2** Certain roads can have the definite article or no article: *(the) Edgware Road, (the) Old Kent Road*.

**Note 3** Names of streets in foreign countries are used with the definite article if there is one in the original language: *the Via Veneto, the Rue de Rivoli*.

**Note 4** Names of parks in foreign countries are often used with the definite article: *the Gorki Park*.

**Note 5** Names of squares in foreign counties may have the definite article: *the*

*Red Square.*

**Note 6** Main roads and numbered roads (highways and motorways) have the definite article: *the Bath road* (= the road to Bath), *the A5*, *the M6* (motorway).

**Note 7** Names of streets, when followed by a phrase with 'of', use the definite article: *the Avenue of the Americas*.

2) Names of airports and railway stations.

e.g. *London Airport, Orly (Airport), Waterloo (Station), Victoria Station*

3) Names of important buildings – religious (churches, cathedrals and abbeys), educational (schools, colleges and universities) and official buildings – and places or houses don't take the definite article.

e.g. *Buckingham Palace, Westminster Abbey, Colosseum, St. Paul's Cathedral, Harvard University, Merton College*

**Note 8** Exceptions are names with 'of' or with a noun or adjective: *the White House, the University of York, the Old Bailey, the Science Museum, the Abbey of Cluny*.

**Note 9** With abbeys named after religious orders there is a definite article: *the Dominican Abbey*.

4) Names of bridges.

e.g. *Westminster Bridge, Tower Bridge, London Bridge*

**Note 10** There are exceptions: *the Golden Gate Bridge, the Sever Bridge* (= the bridge over the River Sever).

5) Most names of businesses, charities and chain shops.

e.g. *Jeffrey's Repair Shop, IBM, Oxfam, Bloomingdale's*

**Note 11** When the last word in the company name is 'company', the definite article is sometimes used: *the Ford Motor Company, the A&P (the Atlantic and Pacific Tea Company)*.

**Note 12** Names with a noun often have the definite article: *at the Body Shop, The Studio Café*.

6) Most names of magazines and journals.

e.g. *National Geographic, Punch, Language, Discovery*

**Note 13** Exceptions: *the Quarterly Review, the Saturday Evening Post, the New Yorker, the Journal of American Psychology, the Spectator*.

**Note 14** When you are talking about a copy of a magazine you use the indefinite article: 'a *National Geographic*' means 'a copy of *National Geographic*'.

7) Names of days of the week, months and seasons.

e.g. *Monday, Tuesday, April, July, spring, summer*

8) Names of spacecrafts.

e.g. *Challenger, Apollo 17*

9) Names of religious and other festivals.

e.g. *Christmas, Easter, Ramadan, Mother's Day, New Year's Day, St Valentine's Day*

**Note 15** You can pick out one particular event by using the definite or indefinite article.

e.g. I had the rare luxury of *a Christmas* at home.

§ 76. Nouns of some semantic groups require the definite article. They are:

- 1) Names of hotels, clubs, museums, galleries, centres, concert halls, theatres, cinemas, monuments, restaurants, pubs, tunnels, zoos, gardens.

e.g. *the Hilton, the National Tennis Club, the Louvre, the Tate (Gallery), the World Trade Centre, the Globe (Theatre), the Plaza (Cinema), the Washington Monument, the Kings Head and Eight Bells (a pub in Chelsea), the Lincoln Tunnel, the Bronx Zoo, the Botanical Gardens*

**Note 1** A possessive form ('s) is used without the definite article: *St Martin's (Theatre), Durrant's (Hotel), Luigi's (restaurant)*.

**Note 2** Names of buildings with 'Hall', 'Hospital' and sometimes 'House' don't require the definite article: *Carnegie Hall, Valley Hospital, Blair House*.

- 2) Names of ships and established train services.

e.g. *the Titanic, the Queen Mary, the Orient Express*

**Note 3** The names of smaller boats usually have no article.

e.g. The front runner will undoubtedly be Richard Matthews's converted America's Cup 12-metre yacht, *Crusader*.

- 3) Names of parties and political institutions (this is true also of foreign institutions, translated or not).

e.g. *the Conservative Party, the Democratic Party, the London City Council, the House of Commons, the Senate, the Bundestag, the Dail*

**Note 4** Exceptions to this are: *Parliament (but the Houses of Parliament and the British Parliament)*, *Congress*, and names of councils: *Kent County Council, Leeds City Council*.

- 4) Names of well-known organizations article, and they keep it when they are abbreviated.

e.g. *the United Nations (the UN), the BBC, the FBI, the EC*

**Note 5** If an abbreviation is pronounced as a word, then there is no article: '*the Organization of Petroleum Exporting Countries*' – 'OPEC', '*North Atlantic Treaty Organization*' – 'NATO', '*United Nations International Children's Emergency Fund*' – 'UNICEF'.

- 5) Most names of newspapers published in English.

e.g. *the Morning Star, the Daily World, the Economist, the Times*

**Note 6** You do not use the definite article with the names of foreign newspapers: *Le Monde, Der Spiegel*.

**Note 7** When you are talking about a copy of a newspaper you use the indefinite article: 'a *Times*' means 'a copy of *the Times*'.

- 6) Names of sports teams, groups, organizations, and government departments.

e.g. *the New York Mets, the Philharmonic Orchestra, the American Red Cross, the Board of Education, the United States Senate*

- 7) Names of musical groups can have either the definite article or no article.

e.g. *the Beatles, the Supremes, Dire Straits, Queen*

**Note 8** Most plurals still have the definite article: *the Rolling Stones, the Shadows, the Eurythmics, the Doors*.

- 8) Names of periods of history (ages, years, and centuries) and the names of wars, battles, agreements, treaties, and alliances.

e.g. *the Stone Age, the Roaring Twenties, the Renaissance, the American Revolution, the Grand Alliance*

**Note 9** Exceptions: *World War One, World War Two*

9) Names of sporting events.

e.g. *the Olympic Games, the World Cup, the Cup Final*

**Note 10** You can pick out one particular case of such an event by using the definite or indefinite article.

e.g. I've never been to *a Cup Final*.

**Note 11** Names which are taken from the place where the event occurs do not have the definite article: *Wimbledon* (for tennis), *Ascot* and *Epsom* (for horse-racing events), *Henley* (for rowing).

Exercise 192. Choose the correct form, with or without the article.

1. 'Which hotel are you staying at?' 'At Sheraton / the Sheraton.' 2. Are you staying at home for Christmas / the Christmas? 3. Barclays Bank / The Barclays Bank have opened a new branch in High Street / the High Street. 4. British newspapers are usually divided into popular papers, like Today / the Today and Sun / the Sun, and quality papers, like Guardian / the Guardian. 5. Cathay Pacific / The Cathay Pacific offers daily flights to Tokyo. 6. Diana and George got married in St Matthew's Church / the St Matthew's Church. 7. Did you see the film at Classic / the Classic (cinema)? 8. Don't forget it's Mother's Day / the Mother's Day next week. 9. Frank is a student at Liverpool University / the Liverpool University. 10. Have you ever visited Tower of London / the Tower of London? 11. He was one of the youngest to be elected to Senate / the Senate. 12. He's been a newsreader for BBC / the BBC for 10 years. 13. House of Lords / The House of Lords will vote on the bill tomorrow. 14. I can remember Easter /an Easter when it snowed all the time. 15. ICI / The ICI is one of the world's largest companies. 16. If you want to buy some new clothes, the shop I would recommend is Harrison's / the Harrison's. 17. In 1954 he joined General Electric Company / the General Electric Company, or GEC / the GEC as it is usually known. 18. Italy won a World Cup / the World Cup in 1982. 19. John Major replaced Margaret Thatcher as leader of Conservative / the Conservative Party in 1990. 20. Mr. Jenkins reads Daily Telegraph / the Daily Telegraph but his wife reads Times / the Times. 21. My local pub is called Prince of Wales / the Prince of Wales. 22. Olympic Games / The Olympic Games were restarted in Athens in 1896. 23. One of the nicest parks in London is St James's Park / the St James's Park, which is very near Buckingham Palace / the Buckingham Palace. 24. Several countries are interested in joining European Community/ the European Community. 25. Tate Gallery / The Tate Gallery is the main modern art museum in London. 26. The British Prime Minister lives in Downing Street / the Downing Street. 27. The proposal was rejected by Finance Ministry / the Finance Ministry. 28. There have been arguments about the role of UNESCO / the UNESCO. 29. United Nations / The United Nations was formed in 1945. 30. We flew from London to Orly Airport / the Orly Airport in Paris. 31. When we were in London, we visited National Gallery / the National Gallery. 32. Whitehall / The Whitehall has denied any knowledge of the affair. 33.

Wimbledon / The Wimbledon is the most famous tennis event in the world. 34. You must visit Science Museum / the Science Museum when you are in London.

Exercise 193. Supply the required articles, paying attention to miscellaneous proper names.

1. 'Do you know where he's staying?' 'At ... Bristol.' 2. Mr. Robinson arrived at ... London airport from ... New York yesterday on his way to ... Ukraine. 3. Usually he used to read ... few articles out of ... 'Time' or ... 'Newsweek'. 4. When last heard from he was at ... University of Berlin. 5. 'What's ... French for factory?' 'Usine.' 6. They drove up to ... main terminal – ... brightly lighted, air-conditioned Taj-Mahal. 7. He had applied for this assistantship in ... answer to ... advertisement in ... 'Lancet'. 8. Soon after that he was expelled from ... Harvard University. 9. ... 'Friedrich Weber' was ... freighter sailing from ... Hamburg to ... Colombo. 10. On their way to ... Savoy Hotel he refused to tell Tom what would happen there. 11. Schiller, ... most popular dramatist in ... Germany, was forced to make ... translations from ... French in order to earn ... money enough to live on. 12. David said in ... gruff voice that he never read ... 'News of the World'. 13. Gracie was ... student at ... London University. 14. ... liner 'Queen Elisabeth' sails at 8 a.m. this morning, on ... schedule. 15. ... lady talked ... bad French at ... top of her voice. 16. There's ... good film at ... Regal Cinema this week. 17. ... sets of furniture were imitations of one of ... Louis periods. 18. ... Pulkovo Observatory is over ... hundred years old. 19. ... chin of ... founder of ... Forsyte clan was settled comfortably between ... widely separated points of ... old-fashioned collar. 20. He had known all ... pretty Montjoy sisters scattered over Society, but of them all Diana was ... youngest, ... prettiest, most tasteful and wittiest. 21. I often go to ... Pushkin Theatre. 22. I am very fond of ... Pushkin's short tragedies. 23. ... Tretyakov gallery was founded nearly ... century ago by Pavel Tretyakov. ... Tretyakov's devotion to ... art and his indefatigable efforts had ... magnificent results and furthered ... development of Russian painting. 24. I am medical student and have held ... post of house surgeon at one of ... London hospitals for some time. 25. ... Fox apartment had ... spacious old-fashioned feeling. 26. Towards ... end of ... year 1913 several young students living in Moscow founded ... small group known as ... Students' Drama Studio. It was from that group that ... Vakhtangov Theatre sprang. Vakhtangov was ... tireless innovator. Some of Vakhtangov's pupils became ... capable producers. 27. He went out and ate ... ices at ... pastry-cook's shop in ... Charing Cross; tried ... new coat in ... Pall Mall; and called for ... Captain Cannon, played eleven games at ... billiards with ... captain, and returned to ... Russell Square. 28. ... street was empty, unlighted save by ... reflection from ... Grandlieu Street behind them. 29. In 1905 ... revolt broke out on ... Potemkin, one of ... battleships of ... Black Sea Fleet. 30. Yet, in ... bright drawing room in ... Lord North Street, all he was thinking of what ... Telegraph, ... Guardian, the popular press, would say next day. 31. She nodded ... command to ... footman, and they drove off westward, down ... Strand, and so into ... little side street by ... Charing Cross. 32. I am going to Folkestone today, and shall stay at ... Metropole. 33. They were excited because they had been dining with ...

editor of ... Times, and had been given ... glimpse of next day's paper. 34. She sat in her superb private drawing room at ... Hotel Cecil. 35. ... boys loved him because he told them that ... Navy had borrowed him from ... U. S. Army just in time to blow taps on ... Maine as she was sinking, and he remained long after everyone including ... captain had abandoned ... ship. 36. He began to walk very rapidly up towards ... Trafalgar Square.

Exercise 194. Fill in the blanks with articles before miscellaneous proper names if necessary.

1. When they put out from the port in a hired launch it was already summer dusk and lights were breaking out in spasms along the rigging of ... Levante. 2. Well, tomorrow then. I'm living at ... Chelsea now. 3. On the other bank of ... Potomac lies ... Arlington National Cemetery, where ... President Kennedy was buried. 4. Tom and Miss Baker sat at either end of the long couch and she read aloud to him from ... Saturday Evening Post. 5. Sensation at ... London airport. Attempt to smuggle 12 jewels worth three quarters of a million. 6. His own ideas of a riotous holiday meant picnicking on the grass of ... Green Park with his family and half a dozen paper bags full of food. 7. After that, if the night was mellow, I strolled down ... Madison Avenue past ... old Murray Hotel, and over ... 33d Street to ... Pennsylvania Station. 8. Why, yes, didn't you know that? Why, he's manager of ... Grand Opera House. 9. Then still keeping a hundred yards behind, we followed into ... Oxford Street and so down ... Regent Street. 10. It was close on midnight when a man crossed ... Place de la Concorde. 11. I graduated from ... New Haven in 1915, just a quarter of a century after my father. 12. I meant it might be nice for you to take a house in ... London for the spring season – I know a dove of a house in ... Talbot Square you could get, furnished. 13. ... Jefferson Memorial was built in memory of the third President of ... USA, Thomas Jefferson, who was also the author of the Declaration of Independence. 14. ... White House Is the President's residence. 15. At half past six on a Friday evening in January, ... Lincoln International Airport, Illinois, was functioning, though with difficulty. 16. He turned on the radio. Mozart, unworried and spring-like, accompanied them as far as ... Bronx. 17. Hurstwood wrote her one morning asking her to meet him in ... Jefferson Park, ... Monroe Street. 18. He remembered having seen her sitting in ... Botanical Gardens waiting for Bosinney. 19. This was in ... Broadway Central, which was then one of the most important hotels in the city. 20. She asked Charles if he would take her to ... National Gallery. 21. The girls of ... Lotus Club wondered what had become of him and worried Jan with questions. 22. Across ... Fifth Avenue, through ... Madison Square by the winding paths, east on ... Twenty Third Street and down ... Third Avenue wound the long serpentine company. 23. He has been to ... Eton and ... Oxford and he doesn't forget to let you know it. 24. I presume that it was committed in the cloakroom of ... House of Commons. 25. 'But I happen to know most of the members of ... Racquet Club,' he said. 26. From the instant you land at ... El Dorado International Airport, you feel a privileged guest in the warm respective city. 27. And feeling that he must finish with it now, he took a cab into ... West End. 28.

Then he sat in ... Bryant Park, a block away, waiting. 29. Well, I am connected with ... Wellington – the new hotel on ... Broadway. 30. ... National Theatre said on ... Tuesday it would close one of its three auditoriums. 31. The conversation was in ... German, for it developed that he had been educated at ... Gottingen. 32. The largest and tallest among the buildings was ... Capitol with its great Hall of Representatives and Senate Chamber. 33. I know a girl who studies ... French and she pays 17 shillings an hour. And I'm going to take lessons in ... English language, which is my native language, so I won't give you more than a shilling. 34. He had an idea that anything accepted by a paper was published immediately, and as he had sent the manuscript in on ... Friday, he expected it to come out ... following Sunday. 35. Every morning her mother had read two newspapers from cover to cover: ... Daily Telegraph and ... Daily Mirror. 36. Approaching ... Malta Street, ... Soho, Soames thought with wonder of those seven years at ... Brighton. 37. And he went back into ... City to do what still lay before him. 38. He stood by the window of the sitting-room which gave view over ... Hyde Park. 39. He leaned on the ship's rail as the tugs nosed ... Victoria into the wharf. 40. There were tearful scenes at ... Gatwick Airport. 41. Request weather and runway information – ... Detroit Metropolitan and ... Lincoln International Airport. 42. My advice is to leave this hotel – by way of the bar if you want. Go to ... Chambord, or if you need a lot of service, go over to ... Majestic. 43. They drove off eastward, down ... Strand and into a little side street, by ... Charing Cross. 44. He turned off ... Avenue de l'Opera up ... Rue des Pyramides, through the traffic of ... Rue de Rivole and through a dark gate into ... Tuileries. 45. He spoke now of the lectures which an English poet was giving at ... Auditorium. 46. I am a marine biologist. I took a degree in it at ... Cambridge. 47. They have a nice home in ... High Street. 48. He paid careful attention to the announcements in ... Times. 49. You want to see ... Lincoln Park and ... Michigan Boulevard. They are putting up great buildings there. 50. It must have been ... Harvard Club. 51. ... Savoy is a luxury hotel in ... Strand in London. 52. Dick was about to retort by commenting on the extraordinary suits of a cut and pattern fantastic enough to have sauntered down ... Bealy Street on ... Sunday – when an explanation was coming. 53. Charlie was a youngish man of thirty-five, graduate of ... Stanford University, member of ... Nile Club and ... Unity Club, a conservative speaker for ... Republican Party during campaigns, in short, a rising man in every way.

Exercise 195. Translate into English paying special attention to the use of articles with miscellaneous proper names.

1. Он просил меня передать вам, что они пойдут на экскурсию в Эрмитаж на следующей неделе. 2. Чаще всего туристы, приезжающие в Лондон, фотографируют Биг Бэн и Тауэр. 3. Симон живет в одном из пригородов Лондона, и у него уходит около часа, чтобы добраться в Сити. 4. Не удивительно, что этого певца называют новым Элвисом. Думаю, что очень скоро он будет выступать в Карнеги Холл. 5. – Нет ли у тебя «Америки» почитать? – К сожалению, нет. Но есть «Космополитен». 6. Госпиталь Святого



Томаса – один из старейших в Лондоне. До него рукой подать, всего лишь пять минут пешком через парк святого Джеймса. 7. В каждом древнегреческом городе была окруженная стенами крепость на вершине холма – акрополь. Самым знаменитым считается Акрополь в городе Афины. 8. Пять тысяч лет стоят на берегу Нила знаменитые Пирамиды. 9. Особое внимание он обращал на объявления в Таймс и Гардиан. 10. Сооружения 60-80-х гг. в Соединенных Штатах отличаются гигантскими размерами, массивностью геометрических объемов, хаотичностью архитектурных направлений, например здание гостиницы «Хайат Ридженси» в Сан-Франциско. 11. Не забывай, что он учился в Итоне и Оксфорде. 12. Следующие двадцать минут он провел, сидя в Гайд парке, ожидая Джона. 13. Как только вы приземляетесь в Международном аэропорту Эльдorado, вы чувствуете, что вас здесь ждут. 14. Да, у меня есть кое-какие связи в Веллингтоне – новом отеле на Бродвее. 15. Как ты мог не побывать в Сохо, находясь в Лондоне? 16. У них небольшой дом на Хай стрит. 17. Тадж-Махал – одно из прекраснейших сооружений, когда-либо созданных человеком. 18. Глядя на многоярусные аркады Колизея, представляешь античный Рим в расцвете славы. 19. Собор и площадь святого Петра в Риме строились долго; собор был закончен в 16-м веке. 20. Инженер Гюстав Эйфель построил в Париже башню, которая с тех пор стала называться Эйфелева. 21. Каждое утро он ездил на работу в старом Форде. 22. Женщина, сидящая за соседним столом, что-то тихо читала своему мужу из Таймс. 23. Не думаю, что мы можем себе позволить снимать дом на Талбот Сквер. 24. Мы решили поговорить в Грин парке, который находился в пяти минутах ходьбы от офиса. 25. Все это произошло в «Герге V», который в то время считался самым большим отелем в городе. 26. Когда самолет приземлился в аэропорту Орли, я почувствовал себя дома.

Exercise 196. Revision: insert the definite article if necessary.

1. ... United Nations; 2. ... N.A.T.O.; 3. ... Beatles; 4. ... Mediterranean; 5. ... Lake Victoria; 6. ... U.S.; 7. ... Equator; 8. ... Canaries; 9. ... Outer Space; 10. ... Far East; 11. ... New York Times; 12. ... Pacific; 13. ... West; 14. ... British Airways; 15. ... World Bank; 16. ... St Peter's Square; 17. ... Great Wall of China; 18. ... Mount Everest; 19. ... Rolling Stones; 20. ... Black Sea; 21. ... Kremlin; 22. ... Christmas; 23. ... Himalayas; 24. ... Twentieth Century; 25. ... Ganges; 26. ... Thirties; 27. ... Warsaw Pact; 28. ... North Pole; 29. ... Piccadilly Circus; 30. ... Milan Cathedral.

Exercise 146. Revision: answer these questions.

1. Give two different names for the most powerful country in the Western world. 2. How can we refer to the years 1990-1999? 3. In which mountain range is Everest? 4. Of which country is Washington the capital? 5. What desert occupies much of northern Africa? 6. What joins the Red Sea and the Mediterranean? 7. What oceans does the Panama Canal join? 8. What separates Spain and Morocco? 9. What's the capital of Afghanistan? 10. What's the highest mountain in the world? 11. What's the

largest desert in the world? 12. What's the largest freshwater lake in the world? 13. Where can you find the Mona Lisa? 14. Where does the American President live? 15. Where does the Pope live? 16. Where does the Queen live? 17. Where in London can you find the statue of Eros? 18. Where in London is the department store Selfridge's? 19. Which are the two main newspapers in Britain? 20. Which country has the largest population in the world? 21. Which group of islands does Jamaica belong to? 22. Which is the largest continent? 23. Which is the largest island in the world? 24. Which is the smallest continent? 25. Which magazine is read by men all over the world? 26. Which mountain range lies between France and Spain? 27. Which river flows through London? 28. Which river runs through Paris? 29. Which river runs through Rome?

Exercise 197. Revision: fill in the blanks with articles wherever necessary.

### **Australia**

Australia is ... fifth and smallest of ... continents, three-quarters ... size of ... Europe, ... quarter ... size of ... Africa and ... sixth ... size of ... Asia or ... Americas. On ... other hand, it is by far ... largest island in ... world, with ... coastline of 12,200 miles and ... overall area of almost three million square miles, which makes it slightly smaller than ... United States and about twenty-four times ... size of ... British Isles.

Geologically, Australia dates back at least 2,000 million years, and ... poet who described it as ... land as old as ... time' was not far wrong. Some people believe that it was once ... part of ... Antarctic continent. There is also ... theory that until ... few million years ago it was ... part of ... great land which reached ... north to ... Asia and ... east as far as ... New Zealand. ... skeletal remains indicate that at one time Australia was inhabited by ... giant land fauna, for example, ... kangaroos and ... emus up to three times their present size, and ... lizards up to twenty feet long. ... country's vegetation in those days was very much as it is now.

In its present shape more than ... third of Australia lies within ... tropics. ... Cape York, its northern tip, is in more or less ... same latitude as ... far south of ... India and ... central islands of ... Philippines. ... southern tip of ... Tasmania has ... same latitude as ... Portland (... Maine), ... Black Sea and ... Vladivostok. Because of this there is much variety in ... physical character and ... climate. It is ... rather flat country with ... not very high ranges near ... eastern coast. ... highest peak, ... Mount Kosciusco, reaches only 7,316 feet, ... quarter of ... height of ... Mount Everest. Much of ... country's interior is almost rainless, and as ... result most of ... people live on ... east and ... south-east coasts. ... large cities such as ... Sydney and ... Melbourne are crowded with ... people but ... average number of ... inhabitants to ... square mile in Australia is only four.

Exercise 198. Revision: fill in the blanks with articles wherever necessary paying particular attention to the use of articles before geographic names.

### **Geography of ... United States**

... United States of America is located on ... North American continent.

... western third of ... country consists mainly of ... high plateau broken by ... numerous mountain ranges, ... chief of which are ... Rocky Mountains. To ... west of this region lie ... Great Plains. This is ... region of ... very flat ground extending from ... Canadian border to ... Gulf of ... Mexico and eastward as far as ... Appalachian Mountains. ... Appalachians are ... range of ... low mountains and ... hills running parallel to ... Atlantic Coast and about one to two hundred miles in land.

Along ... center of ... Great Plains, flowing ... south from ... Canadian border to ... Gulf of ... Mexico is ... Mississippi River. This river together with ... Missouri which joins it from ... west and ... Ohio which joins it from ... east, forms ... central river system of ... United States. In ... north are ... five Great Lakes –... Lake Superior, ... Lake Huron, ... Lake Michigan, ... Lake Erie and ... Lake Ontario which empty into ... Atlantic Ocean through ... St. Lawrence River. ... Colorado River in ... southwest and ... Columbia in ... northwest are ... other principal rivers of ... country.

... climate of ... country is typical to ... other large continental areas in ... temperature zone. It is very warm in ... summer and in all of it except ... south is cold in ... winter. ... west, and especially ... southwest, is very dry.

... capital of ... United States Washington, D. C. is not located in any state, but lies between ... states of ... Maryland and ... Virginia. ... principal cities of ... U.S. are ... New York. ... Chicago, ... Philadelphia. ... Detroit, ... Los Angeles and ... Cleveland. ... population of ... United States is not evenly spread over ... country, but is concentrated largely in ... east.

... heart of ... American agriculture is ... 'corn-belt', ... belt of ... very fertile land extending from ... Nebraska eastwards as far as ... Pennsylvania. In this area ... principal crop is ... corn. West of ... corn-belt is ... wheat-belt extending ... north and ... south from ... Texas to ... North Dakota and into ... Canada.

... principal products of ... south are ... cotton and ... tobacco although ... corn is also grown here. ... agriculture of ... California, because of its favorable climate, is confined largely to ... special crops, such as ... citrus crops and ... grapes.

... mineral deposits of ... U.S. are concentrated largely among ... Appalachian Mountains. There are, however, ... important oil-fields in ... Texas, ... Oklahoma and ... California, and ... important iron mines in ... Minnesota. Because of ... overwhelming concentration of ... minerals in ... northeastern part of ... U.S. ... manufacturing is also concentrated there.

Exercise 199. Revision: fill in the blanks with articles wherever necessary paying particular attention to the use of articles with geographic names.

### ... British Isles

... British Isles lie off ... north-west coast of ... continental Europe. They are made up of ... Great Britain (... England, ... Scotland and ... Wales) and ... Ireland (... Northern Ireland and ... independent Irish Republic) and some 5,500 smaller islands. ... whole territory of ... British Isles is 244,000 square kilometres.

We will not find ... high mountains or ... large plains in Britain. Everything occupies ... little place. ... nature, it seems, has carefully adapted ... things – ... mountains, ... plains, ... rivers, ... lakes – to ... size of ... island itself. ... mountain 12,000 feet high would be ... wonder there. So would be ... plain 400 miles long, ... river as wide and deep as ... Mississippi.

Most of ... plains lie to ... east; ... west is hilly or mountainous. ... mountains even in ... highest part of England are only ... little over 3,000 feet high. ... highest mountain in ... British Isles is ... Ben Nevis in ... Scotland, 4,406 feet high. ... longest river is ... Severn, about 2000 miles long. ... highest waterfall is 370 feet high.

Too often ... visitor who has only ... few days to spend sees only ... Lowland England, and so he cannot see ... contrasts between ... wild fiords of ... Scotland, ... rocks of ... North Wales, ... smiling orchardland of ... Kent, and ... open moorland of ... Sutherland. These contrasts are often not far from ... big cities.

... climate of ... British Isles is influenced by ... Atlantic Ocean.

... winters are not so cold as they can be on ... continent, but ... summers are not so warm as they usually are on ... other side of ... Channel. In ... other words, ... Great Britain has ... mild climate, but because of ... length of ... British Isles ... temperatures differ from ... district to ... district.

... North is certainly colder than ... South, but in ... winter ... coldest districts are ... eastern ones. ... climate here is more like that in ... Central Europe. On ... whole ... weather changes very often and there are ... few sunny days. Britain has ... rain in every month of ... year. ... rainiest months in Britain are ... November, ... January and ... February. Usually there is ... little snow in ... winter.

Exercise 200. Revision: fill in the blanks with articles if necessary paying particular attention to the use of articles before geographic names.

### How ... New York Became America's Largest City

In ... 18th century ... New York was smaller than ... Philadelphia and ... Boston. Today it is ... largest city in America. How can ... change in its size and importance be explained?

To answer this question we must consider ... certain facts about ... geography, ... history, and ... economics. Together these three will explain ... huge growth of ... America's most famous city.

... map of ... Northeast shows that four of ... most heavily populated areas in this region are around ... seaports. At these points ... materials from across ... sea enter ... United States, and ... products of ... land are sent there for ... export across ... sea.

... economists know that ... places where ... transportation lines meet are ... good places for making ... raw materials into ... finished goods. That is why ... seaports often have ... cities nearby. But ... cities like New York needed more than their geographical location in order to become ... great industrial centers. Their development did not happen simply by ... chance.

About 1815, when many Americans from ... east coast had already moved toward ... west, ... trade routes from ... ports to ... central regions of ... country began to be ... serious problem. ... slow wagons of that time, drawn by ... horses or ... oxen, were too expensive for moving ... heavy freight very far. ... Americans had long admired ... Europe's canals. In ... New York State ... canal seemed ... best solution to ... transportation problem. From ... eastern end of ... Lake Erie all ... way across ... state to ... Hudson River there is ... long strip of ... low land. Here ... Erie Canal was constructed. After several years of ... work it was completed in 1825.

... canal produced ... immediate effect. ... freight costs were to about one-tenth of what they had been. ... New York City, which had been smaller than ... Philadelphia and ... Boston, quickly became ... leading city of ... coast. In ... years that followed, ... transportation routes on ... Great Lakes were joined to ... routes on ... Mississippi River. Then ... New York City became ... end point of ... great inland shipping system that extended from ... Atlantic Ocean far up ... western branches of ... Mississippi.

... coming of ... railroads made ... canal snipping less important, but it tied ... New York even more closely to ... central regions of ... country. It was easier for ... people in ... central states to ship their goods to ... New York for ... export overseas.

... exports from ... New York were greater than ... imports. Consequently ... shipping companies were eager to fill their ships with ... passengers on ... return trip from ... Europe. ... passengers could come from ... Europe very cheaply as ... result.

Thus ... New York became ... greatest port for receiving ... people from ... European countries. Many of these people remained in ... city. ... others stayed in ... New York for ... few weeks, months, or years, and then moved to ... other parts of ... United States. For these great numbers of ... new Americans New York had to provide ... homes, ... goods and ... services. Their labor helped ... city become great.

Exercise 201. General revision: fill in the blanks with articles if necessary.

1. Meg wore ... attractive black and white hat and had had her hair done at ... hairdresser's. 2. They boasted that they had been flown over ... late battle-field at ... height of 3,000 feet. 3. ... French didn't allow ... publication of ... book in ... French. 4. It was ... quarter to three when ... telephone rang. Mr. Morley was sitting in ... easy-chair, happily digesting ... excellent lunch. He did not move when ... bell rang but waited for ... faithful George to come and take ... call. 5. Mr. Pyne amused himself that evening by going to ... cinema. 6. In ... dining-room ... child Terry was howling at ... top of his voice. 7. ... boy Roger had arrived home with ... measles; his mother blessed ... measles that brought him home. 8. ... Adamses were ... pleasant people with ... large family. 9. 'Is your father ... businessman?' 'Not really.'

He is ... professor.’ ‘ ... teacher?’ she asked with ... note of ... disappointment. ‘Well, he is ... kind of ... authority, you know. ... people consult him.’ ‘About ... health? Is he ... doctor?’ ‘Not that sort of ... doctor. He is ... doctor of ... engineering, though.’ 10. She said she was going to ... pictures and invited me to go with her. 11. ... three sat talking over ... plans for ... future. 12. He spoke with ... indifference, like ... man weary of ... whole subject. 13. It is necessary indeed to go back to ... middle of ... nineteenth century, when ... industrious and intelligent man called Sibert Mason, who had been ... head gardener at ... grand place in ... Sussex and had married ... cook, bought with his savings and hers ... few acres ... north of London and set up as ... market gardener. 14. I was sitting up in ... bed, sipping ... hot coffee, when ... nurse came into ... room. 15. Together they walked through ... mud and ... slush. 16. ‘All ... men are ... sinners,’ my aunt used to say. 17. I spent half my time teaching ... law and ... other half in London as ... consultant to ... big firm. 18. Andy grinned from ... ear to ... ear. 19. I had read ... poetry at ... school, but as ... task. 20. Aunt Milly was ... enthusiastic liberal; my mother was ... patriotic, true-blue conservative. 21. ... box was wrapped in ... tissue paper. 22. His father was ... civil servant, who was ... secretary of ... Post Office in ... Ireland when, in 1916, ... headquarters in ... Dublin was seized by ... Republicans. 23. Let’s not bother about ... present troubles and look forward to ... future. 24. ‘You sit down,’ he said, ‘I’ll cook you ... big breakfast.’ 25. We were up before ... dawn and didn’t stop ... work till ... nightfall. 26. He hadn’t said ... word since ... dinner began. 27. They say he has ... great future in his firm. 28. He stayed in ... bed till ... midday. 29. ... president landed in ... New Delhi after ... five-hour visit to ... Kabul, ... capital of ... Afghanistan.

Exercise 202. General revision: supply the required articles in the following text.

In 1923, at ... meeting of ... British Association for ... Advancement of ... Science in Liverpool, Rutherford announced: ‘We are living in ... heroic age of ... physics.’

... curious thing was, all he said was absolutely true. There had never been such ... time. ... year 1932 was ... most spectacular year in ... history of ... science. Living in Cambridge, one could not help picking up ... human and intellectual excitement in ... air: James Chadwick, grey-faced after ... fortnight of ... work with ... three hours’ sleep ... night, telling ... Kapitsa Club how he had discovered ... neutron; P.M.S. Blackett, ... most handsome of ... men, not quite so authoritative as usual, because it seemed too good to be true, showing ... plates which demonstrated ... existence of ... positive electron; John Cockcroft, normally not given to ... emotional display, saying to anyone whose face he recognized: ‘We’ve split ... atom!’

During ... twenties and thirties Cambridge was ... metropolis of ... experimental physics for ... entire world. ‘You’re always at ... crest of ... wave,’ someone said to Rutherford. ‘Well, after all, made ... wave, didn’t I?’ Rutherford replied.

He was ... big, rather clumsy man. He had ... large staring blue eyes and ... damp lower lip. He didn’t look in ... least like ... intellectual. His was really ... kind

of ... face that often goes with ... character and ... gifts. In ... fact, he came from ... very poor: his father was ... odd-job man in New Zealand and ... son of ... Scottish emigrant.

New Zealand was, in ... 1880s, ... most remote of ... provinces, but Rutherford managed to get ... good education. He was as original as Einstein, but unlike Einstein he did not revolt against ... formal instruction; he was top in ... classics as well as in everything else. He started ... research on ... subject of ... wireless waves with ... equipment such as one might dig up today in ... African laboratory. That did not deter him, 'I could do research at ... North Pole,' he once proclaimed, and it was true. He brought his wireless work to Cambridge, anticipated Marconi and then dropped it because he saw ... field – ... radioactivity – more scientifically interesting. His work led him directly to ... atomic energy industry, spending ... thousands of ... millions of ... pounds. He himself never earned, or wanted to earn, more than ... professor's salary. In his will he left precisely ... value of ... Nobel Prize.

As soon as Rutherford got on to ... radioactivity, he was set on his life's work. His ideas were simple, rugged, material. He thought of ... atoms as though they were ... tennis balls. He discovered ... particles smaller than ... atoms, and discovered how they moved or bounced. Sometimes ... particles bounced ... wrong way. Then he inspected ... facts and made ... new but always simple picture. In that way he moved, as certainly as ... sleepwalker, from ... unstable radioactive atoms to ... discovery of ... nucleus and ... structure of ... atom. In 1919 he made one of ... significant discoveries of all ... time: he broke up ... nucleus of ... nitrogen by ... direct hit from ... alpha particle. That is, ... man could now get inside Fill in the blanks with articles if necessary ... atomic nucleus.

Exercise 203. General revision: fill in the blanks with articles wherever necessary.

### **On Snobbery**

...snobbery is not so common in England today as it was at ... beginning of ... century. It still exists, however, and ... advertisers know how to use it in order to sell their goods.

... snob, ... dictionaries tell us, is ... person who pays too much attention to ... social position or wealth. ... popular newspapers know that many of their readers are ... snobs. That is why they give them ... unimportant and useless information about ... persons of ... high social position, ... photographs of 'Lady X and her friends' at ... ball, or 'Lord Y and his friends' at ... races.

It is ... snobbery that makes some men feel annoyed when on ... envelopes of ... letters addressed to them, they find 'Mr.' before their names instead 'Esq.' after their names. ... snobbery explains why many people give their suburban house ... name, such as '... Oaks', '... Pines', '... Cedars', '... Poplars', even though there are no oak trees, pine trees, cedar trees or poplar trees in their garden. ... people of ... high social position have ... country houses with ... names, so ... house with ... name seems better than ... house with ... number. ... numbers make ... postman's work much easier, but that is not important.

... advertisers are very clever in their use of ... snobbery. ... motor-car manufacturers, for example, advertise ... colours of their cars as ‘Embassy Black’ or ‘Balmoral Stone’. ... embassy black is ... plain, ordinary black, but because ... embassy is ... official residence of ... ambassador, ... name suggests ... diplomats and all ... social importance that surrounds them: ... Balmoral stone is ... grey colour of ... ordinary stone, but ... Balmoral is also ... name of ... residence in Scotland of ... British royal family.

Exercise 204. General revision: fill in the blanks with articles wherever necessary.

### **Zoos – Then and Now**

... modern zoos are very different from ... zoos that were built fifty years ago. At that time, ... zoos were places where ... people could go to see ... animals from many parts of ... world. ... animals lived in ... cages that were made of ... concrete with ... iron bars, ... cages that were easy to keep clean. Unfortunately for ... animals, were small and impossible to hide in. ... zoo environment was anything but natural. Although ... zookeepers took good care of ... animals and fed them well, many of animals did not thrive; they often became ill, and they behaved in ... strange ways.

In ... modern zoo, ... people can see ... animals in more natural habitats. ... animals are given ... more freedom in ... larger areas so that they can live more as they would in ... nature. Even ... appearance of ... zoos has changed. ... trees and grass grow in ... cages, and ... streams of ... water flow through ... areas that ... animals live in. There are ... few bars; instead, often only ... deep ditch, which is called ... moat, surrounds ... area where several species of ... animals live together as they would naturally. For example, in ... San Diego Zoo, ... visitor can walk through ... huge cage which is filled with ... trees and many birds. ... cage, called ... aviary, is large enough so that ... birds can fly around, make ... nests in ... trees, and hunt for ... food. At ... Zoological Park in ... New York City, because of ... special lights, ... people can observe ... nocturnal animals that ... most people have never seen; these animals are active only at ... night when ... most zoos are closed. In ... zoo like ... Arizona – Sonora Desert Museum, ... people can see ... animals that live in ... special environments like ... desert. At ... other zoos ... visitors watch ... animals that live under ... water or ... animals that live in ... cold polar surroundings.

... modern zoo not only displays ... animals for ... visitors, but it also preserves and saves ... endangered species. ... Endangered animals such as ... American bald eagle and ... bison are now living and producing offsprings in ... zoos. For this reason, fifty years from now ... grandchildren of today’s visitors will still be able to enjoy watching these animals.



Exercise 205. General revision: fill in the blanks with articles if necessary.

In ... spring of 1840 ... political excitement was especially high in New York City. ... Democrats were more than eager to re-elect Martin Van Buren as ... president.

In their enthusiasm, some of Van Buren's friends in New York organised ... club to further his political interests. On March 23, ... secretary of this club placed ... announcement in ... New York City paper about ... next meeting of ... organisation. This announcement began: '... Democratic O.K. Club are hereby ordered to meet ...'

... political enemies of ... Democrats at once pound upon this mysterious 'O. K. Club' and speculated much of what O. K. might stand for. ... Democrats delighted that they had their opponents baffled, for ... long time withheld any explanation of ... mysterious abbreviation.

... speculation once begun about O. K. went on for ... little more than ... hundred years, during which time all kinds of guesses were made about its origin and meaning. Then in July, 1941, ... American Professor came upon ... solution to ... puzzle. And what ... simple one it was: O. K., he found, stood for 'Old Kinderhook'. ... full name of ... political club was '... Democratic Old Kinderhook Club', this name being adopted by way of honouring Van Buren who had been born in Old Kinderhook, New York, not far from Albany.

Exercise 206. General revision: fill in the blanks with the indefinite article if necessary.

1. My neighbour is ... photographer; let's ask him for ... advice about colour films. 2. We had ... fish and ... chips for ... lunch. – That doesn't sound ... very interesting lunch. 3. I had ... very bad night; I didn't sleep ... wink. 4. He is ... vegetarian; you won't get ... meat at his house. He'll give you ... nut cutlet. – Last time I had ... nut cutlet I had ... indigestion. 5. ... travel agent would give you ... information about ... hotels. 6. We'd better go by ... taxi – if we can get ... taxi at such ... hour as 2 a.m. 7. ... person who suffers from ... claustrophobia has ... dread of being confined in ... small space, and would always prefer ... stairs to ... lift. 8. Do you take ... sugar in ... coffee? – I used to, but now I'm on ... diet. I'm trying to lose ... weight. 9. ... man suffering from ... shock should not be given anything to drink. 10. You'll get ... shock if you touch ... live wire with that screwdriver. Why don't you get ... screwdriver with ... insulated handle? 11. It costs fifty-five and ... halfpence and I've only got ... fifty pence piece. – You can pay by ... cheque here. – But can I write ... cheque for ... fifty-five and ... halfpence? 12. ... Mr. Smith is ... old customer and ... honest man. – Why do you say that? Has he been accused of ... dishonesty? 13. I'm not ... wage-earner; I'm ... self-employed man. I have ... business of my own. – Then you're not ... worker; you're ... capitalist! 14. When he was charged with ... murder he said he had ... alibi. 15. ... friend of mine is expecting ... baby. If it's ... girl she's going to be called Etheldreda. – What ... name to give ... girl! 16. I have ... hour and ... half for lunch. – I only have ... half ... hour – barely ... time for ... smoke and ... cup of coffee. 17. I hope you have ... lovely

time and ... good weather. – But I'm not going for ... holiday; I'm going on ... business. 18. He looked at me with ... horror when I explained that I was ... double agent. 19. I wouldn't climb ... mountain for £1,000! I have ... horror of ... heights. 20. I have ... headache and ... sore throat. I think I've got ... cold. – I think you're getting ... flu. 21. ... Mr. Jones called while you were out (*neither of us knows this man*). He wants to make ... complaint about ... article in the paper. He was in ... very bad temper. 22. If you go by ... train you can have quite ... comfortable journey, but make sure you get ... express, not ... train that stops at all the stations. 23. ... few people know (*hardly anyone knows*) that there is ... secret passage from this house to ... old smugglers' cave in the cliffs. 24. I'm having ... few friends in to ... coffee tomorrow evening. Would you like to come? – I'd love to, but I'm afraid I'm going to ... concert. 25. It's time you had ... holiday. You haven't had ... day off for ... month. 26. He broke ... leg in ... skiing accident. It's still in ... plaster. 27. I want ... assistant with ... knowledge of French and ... experience of ... office routine. 28. I see that your house is built of ... wood. Are you insured against ... fire? 29. The escaping prisoner camped in ... wood but he didn't light ... fire because ..... smoke rising from the wood might attract ... attention. 30. I had ... amazing experience last night. I saw ... dinosaur eating ... meat pie in ... London park. – You mean you had ... nightmare. Anyway, dinosaurs didn't eat ... meat. 31. I'll pay you ... hundred ... week. It's not ... enormous salary but after all you are ... completely unskilled man. 32. If you kept ... graph you could see at ... glance whether you were making ... profit or ... loss. 33. ... little (*hardly anything*) is known about the effect of this drug; yet ... chemist will sell it to you without ... prescription. 34. I have ... little money left; let's have dinner in ... restaurant. 35. Would it be ... trouble to you to buy me ... newspaper on your way home? 36. ... man is ... reasoning animal.

Exercise 207. General revision: fill in the blanks with the indefinite article or the pronoun 'one' if necessary.

1. ... of my friends advised me to take ... taxi; another said that there was quite ... good bus service. 2. ... friend of mine lent me ... book by Meredith. I've only ... more chapter to read. Would you like ... loan of it afterwards? – No, thanks. I read ... of his books ... few years ago and didn't like it. Besides I have ... library book to finish. If I don't take it back tomorrow I'll have to pay ... fine. 3. ... man I met on the train told me ... rather unusual story. 4. Most people like ... rest after ... hard day's work, but Tom seemed to have ... inexhaustible supply of energy. 5. I've told you ... hundred times not to come into ... room with ... hat on. 6. It's unlucky to light three cigarettes with ... match. – That's only ... superstition. Only ... idiot believes in superstitions. 7. He says ... caravan is no good; he needs ... cottage. 8. ... plate is no good; we need ... dozen. 9. Last time there was ... fog here ... plane crash-landed in ... field near the airport. The crew had ... lucky escape. ... man broke his leg; the rest were unhurt. 10. You've been ... great help to me; ... day I will repay you. 11. My car broke down near ... bus stop. There was ... man waiting for ... bus so I asked him for ... advice. 12. He took ... quick look at my car and said, 'Buy ... new one.' 13. There was ... woman there. The rest were men. – There shouldn't have been even

... woman. It was meant to be ... stag party. 14. Don't tell ... soul! Not even your wife! – Of course not! I'd never tell ... secret to ... woman. 15. Most of the staff had been there for only ... very short time, but ... man had been there ... year and ... half, so he knew ... little more than the rest. 16. Could you lend me ... dictionary, please? I'm trying to do ... crossword puzzle. – I'm afraid I've only got ... dictionary, and Tom's borrowed it. 17. ... chop won't be enough for Tom; he'll want two; he's ... small man but he's got ... big appetite. 18. 'I want ... volunteers for ... dangerous job,' said the captain. There was ... long silence. 'Isn't there even ... man who will take ... risk?' he asked. ... voice called out from the back, 'Will there be ... reward?' 19. I have ... flat on the top floor. You get ... lovely view from there. 20. ... day a new director arrived. He was ... ambitious, bad-tempered man, and the staff took ... instant dislike to him. 21. Suddenly ... bullet struck ... street lamp ... little to Bill's left. He looked up and saw ... man with ... gun standing at ... open window. 22. Bill fired back twice ... bullet hit the wall, the other broke ... pane of ... glass. He heard ... angry shout. 23. ... day – it was ... dry day with ... good visibility – Tom was driving along ... country road in ... borrowed car. 24. You're making ... mistake after another. Have you ... hangover, or something? – No, but I had ... very bad night last night. The people next door were having ... party. – ... bad night shouldn't have such ... effect on your work. I often have three bad nights in succession. I live in ... very noisy street.

Exercise 208. General revision: fill in the blanks with the definite article if necessary.

1. ... youngest boy has just started going to ... school; ... eldest boy is at ... college. 2. She lives on ... top floor of an old house. When ... wind blows, all ... windows rattle. 3. ... darkness doesn't worry ... cats; ... cats can see in ... dark. 4. My little boys say that they want to be ... spacemen, but most of them will probably end up in ... less dramatic jobs. 5. Do you know ... time? – Yes, ... clock in ... hall has just struck nine. – Then it isn't ... time to go yet. 6. He was sent to ... prison for ... six months for ... shop-lifting. When ... six months are over he'll be released; ... difficulty then will be to find ... work. – Do you go to ... prison to visit him? 7. I went to ... school to talk to ... headmistress. I persuaded her to let Ann give up ... gymnastics and take ... ballet lessons instead. 8. ... ballet isn't much use for ... girls; it is much better to be able to play ... piano. 9. I am on ... night duty. When you go to ... bed, I go to ... work. 10. Peter's at ... office but you could get him on ... phone. There's a telephone box just round ... corner. 11. He got ... bronchitis and was taken to ... hospital. I expect they'll send him home at ... end of ... week. – Have you rung ... hospital to ask how he is? 12. Ann's habit of riding a motorcycle up and down ... road early in ... morning annoyed ... neighbours and in ... end they took her to ... court. 13. He first went to ... sea in a Swedish ship, so as well as learning ... navigation he had to learn ... Swedish. 14. ... family hotels are ... hotels which welcome ... parents and ... children. 15. On ... Sundays my father stays in ... bed till ten o'clock, reading ... Sunday papers. 16. Then he gets up, puts on ... old clothes, has ... breakfast and starts ... work in ... garden. 17. My mother goes to ... church in ... morning, and in ... afternoon goes to visit ... friends. 18. Like many women, she

loves ... tea parties and ... gossip. 19. My parents have ... cold meat and ... salad for ... supper, ... winter and ... summer. 20. During ... meal he talks about ... garden and she tells him ... village gossip. 21. We have a very good train service from here to ..... city centre and most people go to ... work by train. You can go by ... bus too, of course, but you can't get a season ticket on ... bus. 22. ... dead no longer need ... help. We must concern ourselves with ... living. We must build ... houses and ... schools and ... playgrounds. 23. I'd like to see ... Mr. Smith please. – Do you mean ... Mr. Smith who works in ... box office or ... other Mr. Smith? 24. Did you come by ... air? – No, I came by ... sea. I had ... lovely voyage on ... *Queen Elizabeth II*. 25. ... most of ... stories that people tell about ... Irish aren't true. 26. ... married couples with ... children often rent ... cottages by ... seaside for ... summer holidays. ... men hire boats and go for ... trips along ... coast; ... children spend ... day on ... beach and ... poor mothers spend ... time doing ... cooking and cleaning. 27. It's usually safe to walk on ... sand, but here, when ... tide is coming in, ... sand becomes dangerously soft. ... people have been swallowed up by it. 28. When ... Titanic was crossing ... Atlantic she struck an iceberg which tore a huge hole in her bow. ... captain ordered ... crew to help ... passengers into ... boats. 29. Everywhere ... man has cut down ... forests in order to cultivate ... ground, or to use ... wood as ... fuel or as ... building material. But ... interference with ... nature often brings ... disaster. ... tree-felling sometimes turns ... fertile land into a dustbowl. 30. ... people think that ... lead is ... heaviest metal, but ... gold is heavier. 31. Our air hostess said, '... rack is only for ... light articles. ... heavy things such as ... bottles must be put on ... floor.' 32. ... windows are supposed to let in ... light; but ... windows of this house are so small that we have to have ... electric light on all ... time. 33. There'll always be a conflict between ... old and ... young. ... young people want ... change but ... old people want ... things to stay ... same. 34. ... power tends to corrupt and ... absolute power corrupts absolutely. 35. You can fool some of ... people all ... time, and all ... people some of ... time; but you cannot fool all ... people all ... time.

Exercise 209. General revision: fill in the blanks with the definite or indefinite article if necessary.

1. There was ... knock on ... door. I opened it and found ... small dark man in ... blue overcoat and ... woollen cap. 2. He said he was ... employee of ... gas company and had come to read ... meter. 3. But I had ... suspicion that he wasn't speaking ... truth because ... meter readers usually wear ... peaked caps. 4. However, I took him to ... meter, which is in ... dark corner under ... stairs (... meters are usually in ... dark corners under ... stairs). 5. I asked if he had ... torch; he said he disliked torches and always read ... meters by ... light of ... match. 6. I remarked that if there was ... leak in ... gaspipe there might be ... explosion while he was reading ... meter. 7. He said, 'As ... matter of ... fact, there was ... explosion in ... last house I visited; and Mr. Smith, ... owner of ... house, was burnt in ... face.' 8. 'Mr. Smith was holding ... lighted match at ... time of ... explosion.' 9. To prevent ... possible repetition of this accident, I lent him ... torch. 10. He switched on ... torch, read ... meter and wrote ... reading down on ... back of ... envelope. 11. I said in ... surprise

that ... meter readers usually put ... readings down in ... book. 12. He said that he had had ... book but that it had been burnt in ... fire in ... Mr. Smith's house. 13. By this time I had come to ... conclusion that he wasn't ... genuine meter reader; and ... moment he left ... house I rang ... police. 14. Are John and Mary ... cousins? – No, they aren't ... cousins; they are ... brother and ... sister. 15. ... fog was so thick that we couldn't see ... side of ... road. We followed ... car in front of us and hoped that we were going ... right way. 16. I can't remember ... exact date of ... storm, but I know it was ... Sunday because everybody was at ... church. On ... Monday ... post didn't come because ... roads were blocked by ... fallen trees. 17. Peter thinks that this is quite ... cheap restaurant. 18. There's been ... murder here. – Where's ... body? – There isn't ... body. – Then how do you know there's been ... murder? 19. Number ... hundred and two, ... house next door to us, is for sale. It's quite ... nice house with ... big rooms. ... back windows look out on ... park. 20. I don't know what ... price ... owners are asking. But Dry and Rot are ... agents. You could give them ... ring and make them ... offer. 21. ... postman's little boy says that he'd rather be ... dentist than ... doctor, because ... dentists don't get called out at ... night. 22. Just as ... air hostess (*there was only one on the plane*) was handing me ... cup of ... coffee ... plane gave ... lurch and ... coffee went all over ... person on ... other side of ... gangway. 23. There was ... collision between ... car and ... cyclist at ... crossroads near ... my house early in ... morning. ... cyclist was taken to ... hospital with ... concussion. ... driver of ... car was treated for ... shock. ... witnesses say that ... car was going at ... seventy miles ... hour. 24. Professor Jones, ... man who discovered ... new drug that everyone is talking about, refused to give ... press conference. 25. Peter Piper, ... student in ... professor's college, asked him why he refused to talk to ... press. 26. We're going to ... tea with ... Smiths today, aren't we? Shall we take ... car? – We can go by ... car if you wash ... car first. We can't go to ... Mrs. Smith's in ... car all covered with ... mud. 27. He got ... job in ... south and spent ... next two years doing ... work he really enjoyed. 28. It is ... pleasure to do ... business with such ... efficient organization. 29. ... day after ... day passed without ... news, and we began to lose ... hope. 30. Would you like to hear ... story about ... Englishman, ... Irishman and ... Scotsman? – No. I've heard ... stories about ... Englishmen, ... Irishmen and ... Scotsmen before and they are all ... same. But mine is not ... typical story. In my story ... Scotsman is generous, ... Irishman is logical and ... Englishman is romantic. – Oh, if it's ... fantastic story I'll listen with ... pleasure. 32. My aunt lived on ... ground floor of ... old house on ... River Thames. She was very much afraid of ... burglars and always locked up ... house very carefully before she went to ... bed. She also took ... precaution of looking under ... bed to see if ... burglar was hiding there. 33. '... modern burglars don't hide under ... beds,' said her daughter. 'I'll go on looking just ... same,' said my aunt. 34. One morning she rang her daughter in ... triumph. 'I found ... burglar under ... bed ... last night,' she said, 'and he was quite ... young man.' 35. ... apples are sold by ... pound. These are forty pence ... pound. 36. It was ... windy morning but they hired ... boat and went for ... sail along ... coast. In ... afternoon ... wind increased and they soon found themselves in ... difficulties.

Exercise 210. General revision: fill in the blanks with an article or a possessive pronoun if necessary.

1. He took off ... coat and set to work. 2. Why are you standing there with ... hands in ... pockets? 3. At most meetings ... people vote by raising ... right hands. 4. The bullet struck him in ... foot. 5. They tied ... hands behind ... back and locked him in a cellar. 6. He took ... shoes off and entered on ... tiptoe. 7. Someone threw ... egg which struck the speaker on ... shoulder. 8. I have ... headache. 9. I have ... pain in ... shoulder. 10. The windscreen was smashed and the driver was cut in ... face by broken glass. 11. He was ... very tall man with ... dark hair and ... small beard, but I couldn't see ... eyes because he was wearing ... dark glasses. 12. He tore ... trousers getting over a barbed wire fence. 13. Brother and sister were quite unlike each other. He had ... fair wavy hair; ... hair was dark and straight. 14. She pulled ... sleeve to attract his attention. 15. She pulled him by ... sleeve. 16. 'Hands up!' said the masked man, and we all put ... hands up. 17. Ask ... woman in front of you to take off ... hat. 18. He stroked ... chin thoughtfully. 19. If you're too hot why don't you take off ... coat? 20. I saw him raise ... right hand and take ... oath. 21. The lioness bit him in ... leg. 22. You should change ... wet shoes, or you'll catch another cold. 23. There was a shot and a policeman came out with ... blood running down ... face. 24. We shook ... hands with ... host. 25. He fell off his horse and injured ... back. 26. The barman seized the drunk by ... collar. 27. Leave ... coats in ... cloakroom; don't bring them into ... theatre. 28. He fell down a flight of stairs and broke ... rib. 29. He pointed to a woman in ... green dress. 30. He is ... thoroughly selfish man; he wouldn't lift ... finger to help anyone. 31. You'll strain ... eyes if you read in ... bad light. 32. She was on ... knees, scrubbing ... kitchen floor. 33. He has ... horrible job; I wouldn't like to be in ... shoes. 34. You've got ... shirt on inside out. 35. 'Pull ... socks' said his mother. 36. I hit ... thumb with a hammer when I was hanging the picture.

Exercise 211. General revision: fill in the blanks with articles wherever necessary.

A) It has been announced that for ... third consecutive month there has been ... rise in ... number of ... unemployed, rather than ... fall that had been predicted. ... rise was blamed on ... continuing uncertainty over ... government economic policy, and couldn't come at ... worse time for ... Prime Minister, who is facing ... growing criticism over ... way ... present crisis is being handled. ... MPs are increasingly voicing ... fears that despite ... recent devaluation of ... pound and cuts in ... interest rates, ... government still expects ... recovery of the economy to take three or even four years. To make ... matters worse, ... number of small business going into ... liquidation is still at ... record level, and ... housing market is showing no signs of recovery. Some backbenchers expect ... general election before ... end of ... winter unless there is ... rapid change of ... fortune.

B) ... problem of ... pollution has become one of ... most serious problems in ... modern world. ... modern city dweller now breathes in ... fumes of ... heavy traffic, and has to put up with ... noise which often causes ... damage to ... ears, besides forcing ... most people to live in ... state of ... constant stress. However, it is

not only in ... city that ... pollution is ... major problem. Even in ... apparent peace and quiet of ... countryside, ... danger from ... overuse of ... chemical fertilizers and ... pesticides had become ... cause for ... concern. ... authorities are aware of ... problem, but, as with ... industrial pollution, it is ... cost of reducing ... dangers which often prevents ... action being taken.

C) ... basement room of ... bookstore seemed to be enormous; it stretched in ... long rows of ... books off into ... dimness at ... either end, with ... books lined in ... tall bookcases along ... walls, and ... books standing in ... piles on ... floor. At ... foot of ... spiral staircase winding down from ... neat small store upstairs, Mr. Harris, ... owner and ... salesclerk of ... bookstore, had ... small desk, cluttered with ... catalogues, lighted by one dirty overhead lamp. ... same lamp served to light ... shelves which crowded heavily around Mr. Harris' desk; farther away, along ... lines of ... book tables, there were other dirty overhead lamps, to be lighted by ... pulling string and turned off by ... customer when he was ready to grope his way back to Mr. Harris' desk, pay for his purchases and have them wrapped. Mr. Harris, who knew ... position of any author or any title in all heavy shelves, had one customer at ... moment, ... boy of about eighteen, who was standing far down ... long room directly under one of ... lamps, leafing through ... book he had selected from ... shelves. It was cold in ... big basement room, both Mr. Harris and ... boy had their coats on. Occasionally Mr. Harris got up from his desk to put ... shoveful of ... coal on ... small, iron stove which stood in ... curve of ... staircase. Except when Mr. Harris got up, or ... boy turned to put ... book into ... shelves and take out another, ... room was quiet, ... books standing silent in ... dim light.

Exercise 212. General revision: choose the most suitable word underlined. A dash (-) means that no article is needed.

1. Helen doesn't like the/- cream cakes sold in a/the local bakery. 2. The/- basketball is fast becoming a/the popular sport worldwide. 3. We could see that the/- Alps were covered in the/- snow. 4. It's a/- long time since I met a/- lovely person like you! 5. Diana has a/- degree in the/- engineering from the/- University of London. 6. At the/- present moment, the/- man seems to have the/an uncertain future. 7. The/- problem for the/- today's students is how to survive financially. 8. The/- French enjoy spending holidays in the/- countryside. 9. Please do not turn on a/the water-heater in a/the bathroom. 10. Sue bought a/the Picasso I was telling you about the/- last week. 11. Brenda is the/- ideal for a/the job. She has a/- wealth of the/- experience. 12. The/- safety at the/- work is a/- major concern for us. 13. The/- poorest people in the/- country live in this city. 14. Have you seen a/the new 'Hamlet' at the/- National Theatre? 15. There is a/- beautiful countryside within an/- easy reach of a/the hotel. 16. I have a/- terrible cold and am staying in the/- bed today. 17. I earn £3 an/the hour as a/- supermarket cashier on the/- Saturdays. 18. The/- charge for an/- excess luggage is £ 10 a/the kilo. 19. The/- most of the/- life is a/- matter of getting on with the/- others. 20. This country is officially called The/- United Kingdom of The/- Great Britain and The/- Northern Ireland.

Exercise 213. General revision: fill in the blanks with articles wherever necessary.

1. I'm going to stand for ... Parliament at ... next election. 2. When I left ... station, I had to stand in ... queue for ... taxi for ... long time. 3. We took ... trip around London and saw ... Tower Bridge. 4. ... happiness of the majority depends on ... hard work from everyone. 5. ... most main roads in this part of ... country follow ... line of ... roads built by ... Romans. 6. Have you got ... latest record by ... Gipsy Kings? 7. If I had ... time, I would like to take up ... archery. 8. We spent ... pleasant evening having ... drink at ... Robin Hood. 9. ... Nile flows right though ... city. 10. ... summer I spent in ... USA was one of ... best in my life. 11. Go down ... Kingston Street and turn right into ... Mill Road. 12. Please let me carry ... shopping. It's ... least I can do. 13. I don't like ... milk in ... coffee. 14. She was ... first woman to cross ... Atlantic in ... canoe. 15. Jim became ... furniture salesman after leaving ... school. 16. At ... end of ... busy day, ... sleep is ... best tonic. 17. ... James Joyce I knew wasn't ... novelist and wasn't ... Irish either. 18. We'll go for ... walk if ... sun comes out. 19. This is ... last time I do you ... favour for ... while. 20. I'm staying in ... Hilton so you can leave me ... message. 21. Please watch the cabin attendant as she demonstrates ... use of ... oxygen mask. 22. Paul spent ... half of his life in ... Far East. 23. You have to use at ... least ... pint and ... half of milk. 24. Dick has ... sore throat and is taking ... medicine. 25. We arranged ... accommodation on ... outskirts of ... city. 26. There is ... very difficult crossword in ... Times. 27. Could you give me ... information I asked for in ... letter I sent you? 28. I bought ... jewellery for my sister but it wasn't ... kind she likes. 29. I always wanted to be ... astronaut but ... ambition wore off. 30. And ... last of all, don't forget to put ... cat out for ... night. 31. ... water is ... healthiest drink in ... most parts of ... world. 32. ... first people who live on ... moon will be short of ... water. 33. Take ... first road on ... left and ... house is opposite ... church. 34. In ... future I expect ... people will live under ... sea. 35. I think ... light needs changing in ... bathroom. 36. ... best thing about ... love is ... way it changes people. 37. I went there in ... taxi because I had ... headache. 38. ... lot of ... people in my area mistrust ... police. 39. ... first time I went to ... dance I learned ... waltz. 40. ... unhappiness is often result of ... loneliness. 41. ... Nelson's Column is in ... Trafalgar Square in ... London. 42. ... British Airways is one of ... airlines who use ... Concorde. 43. ... discovery of ... atomic power has proved ... unfortunate. 44. ... ancient Greeks had ... wide knowledge of ... mathematics. 45. ... empty house needs ... Electroglow fire. 46. ... number two is running ... much faster than ... number four. 47. ... spring in ... Greek Islands can be rather chilly. 48. ... beer you're drinking comes from ... German grocer's opposite. 49. ... stitch in ... time saves ... nine. 50. ... last question is usually ... easiest.

Exercise 214. General revision: correct the errors in these sentences.

*E.g.* The time you spend on the relaxing pastime is good for you.  
The time you spend on a relaxing pastime is good for you.

1. Don't you work in record shop in High Street? 2. A new campaign against the smoking is directed at the young women. 3. The leader of the team is usually called



captain. 4. A half the time I get phone call it's wrong number. 5. I saw brilliant rock band perform at the Isle of Wight rock festival. 6. Do you know what the difference there is between the stoat and the weasel? 7. At the half-time the both teams seemed in a difficulty. 8. The earthquake could easily damage the Channel Tunnel. 9. A painting I like best is the one not for a sale. 10. I not only play piano, but am best violinist in the my class. 11. The friend of my brother's, a Mr. Jameson, arrived at the house. 12. The day I lost my sunglasses was the bad day for me. 13. The Shakespeare is one of most famous English writers. 14. It's not a first-class accommodation unless it has a private bathroom. 15. On this record twins play piano duet. 16. The halfway through meal we realised what waiter had said. 17. If the Mrs. Hillier phones, say I'm away on trip. 18. There is a wonderful scenery in eastern part of Turkey. 19. Cocker spaniel is one of most popular pet dogs. 20. There is going to be fog and a cold weather all the next week. 21. The burglaries are definitely on increase. 22. I spent very interesting holiday at the Lake Coniston in England. 23. We are against war in general, so of course we are against war like this between superpower and developing country. 24. The most people in my town like the icecream made there. 25. First time I went to the theatre I saw the Hamlet.

Exercise 215. General revision: fill in the blanks with articles wherever necessary.

1. ... room which looked upon ... small garden, was furnished with ... old-fashioned comfort. 2. ... coffee was gray with ... milk and I skimmed ... milk scum off ... top with ... piece of ... bread. 3. They finished ... meal in ... silence. 4. It's really hard to judge that sort of ... thing. 5. 'Mrs. Gibbons,' I said in ... voice trembling with ... fear and ... anger. 6. Your camera is only ... instrument through which you express your art. 7. ... secret between those two remained ... secret. 8. She looked about ... drawing-room with ... expression of ... surprise. 9. Bill was awake and sitting on ... edge of ... bed. 10. We leaned on ... wooden rail of ... bridge and looked up ... river to ... lights of ... big bridges. 11. She came fresh from ... air of ... village, ... light of ... country still in her eyes. 12. Lily sank with ... sign into one of ... shabby leather chairs. 13. ... breakfast consisted of ... tea, too hot for her to drink, and ... burnt toast with ... great lumps of ... salty unmelted butter. 14. It was ... brilliantly sunny morning and she was walking along ... river bank, ... long beach of yellow sand, that sloped into ... water. 15. He was ... chef at ... Atlanta's only French restaurant. 16. His memory of those times was like ... house where no one lives and where ... furniture has rotted away. 17. They say ... first officer is down, so evidently ... captain passed ... message. 18. ... dinner, ... crew had, consisted of ... salmon, so ... food poisoning was quite possible. 19. ... night he spent in ... air seemed like ... hell. 20. ... shark is ... mystery of ... ocean, ... most dangerous thing among ... fish. 21. ... back of ... collar and ... upper part of ... shoulders were grey with ... dust. 22. That isn't ... sort of ... thing she likes. 23. She wore ... jersey sweater and ... tweed skirt and her hair was brushed back like ... boy's. 24. ... top of ... carriage was up and there were ... drops of ... water on ... driver's coat. 25. She was still kneeling, trying to take ... hook out of ... mouth of ... fish.

Exercise 216. General revision: fill in the blanks with articles wherever necessary.

1. ... poet was reading something written on ... sheet of ... paper. He was surrounded by other men who looked like ... assistant producers. 2. Michael went up ... stairs two at ... time, and entered ... large square room, where Mr. Blythe, ... back to ... door, was pointing with ... ruler to ... circle drawn on ... map. 3. We were led into ... spacious room furnished with ... sort of ... furniture you would find in ... English lodging-house at ... seaside. 4. As we know there is often ... great difference between ... man and ... writer. ... writer may be bitter, harsh and brutal, while ... man may be meek and mild. 5. As ... weather grew warmer, ... stale and heavy air depressed her more and more, and sometimes in ... panic she would wonder what harm it was doing to her. But you couldn't tell; ... day after ... day, ... night after ... night, you lay there wondering, and you couldn't tell. 6. Jan listened to ... clinking of ... glasses as ... patients poured themselves ... drinks, ... restless tossing of ... bodies so long in ... bed that ... night was only ... weary extension of ... day. 7. When she thought that she would not see Bart for seven days in which ... minutes and even ... seconds drifted past more slowly than ... yellowed leaves fluttering to ... earth in ... windless air, then ... time was like ... ticking of ... watch in which ... springs had broken. 8. For ... moment she stood looking over ... garden, over ... peace of ... sapphire valleys, ... stretch of ... plain like ... inland sea between ... mountain scarps and ... coast. For ... first time since she had come there ... peace no longer frightened her, ... solitude no longer oppressed her. 9. ... ward held ... twenty patients inside and ... dozen more on ... veranda. At first they were merely ... faces to Bart, ... sallow faces, ... bright rosy faces, ... young faces and ... old faces, all ... types from ... grandfather of seventy-nine to ... boy of twelve. 10. They made ... quick breakfast, ... tea and ... bread and ... boiled ham, and were bumping down ... road before ... sun had struggled through ... clouds. 11. When he reached Cincinnati it was snowing, ... windy blustery snow. ... flakes were coming down thick and fast. ... traffic of ... city had ... muffled sound. 12. On ... fourteenth of August, ... fresh bright morning, in ... bustling health and ... immense spirits, Andrew ran up ... steps of ... building, ... look in his eye that of ... man about to conquer London.

Exercise 217. General revision: fill in the blanks with articles wherever necessary.

1. London, ... capital of England and ... mother city of ... British empire, is ... largest city in world, containing in ... administrative county and ... ring of suburbs nearly 9 million people. 2. ... morning, so fresh and cold, was delicious and for ... moment his eyes wandered out over ... garden with ... friendly glance. 3. Isn't it possible – can't I, at least, try to become ... kind of ... daughter and ... granddaughter that they would like? 4. ... sunburnt man with ... grey beard, in ... white clothes and wearing ... helmet came to meet us. 5. It was ... day in ... late April, and ... sweetness of ... spring was in ... air. 6. ... pleasure was like ... winter flower, it died swiftly. 7. And they all smiled, as if ... wind had come up suddenly in ... middle of ... hot afternoon. 8. He felt as fresh in her presence as one who is taken out of ... flash of ... summer to ... first cool breath of ... spring. 9. ... ring through ... door-bell sounding emphatically through ... empty house roused her suddenly. 10.

Few days after her return to ... town she had ... unpleasant surprise of ... visit from Mr. Rosedale. 11. ... cold, grey sky threatened ... rain, and ... high wind drove ... dust in ... wild spirals up and down ... streets. 12. In ... tone in which she spoke to her grandnephew, aged three, Miss Marple said, 'I have ... very nice catalogue here, with ... pictures.' 13. He took ... role home to Carrie and handed it to her with ... manner of one who does ... favour. 14. It hummed in her ears as ... melody of ... old song. 15. After ... few moments ... window above him was thrown up and ... head and ... shoulders of ... man protruded. 16. She was ... sort of ... woman who was always bothering about what other people would think. 17. She wasn't convinced that ... love is necessary to ... successful union. 18. I did not want you to return to ... cold, empty house. So I started ... fire and brought ... few things for you to eat. 19. ... elevators seemed slow this morning, Herbie Chandler thought. Impatiently he pressed ... call button ... second time.

Exercise 218. General revision: fill in the blanks with articles wherever necessary.

A) Few, among those who visit India, describe it in ... same terms. ... reason is that ... real character of ... country is masked by its continental dimensions.

... country spreads 2,000 miles from ... icy heights of ... Himalayas in ... north to ... tip of ... Cape Comorin in ... tropical south, and about ... same distance from ... west to ... east. ... country encompasses ... geographical conditions, ... climate, ... scenery and ... people as diverse as those in Europe or Americas. It has some of ... tallest peaks, ... longest plains and ... wettest, hottest and coldest regions in ... world. But ... nature intended India to be ... distinct entity. Marked off from ... mainland of Asia by ... Himalayas and with ... sea on three sides, it possesses ... unity of its own which has left ... impress on ... people's mode of ... life and ... thought.

B) Legrand took ... paper angrily, and was about to throw it into ... fire when suddenly something in ... drawing attracted his attention. In ... instant his face grew red; in ... other it became white. For some minutes he went on looking at ... paper silently. Then he got up, took ... candle from ... table and carefully examined ... paper, turning it in all directions. At last he took ... notebook from his pocket, put ... paper into it and locked ... book in ... drawer of his writing-table.

C) 'Floor please?' ... elevator operator said. He spoke in ... deep voice with ... slight Italian accent. Tom glanced at him. ... man was wearing ... plum-coloured uniform and had his back turned towards him. He was ... stout, dark-complexioned man about thirty years old with ... thick black hair only partly covered by ... plum-coloured cap shaped like ... army cap. Across ... back of his thick neck, just visible above his collar, was ... long, thin white scar. There was something startlingly familiar about ... slope of his narrow shoulders and ... deep voice. Tom stepped to one side to get ... better look at him, but ... elevator was getting crowded, and he couldn't see ... front of ... man's face.

Exercise 219. General revision: fill in the blanks with articles wherever necessary.

A) I looked at ... woman. She was sitting straight opposite me in ... big chair and had just thrown off her hat. She was ... unusual type – weary Madonna describes it best. She had ... fair, almost colourless hair, parted in ... middle and drawn straight down over her ears to ... knot on ... neck. Her face was dead white and yet curiously attractive. She impressed me, I think, as ... most tired person I had ever met.

B) Presently we hailed ... taxi. It put us down before ... brown-stone house, narrow and rather high, and you ascended to ... front door by ... flight of ... steep steps. ... door was opened by ... tall stout Negro and we were ushered into ... drawing-room.

C) (1) ... studio was filled with ... rich odours of ... roses, and when ... light summer wind stirred amidst ... trees of ... garden, there came through ... open door ... heavy scent of ... lilac, or ... more delicate perfume of ... pink-flowering thorn.

D) Beyond ... river rose ... plateau of ... town. All along ... old walls ... people were standing. Three lines of ... fortifications made three black lines of ... people. Above ... walls there were ... heads in ... windows of ... houses. At ... far end of ... plateau ... boys had climbed into ... trees.

E) ‘Rest, my dear – rest. That’s one of ... most important things. There are three doctors in ... illness like yours,’ he laughed in ... anticipation of his own joke. ‘I don’t mean only myself, my partner and ... radiologist who does your X-rays, three I’m referring to are Dr Rest, Dr Diet and Dr Fresh Air.’

Exercise 220. General revision: fill in the blanks with articles wherever necessary.

Mrs. Hale loved to drive in ... afternoon in ... sun when it was fine, and to satisfy her soul with ... sight of those mansions which she could not afford. When ... winter season had passed and ... first fine days of ... early spring appeared, Mrs. Hale secured ... buggy for ... afternoon and invited Carrie.

At this time of ... year ... days are still short, and ... shadows of ... evening were beginning to settle down upon ... great city. Carrie felt that it was ... lovely day. As they drove along ... smooth pavement ... occasional carriage passed. She saw ... footman dismount, opening ... door for ... gentleman, who seemed to be leisurely returning from some afternoon pleasure. Across ... broad lawns she saw ... lamps faintly glowing upon ... rich interiors. Now it was ... chair, now ... table, now ... ornate corner, which met her eye, but it appealed to her as almost nothing else could. She was perfectly certain that here was ... happiness. If she could cross that rich entrance-way, which to her was of ... beauty of ... jewel, and sweep in ... grace and ... luxury to possession and command – oh! how quickly would ... sadness flee; how, in ... instant, would ... heartache end.

Exercise 221. General revision: fill in the blanks with articles wherever necessary.

1. What ... strange feeling it was to be going home when it was not home, and to find that every object I looked at reminded me of ... happy old home which was like ... dream I could never dream again. 2. On her face I saw ... placid and sweet expression of ... lady whose picture had looked at me downstairs. It seemed to my

imagination as if portrait had grown womanly and ... original remained ... child. 3. Rebecca's mother had had ... education somewhere and her daughter spoke ... French with ... purity and ... Parisian accent. It was in those days rather ... rare accomplishment, and led to her engagement with ... orthodox Miss Pinkerton. 4. He had ... wit, ... keen sense of ... humour, ... sense of pathos. 5. ... one thing that really interested him in connection with his parents was ... existence somewhere in ... east in ... small city called Lycurgus of ... uncle, ... brother of his father's. 6. But ... bed I made up for myself was sufficiently uncomfortable to give me ... wakeful night, and I thought ... good deal of what ... unlucky Dutchman had told me. 7. We went down ... corridors, down ... stone stairs. We crossed over ... Park by ... lake; one of ... pelicans was spreading its wings. ... trees were creaking in ... blustery wind; on ... grass, ... first leaves had fallen. It was ... dark evening, with ... clouds, low and grey, driving across from ... west. 8. I breathed deeply two or three times, but felt ... little calmer, ... enormity of ... situation was too overpowering. 9. ... English of ... 14th century differs from ... Modern English. 10. He was young still, and in ... few years he would look back on all his misery with ... sadness in which there would be something not unpleasurable. 11. After ... lights within, it was very dark, and ... night was enormous and silent with ... intensity which for ... moment made her pause in ... awe. She was in ... unfamiliar street. It was ... damp night, with rare stars. 12. I had often new temptations afterwards to wonder whether it was really singular, or only singular to me, that he, who was ... most grateful of mankind upon ... least occasion, should so desire to escape ... gratitude of others. 13. Large drops of ... rain, which pattered every now and then against ... windows of ... chaise, seemed to warn ... travellers of ... rapid approach of ... stormy night. 14. It's pleasant to get used to ... expensive, ... soft, ... comfortable. 15. ... children of ... poor know but ... few pleasures. Even ... cheap delights of ... childhood must be bought and paid for. 16. And there began for Soames ... most confused evening he had ever spent. For in his heart were ... great gladness and ... great pity, and he must not show ... sign of either. 17. ... walls, down which ran ... number and variety of ... pipes and cables, were painted in two contrasting shades of green ... dark up to ... height of five foot, lighter above that. 18. In ... evening ... weather broke, ... wind shifted from ... South to ... North-East and brought ... rain first and then ... sleet and ... snow. 19. ... Miller said all kinds of beautiful things about ... friendship, which Hans took down in ... notebook and used to read over at ... night, for he was ... very good scholar. 20. She drew ... little away from him; then perceived that unwittingly she had done ... right thing, for he at once tried to take her hand again. And this was her first lesson too in ... nature of ... man. 21. London train was on ... point of ... departure. It was yet ... early morning, ... hour of ... milkmen and ... postmen. ... station had ... chill, unused, deserted look; ... passengers were few. 22. In ... hands of ... strong, like himself when he was at his best, ... law was ... sword and ... shield, ... trap to place before ... feet of ... unwary; ... pit to dig in ... path of those who might pursue. 23. It had been ... severe winter, and ... snow lay deep in ... gorges of ... mountains. 24. ... point is that ... art now is just ... subject for conversation; and anything that anybody can understand at ... first sight is not worth talking about and therefore not ... art. 25. I do not consider that ... cigars and whisky consumed at my

expense, and ... few dollars, borrowed with ... civil air of conferring ... favour upon me, that passed from my pocket to his, were in any way equivalent to ... entertainment he afforded me. I remained his debtor. 26. He was ... psychopathologist as well as ... student of ... art, and ... subconscious had ... few secrets from him. 27. And now he was in ... large bedroom overlooking ... Thames, ... chamber with ... writing table, ... sofa, ... telephone, ... electric bells and ... massive oak door with ... lock and ... key in ... lock. 28. ... sun comes up from ... East and goes down to ... West. 29. As that day closed in, ... girl's excitement increased; and when ... night came on there was ... unusual paleness in her cheek, and ... fire in her eye, that even Sikes observed with ... astonishment. 30. Mr. Skimpole could play ... piano and ... violoncello; and he was ... composer, had composed half ... opera once, and played what he composed with ... taste. After ... tea we had quite ... little concert, in which Richard and Mr. Jarndyce and I were ... audience. 31. In ... civil life, Cassilis was ... stage-designer on ... threshold of ... brilliant career. He was ... quiet man, mildly handsome, mildly intellectual, mildly witty. He was fond of ... women in ... quiet sort of way, but behaved with them always as if he were in search of ... good quiet wife. 32. Though ... young man was ... honest fellow, and ... son of ... honest father, ... latter had died so early, and his widow had had such struggles to maintain herself, that ... son was very imperfectly educated. 33. Next day, Margaret and I had to leave ... house after ... tea. ... weather had not changed. Just as when we arrived, it was ... evening so tranquil that ... chimney smoke seemed painted on ... sky, and in ... air there was ... smell of burning leaves. 34. They never, one felt, dressed carelessly, said ... wrong word, were ... prey to ... untidy passion. 35. ... Herzogs moved to ... midwest. 36. She was ... mountain-bred and ever ... lover of ... mountains. She could see ... little beauty in ... sea, and that only of ... terrible and overwhelming kind. 37. ... very tall and very good-looking man who entered seemed about thirty-eight years old. His clean-shaven face was full of ... health, his eyes full of ... light, his dark hair had ... fleck or two of premature grey in it. 38. I've been taught ... Latin, and ... Greek and ... mathematics. 39. At ... dusk, on ... evening of St. Valentine's Day, Boldwood sat down to ... supper as usual. 40. Dinny wrote ... letter to her brother in which she said nothing of ... Hallorsen, ... Saxenden, or ... Tasburghs, but discoursed in lively fashion of ... Aunt Em, Boswell and Johnson, ... Uncle Adrian, ... Lady Henrietta. 41. I guessed that ... women would like her as much as ... men, that if there was ... little tenderness in her nature, there was also no spite. 42. He left ... kitchen, went in ... dining-room and excused himself to ... Aunt Alexandra, put on his hat and went to ... town.

Exercise 222. General revision: fill in the blanks with articles wherever necessary.

1. He had not been here five minutes when ... vivid flash of lightning was followed by ... loud peal of thunder, that crashed and rolled away in ... distance with terrific noise; then came another flash of lightning brighter than ... other, and ... second peal of thunder, louder than ... first. 2. Charmian, who had taken ... great fancy to Ellen, spoke of her warmly. At last, she felt, here was ... suitable wife for me; and she did her best to jockey me into ... marriage. ... experience of worrying

about my future was ... soothing one to her, taking her mind off her own troubles. 3. Glinka was born in 1804. His uncle had ... orchestra of his own. Very often ... boy would take up ... violin and try to repeat ... notes and rhythm of ... music he had heard. In 1818 ... Glinkas went to St. Petersburg, where Mikhail was placed in ... boarding school at ... St. Petersburg Central Pedagogical Institute. In 1830 Glinka went to Italy, where he stayed for ... number of years. However, it was St. Petersburg that was ... Glinka's home for ... greater part of his life. ... St. Petersburg of Pushkin played ... great part in ... Glinka's life. ... man and ... human soul are expressed in ... Glinka's music with ... deep sincerity and understanding. 4. She was slightly taller than he ... and shapely, artistic in ... form and ... feature. Her hair was ... colour of ... dried English walnut and her complexion waxen, with ... lips of faint pink and eyes that varied from gray to blue arid from gray to brown according to ... light in which you saw them. Her beauty measured up to his present sense of ... artistic. 5. There were ... number of young women who were very friendly to her, but there were ... few with whom she was really intimate. ... only person who stood out in her mind was ... certain Mary Calligan ... who had attended ... school with Aileen in former years and was now ... teacher in one of ... local schools. 6. Dick Stroeve, giving up his work entirely, nursed Strickland with ... tenderness and ... sympathy. He was dexterous to make him comfortable, and he exercised ... cunning of which I should never have thought him capable to induce him to take ... medicine prescribed by ... doctor. I shall never forget ... tactful patience with which he persuaded him to take ... nourishment. 7. ... reddish, fitful light was coming from ... window above. Great God! His picture gallery! He ran to ... foot of ... stairs that led up to it. ... stealthy sound, ... scent of burning much more emphatic, staggered him. He hurried up ... stairs and pulled open ... door. Heavens! ... far end of ... gallery, at ... extreme left corner of ... house, was on fire. 8. Rosa knocked several times without getting any answer and had stepped back on to ... pavement to look up at ... closely curtained windows when ... door opened very quietly to ... gap of ... few inches and ... pale face peered out. Rosa sprang forwards with such ... alacrity that ... owner of ... face immediately shut ... door again, and Rosa could hear ... chain being fixed. With this additional safeguard ... door opened once more to ... narrow slit and Rosa could see one pale blue eye looking out at her. 9. But though so bad ... painter he had ... very delicate feeling for ... art, and to go with him to ... picture galleries was ... rare treat. I think I have never known ... man whose judgement was surer. And he was better educated than ... most painters. He was not ignorant of ... kindred arts, and his taste for ... music and ... literature gave ... depth and variety to his comprehension of ... painting. To ... young man like myself his advice and guidance was of ... incomparable value. 10. ... Volterras had ... six-room apartment with ... hall which was like ... cord holding all ... small rooms together. ... kitchen was nearest to ... front door, then came three bedrooms, and ... bath, ... dining room, and, at ... far end, ... living room. Despite ... smallness of ... rooms, they had ... neat cosy quality that gave Erik ... comfortable feeling. 11. Mrs. Pryor looked round her, and spoke of ... neighbourhood as she had once before seen it long ago. She compared its aspect with that of other parts of England: revealing in quiet, unconscious touches of description ... sense of ... picturesque, ... appreciation of ...

beautiful or ... commonplace, ... power of comparing ... wild with ... cultured that gave to her discourse ... graphic charm as pleasant as it was unpretending. 12. They found themselves in ... matted hall, lined almost to ... ceiling with ... pictures; through this they were conducted to ... large parlour, with ... magnificent fire in ... grate; ... most cheerful of rooms it appeared as ... whole, and when you came to examine details, ... enlivening effect was not diminished. There was no splendour, but there was ... taste everywhere, ... taste, you would have said, of ... travelled man, ... scholar, and ... gentleman. ... series of Italian views decked ... walls; each of them was ... specimen of ... true art; ... connoisseur had selected them. 13. Mrs. Dubedut is ... arrestingly good-looking young woman. She has something of ... grace and romance of ... wild creature, with ... good deal of ... elegance and dignity of ... fine lady. She has ... figure on which any dress would look well, and carries herself with ... unaffected distinction of ... woman who has never in her life suffered from those doubts and fears as to her social position which spoil ... manners of ... most middling people. 14. 'I know,' said Darnay, 'that between you and Miss Manette there is ... affection so unusual, so touching, so belonging to ... circumstances in which it has been nurtured, that it can have ... few parallels, even in ... tenderness between father and ... child.' 15. It is hard that ... man's exterior should tally so little sometimes with his soul. Dirk Stroeve had ... passion of Romeo in body of Sir Toby Eelch. He had ... sweet and generous nature, and yet was always blundering; ... real feeling for what was beautiful and ... capacity to create only what was commonplace; ... peculiar delicacy of sentiment and ... gross manners. He could exercise ... tact when dealing with ... affairs of others, but none when dealing with his own. What ... cruel practical joke ... old Nature played when she flung so many contradictory elements together, and left ... man ... face to ... face with ... perplexing callousness of ... Universe.

Exercise 223. General revision: fill in the blanks with articles wherever necessary.

A) As ... writer, I seem to spend ... most of ... time working in my office at ... home, sitting alone in front of ... computer. In fact, ... only people I see regularly are ... members of my family when they get home from ... work or ... school. Otherwise, I don't have much contact with ... people, and I'm sorry that I haven't kept in ... touch with ... friends I made at ... college. I often get ... letters and ... phone calls from ... people at ... publisher's, though, and I try to get out of ... house at least once ... day. From ... time to ... time I give ... lectures or teach ... courses at ... conferences in ... North America or abroad. But if I ever run out of ... ideas or I start suffering from ... loneliness, I'll give up ... writing ... books. Then maybe I'll start ... new career where I work with lots of ... people and I can have ... conversation whenever I feel like ... one!

B) ... lovesick teenager, threatening to jump seventy feet from ... cliffs at ... seaside resort, was saved by ... human chain of ... policemen today.

... eighteen-year old had driven from his home in ... Lake District to ... Langhorn, near ... Bournemouth, to talk his girlfriend out of breaking off their three-month romance.



He threatened to jump off ... balcony at her house, but when she dialled ... 999 he dashed to ... edge of ... cliffs below ... Metropole Hotel.

... police found him sitting on ... edge.

They chatted to him for twenty minutes in ... darkness, then clung together and grabbed him.

He was later released after ... treatment by ... hospital doctor.

... police spokesman said, 'There was ... high wind, it was pitch dark at about 2 a.m., and ... grass on ... cliff top was wet and slippery. It was ... brave rescue.

'It was ... case of ... unrequited love. ... youngster was upset after his romance broke up, but he has now recovered his senses.'

#### Exercise 224. General revision: translate into English

1. В то время он жил в Европе, где изучал языки и литературу. 2. Эти поэмы были опубликованы под названием «Поэмы о рабстве». 3. Лонгфелло любил мир и в своих поэмах выступал против войны и колониализма. 4. Он хотел дать своим детям хорошее английское образование. 5. Во время гражданской войны между Севером и Югом он выступал на стороне северян. 6. Он прекрасно знал свою страну и с пониманием писал о фермере в поле, о клерке в конторе, об учителе в классе и о плотнике в своей мастерской. 7. Он хорошо знал различные национальности, составляющие население его страны: негров, итальянцев, ирландцев, немцев. 8. Многие события в «Приключениях Тома Сойера» действительно имели место, и герои были взяты из реальной жизни. 9. В двадцать лет он нашел работу на пароходе, который ходил вверх и вниз по реке. 10. Он год работал наборщиком в Сент-Луисе. 11. Все эти профессии дали ему знание жизни и людей. 12. Отметьте такой факт в человеческой истории: многие великие художники умерли от голода. 13. Наступило долгое молчание. Наконец он заговорил. 14. Я не хотел продавать картину, однако в конце концов отдал ему ее за сотню франков. 15. Сегодня в Париже живет человек, у которого есть семьдесят картин этого художника. 16. Его работы завоевали необычную популярность. 17. Многие из его рассказов очень интересны, и читатель обычно доволен. 18. Он всегда покупал две буханки черствого хлеба. 19. Какие добрые у него глаза! И какой широкий лоб! 20. Он нашел работу на пароходе, который шел в Японию. 21. Этот месяц помог ему понять борьбу рабочих. 22. В то время на Аляске нашли золото. 23. В то время он написал свой рассказ «Сын волка».

#### Exercise 225. General revision: translate into English.

А) Когда Монтанелли и Артур вошли в свою комнату в отеле, они увидели, что растения, которые Артур собирал во время их утренней прогулки в горах, уже начали вянуть.

– Их надо было бы сразу поставить в воду, Артур, – сказал Монтанелли с упреком. – Как ты мог забыть это сделать?

– Сам не знаю, падре, – ответил Артур. – Мне не надо было оставлять их так лежать. Должно быть, меня что-то отвлекло, и я забыл о растениях.

– Надо их сейчас же рассортировать и засушить. Если мы будем ждать, пока спадет жара, они могут к этому времени совсем завянуть. Пойдем на террасу, там, очевидно, не так жарко.

В) Монтанелли и Артур взяли растения, гербарий Артура и лупу и, выйдя на террасу, погрузились в дискуссию на итальянском языке. Два английских художника сидели на этой террасе; один рисовал, а другой лениво болтал по-английски. Видимо, ему не пришло в голову, что те двое итальянцев могут понимать по-английски.

– Оставь свой ландшафт, Вилли, – сказал он, – и лучше посмотри на итальянского юношу. Какой у него вдохновенный вид! Он как будто сошел с какой-то старой итальянской картины. Право же, если бы он держал в поднятой руке крест, а не лупу, с него можно было бы писать какого-нибудь первого христианина.

– Да, – сказал второй, пристально поглядев на обоих. – Юноша, действительно, кажется сошедшим с какой-то старинной картины. Но у его отца еще более живописный вид. Какое благородное и трагическое лицо!

– У кого?

– У его отца. Разве ты не видишь, как они похожи?

– Как ты можешь так говорить, Вилли. Разве ты не видишь по его одежде, что это католический священник? Он не может быть его отцом.

– Вижу, ну и что из этого? Ах, да, я и забыл, что священники католической церкви не могут вступать в брак. Ну что же, будем великодушны и предположим, что юноша не сын его. Может быть, он его племянник.

– Вот идиоты, – прошептал Артур. – Все же с их стороны очень мило находить, что я похож на вас; я бы хотел и в самом деле быть вашим племянником... Падре, что с вами? Как вы побледнели! Вам помочь? Чем я могу вам помочь?

– Нет, не надо.

Монтанелли встал, прижимая руку ко лбу.

– У меня кружится голова, – сказал он странно слабым голосом. Мы, должно быть, слишком долго гуляли сегодня утром. Мне не следовало оставаться так долго на солнце. Я пойду и лягу. Это просто жара, больше ничего.

## Exercise 226. General revision: translate into English

Мери Кочран вышла из дома, в котором она жила со своим отцом, доктором Лестером Кочраном в семь часов вечера в воскресенье. Был июнь тысяча девятьсот восьмого года, и Мери было восемнадцать лет. Она сказала сразу, что идет в церковь, но не собиралась делать ничего подобного. Вечер был слишком прекрасным, подумала она, для того, чтобы проводить его, сидя в душной церкви и слушая, как каждый человек говорит о вещах ничего не имеющих общего с ее собственными проблемами. Ее собственные дела приближались к кризису, и ей пора было серьезно подумать о будущем.

Дело было в том, что накануне вечером, без предварительного разговора,

ее отец сказал ей, что у него болезнь сердца, от которой он может умереть в любой момент. Услышав это заявление, Мери побледнела и ее рука задрожала. Доктор попытался успокоить ее

– Ну, ну, не беспокойся, – сказал он неуверенно. – Может быть, ничего не случится. Я был врачом тридцать лет и знаю, что с болезнью сердца человек может прожить много лет. Я даже слышал, что лучший способ обеспечить долгую жизнь – получить болезнь сердца. Я сказал тебе о болезни по одной причине – я оставлю мало денег и тебе надо начать строить планы на будущее.

## REFERENCES

- 1) Roger Berry. CollinsCobuild. English Guides 3: Articles/ Roger Berry – HarperCollins Publishers Ltd, 1996. – 130p.
- 2) [Електронний ресурс]. – Режим доступу : [www.sentence.yourdictionary.com](http://www.sentence.yourdictionary.com)
- 3) Бармина Л.А. Практикум по английскому языку: Артикли./ Л.А. Бармина, И.П. Верховская – 2-е изд., испр. – М.: ООО «Издательство Астрель»: ООО «Издательство АСТ», 2000. – 192 с.
- 4) Ільченко В.В. Методичні вказівки та завдання з англійської мови /аспект «Граматика» за темою «Вживання англійського артикля»/ : Для студентів 3 курсу фак. «Референт-перекладач»/ ХГІ «НУА»; В.В. Ільченко. – Х., 1999. – 68 с. – Англ.

*Навчальне видання*

ІЛЬЧЕНКО Валерія Віталіївна

## **Артикль**

Навчальний посібник для  
для студентів III курсу  
факультету «Референт-перекладач»,  
які навчаються за спеціальністю  
6.02030304 – Филологія

В авторській редакції  
Відповідальний за випуск: *В.В. Ільченко*  
Комп'ютерний набір: *В.В. Ільченко*

Підписано до друку.... Формат 60×84/16.  
Папір офсетний. Гарнітура «Таймс».  
Ум. друк. арк. .... Обл.-вид. арк.....  
Тираж ....пр. Зам. №

Видавництво  
Народної української академії  
Свідоцтво № 1153 від 16.12.2002.

Надруковано у видавництві  
Народної української академії

Україна, 61000, Харків, МСП, вул. Лермонтовська, 27.